### Introduction

### Thank you for purchasing the SoftBank 911SH.

- For proper handset use, read this manual beforehand.
- This manual was created exclusively for SoftBank 911SH handsets sold in Japan.
- Keep this manual in a convenient place for reference.
- Accessible SoftBank services may vary by service area, subscription, etc.

### SoftBank 911SH is compatible with 3G network technology.

#### Note

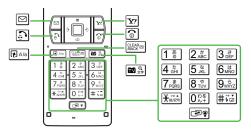
- Copying this manual in whole or part without authorisation is prohibited.
- Manual content is subject to change without prior notice.
- Efforts have been made to ensure the accuracy and clarity of this manual. Please contact Customer Service, General Information (see **P.20-28**) about unclear or missing information.

## Symbols & Illustrations

In this manual, most operations are described with handset in portrait position (see **P.1-12**) in Standby. Sample screen shots, etc. are provided for reference only. Actual handset windows, menus, etc. may differ in appearance.

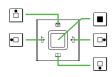
### Keypad Keys

Indicated in this manual as shown below.



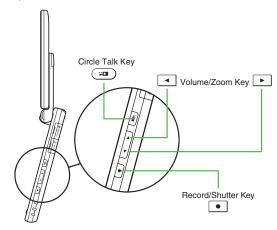
### Multi Selector

Select menu items, move cursor and scroll, etc. In this manual, Multi Selector operations are indicated as shown to the right.



### Side Keys

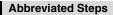
Operate compatible functions such as mobile camera and TV; indicated in this manual as shown below.



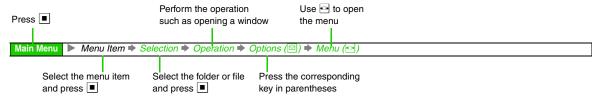
**Basic Multi Selector Operations** 

- : Press i or .
- ••: Press •• or ••
- : Press :, , or or

i



Handset operations starting from Main Menu are abbreviated as follows:



Manual descriptions are based on default Font Settings (see **P.10-4**). Actual handset windows, menus, etc. may differ in appearance when Font Settings are different or when Simple Menu (see **P.2-19**) is active.

In this SoftBank 911SH Instruction Manual, SoftBank 911SH is abbreviated as handset.

### Accessories

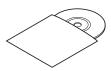
Lithium-ion Battery (Type 1) (SHBAX1)



AC Charger (SHCAA1)



Utility Software (CD-ROM)<sup>\*★</sup>



Headphones (with Microphone) (SHLAX1)



<sup>\*</sup>Utility Software updates/upgrades may become available on the SoftBank Website (http://www.softbank.jp) without prior notification. Please check for the newest versions of Utility Software and download as required.

Supplied Utility Software is designed exclusively for 911SH.

- Tip For accessory-related information, please contact SoftBank Customer Centre, General Information (see P.20-28).
  - Handset is compatible with microSD<sup>™</sup> Memory Card; microSD<sup>™</sup> Memory Card is not included in this package. Purchase microSD<sup>™</sup> Memory Card to use Memory Card-related handset functions.
  - In this manual, microSD<sup>™</sup> Memory Card is referred to as "Memory Card".

<sup>\*</sup>Complimentary sample not available for purchase

## **Contents**

Symbols & Illustrations	i
Accessories	
Contents	iv
Safety Precautions	xii
General Notes	xxii
Specific Absorption Rate (SAR)	xxviii
Getting Started	
Function & Feature Preview	1-2
USIM Card	1-4
General Information & Precautions	1-4
■ Inserting & Removing USIM Card	1-5
USIM PINs	1-6
Handset Parts & Functions	1-7
Handset	1-7
Display Indicators	1-9
■ Display Positions	1-12
Battery & Charger	1-13
Getting Started	1-13
■ Installing & Removing Battery	1-17
AC Charger	
Desktop Holder	
In-Car Charger	
Handset Power On/Off	
My Details	
Keypad Lock	
Handset Menus	
Main Menu	
User Shortcuts	
Multi Job	
Pen Light	1-26

Security Codes	1-27
Handset Code	1-27
Centre Access Code	1-27
Network Password	1-27
9 Basic Handset Operations	
Initiating a Call	2-2
Emergency Calls	
Redial	
■ Placing an International Call from Japan	2-5
Incoming Call	
Calling from Received Calls	2-8
Answer Phone	2-9
Activating & Cancelling	2-9
■ Playing Messages	2-10
Engaged Call Operations	2-11
Earpiece Volume	2-11
Voice Output	2-11
Voice Memo	2-12
Other Engaged Call Operations	2-12
Call Log	2-13
Using Call Log	
Call Timers & Data Counter	2-14
Call Timers	2-14
Data Counter	2-14
Call Costs	
Limit Call Costs	2-15
Manner Mode	2-16
Minding Mobile Manners	
Activating & Cancelling	
Activating/Cancelling Offline Mode	2-18

Simple Menu	2-19
<b>?</b> Text Entry	
Character Selection	3-2
■ Entry Modes	3-2
Key Assignments	3-3
Entering Characters	3-5
■ Kanji, Hiragana & Katakana	3-5
■ Entering Alphanumerics	3-7
Symbols, Pictograms & Emoticons	3-8
Mail & Web Extensions	3-9
Character Code	3-9
Pager Code	3-9
Conversion Methods (Japanese Only)	3-11
Phonetic Conversion	3-11
■ One-Hiragana Conversion	3-11
■ Hiragana to Katakana/Alphanumerics Conversion	3-11
Quick Conversion (for Hiragana)	3-12
Conversion Settings	3-13
Editing Characters	
Editing Characters	3-13
	<b>3-1</b> 3
Deleting & Replacing	<b>3-13</b> 3-13 3-13
Deleting & Replacing	3-13 3-13 3-13 3-14
Deleting & Replacing  Copy/Cut & Paste  Deleting Text On and After Cursor	3-13 3-13 3-14 3-14
■ Deleting & Replacing ■ Copy/Cut & Paste ■ Deleting Text On and After Cursor	3-13 3-13 3-14 3-14
Deleting & Replacing	3-13 3-13 3-14 3-14 3-14

⚠ Phone Book	
Overview	4-:
Saving to Phone Book	
Phone Book Entry Items	4-;
Creating Phone Book Entries	
Saving from Call Log	4-8
Phone Book Memory Status	
Using Phone Book	4-8
Dialling from Phone Book	4-8
Editing Phone Book Entries	4-10
Correction/Change	4-10
Copying Phone Book Entries	4-10
■ Deleting Phone Book Entries	4-1
Category Settings	4-1 <sup>-</sup>
Changing Category Name	4-1
Customising Handset Responses	4-1
Contact Groups	
Creating Contact Groups	
Saving Group Members	
Editing Contact Groups	
Editing Group Members	
Speed Dial List	
Saving Phone Numbers	
Speed Dial	
S! Address Book (SAB)	
SAB Sync Commands & Features	
Service Usage Outline	
Saving User ID & Password	
Backup & Restore	
Synchronising Phone Book	
Opening Log	
My Details	
Opening My Details	4-19

Video Call	
Initiating a Video Call Answering a Video Call Engaged Video Call Operations	5-2 5-3 5-3 5-3 5-4 5-7
6 TV	
Basics	6-2
Getting Started	6-3
	6-3
One Seg Digital Television I	Broadcasts 6-4
_ ::	6-4
	6-5
_ , ,	6-6
	6-7
	6-8
	6-8
	6-10
	6-10
=	6-10
_	
	Only) 6-13 6-14
_ ` ' '	6-15
	6-15
_	56-16
_ , ;	r 6-19
_	6-19
= · · ·	6-19
_ =	6-19
Reminder Settings	6-21
<del>-</del>	

Additional Settings	
Area Settings	6-22
TV Settings	6-24
<b>7</b> Camera	
Getting Started	7-2
Mobile Camera Basics	
Camera Display Indicators	7-3
Key Assignments	7-4
Still Images	7-5
Photo Camera Mode	7-5
Capturing Still Images	7-6
Still Image Functions	7-7
Video	7-8
■ Video Camera Mode	7-8
Recording Video	7-8
■ Video Recording Operations	7-9
Opening Images & Playing Video	7-10
Opening Still Images	7-10
Playing Video	
Special Shooting Modes	7-11
Self-timer	
Continuous Shoot (Photo Camera)	7-12
Adding Frames (Photo Camera)	7-13
Camera Effects (Photo Camera)	7-14
Sending Images	7-14
Still Images	7-14
Video Clips	7-15
Camera Settings	
Shooting Options	
Image Settings	
Additional Settings	7-18

Media Player	
Media Player Basics	8-2
■ Downloading Music/Video	8-2
Saving Music Files from PCs	8-3
Recording Music	8-4
Connecting to Audio Sources	8-6
Recording	
Recording Settings	8-8
Playing Music	8-9
Playback	
Playback Settings	
Playing Video	
Playback	
Playback Settings	
Editing Video	
Clipping Portions between Two Points	
Cropping Video Clips	
Adding Subtitles	
Managing Video & Music Files	
Adding New Playlist	
Adding Files to Playlists	
■ Deleting Files in SD VIDEO & SD AUDIO	. 8-22
Managing Files (Data Folder)	
Data Folder	9-2
■ Window Description	
Major Icons	
Display Settings	9-4
Opening Files	9-5

Managing Files & Folders	9-8
Adding Folders	9-8
■ Changing File/Folder Name	9-8
Deleting Files & Folders	9-9
Copying/Moving Files	9-9
Using Files	9-10
■ Wallpaper	9-10
Saving to Phone Book	9-1
Ringvideo & Ringtone	9-1
S! Mail Attachments	9-1
Printing Images	9-1
Editing Still Images	9-12
■ Changing Image Size	9-1
■ Visual Effects (Retouch)	9-1
Adding Text & Stamps	9-14
Face Arrange	9-1
Additional Picture Effects	9-10
Panorama Images	9-1
Split Screen	9-18
Memory Card	9-19
Precautions	9-19
■ Inserting & Removing Memory Card	9-20
Format Card	9-2
Backup & Restore	9-2
Additional Functions	9-2
Digital Print Order Format (DPOF)	9-2
Selecting Images & Prints	9-2
Print Settings	9-2

Additional Settings	
Mode Settings	10-2
Activating a Mode	10-2
Customising Modes	10-2
Reset	10-2
Display	10-3
Display Settings	10-3
Standby Window (Japanese Only)	10-6
Language Setting	10-9
Custom Screens	10-10
Familiar Usability	10-12
Light Settings	10-13
External Display Settings	10-14
■ Viewing Images on External Devices	10-14
Sounds & Alerts	10-16
Customising Handset Responses	10-16
Customising System Sounds	
Additional Sound Settings	
Date & Time	10-20
User Dictionary	
Entries (Japanese Only)	
■ 911SH Download Dictionary (Japanese Only)	
Handset Security	
Face Recognition	
■ PIN	
Handset Locks	
Opening Secret Entries	
Changing Handset Code	
Reset	
Call Settings	
International Call	
Additional Continue	
Additional Settings	10-31

1 Connectivity	
Bluetooth®	11-2
Getting Started	
Transferring Files via Bluetooth®	11-4
Connecting Handsfree Devices	
Bluetooth® Settings	11-9
Infrared	11-10
Getting Started	11-10
■ Transferring Files via Infrared	11-10
Mass Storage	11-14
Network Settings	11-19
Location Info	11-19
19 Tools	
Calendar	12-2
Opening Calendar	
Saving Entries	
Opening Entries	12-0
Searching Entries by Subject	
Editing Entries	12-
Deleting Entries	12-
Tasks	12-
Saving Entries	12-
Opening Entries	12-10
Searching Entries by Subject	12-10
Editing Entries	12-1
■ Deleting Entries	
Alarm	
Setting Alarm	
Cancelling & Reactivating Alarm	
Deleting Alarm	

World Clock 12-14
Setting Time Zone & Daylight Saving12-14
Opening World Clock 12-15
Calculator 12-15
Voice Recorder
Preparation
Recording12-17
Playback12-17
Recording Setting
Document Viewer
Barcode
Create QR Codes 12-22
Text Scanner 12-23
Stopwatch
Countdown Timer 12-25
Expenses Memo
Text Templates
New Entry
Opening Templates
Editing Templates
Deleting Templates
Phone Help 12-28
13 Optional Services
Optional Services Overview13-2
Call Forwarding
Voicemail
Missed Call Notification
Call Waiting
Conference Call
Call Barring
Restricting Outgoing Calls
Restricting Incoming Calls

Rejecting a Call 13-9
■ Changing Network Password 13-10
Caller ID
1 1 Messaging
Basics
Messaging Folders
Window Description
Views
Customising Handset Address
Sending Text Messages14-6
■ Basics
Creating & Sending SMS Mail14-7
Creating & Sending S! Mail
Delivery Options
Send Reservation14-18
■ Using Drafts14-18
Incoming Text Messages14-19
Opening New Messages 14-19
■ Retrieving Complete S! Mail Messages
Retrieving Mail List
Using Messages14-23
■ Checking Messages
Replying to Messages 14-26
Forwarding Messages 14-26
Cancelling Sent Messages14-27
■ Linked Info14-28
Protecting Messages
■ Deleting Messages14-29
Saving Attachments to Data Folder 14-30
■ Using Attachments
My Folders14-31

Additional Functions 14-34
Speed Mail List14-34
Speed Mail 14-34
Auto Resend14-35
General Settings14-35
SMS Settings
S! Mail Settings
15 Yahoo! Keitai
Getting Started
Using Yahoo! Keitai 15-4
Opening Yahoo! Keitai Menu15-4
■ Entering URLs Directly15-5
Basic Operations 15-5
Advanced Features 15-9
■ Bookmarks & Saved Pages15-9
Saving Files to Data Folder15-11
Using Linked Info
Streaming 15-13
Live Monitor (Japanese Only)15-15
Live Monitor Basics
Opening Information
Registering with Live Monitor Items
Updating Live Monitor Items
Automatic Update
Deleting Live Monitor Items
Using PC Site Browser 15-18
Opening Yahoo! JAPAN
Entering URLs Directly
Additional Functions
Sub Menu Settings
Common Settings

PC Site Browser Settings	15-22
Security	15-22
16 S! Applications	
Getting Started	
S! Appli Library	
S! Applications on Memory Card	
Video Output	
Downloading S! Applications	
Using S! Applications	
Starting S! Applications	
Managing S! Applications	
■ Opening S! Application Properties	
Moving S! Applications to Memory Card	
Deleting S! Applications	
Screensaver	
Setting Permissions	
S! Application Operational Settings	16-8
Reset	
1 7 S! FeliCa (Japanese Only)	
Basics	
Starting Lifestyle-Appli	
Using S! FeliCa	
S! FeliCa Settings	
IC Card Status	
IC Card Lock	
Remote Lock	
Interface Settings	
Resetting Defaults	17-8

18 Entertainment
S! Cast (Japanese Only)18-2
■ Basics
Service Registration & Content Subscription
Opening Received Information 18-2
Using Information
Using Weather Indicator
Electronic Books18-5
Reading Content
Using E-Book Images18-8
Using a Dictionary
ComicSurfing® (Japanese Only) 18-9
1 9 Communication
S! Town (Japanese Only)19-2
Using S! Town
S! Town Library19-3
S! Loop (Japanese Only)19-3
Hot Status
Adding Members
Opening Member Status Details
My Status
Editing Hot Status Member List
Deleting Members
Using Hot Status Info
Hot Status Settings
Additional Functions
Circle Talk
Initiating Circle Talk
Accepting a Circle Talk Request
Adding/Cancelling Participants
Creating Circle Talk Member List

■ Editing Circle Talk Member List  □ Circle Talk Settings  Near Chat (Japanese Only)  □ Basics  □ Using Near Chat.	19-18 <b>19-19</b> 19-19
20 Appendix	
Function List	
Troubleshooting	20-4
Software Update	20-8
Character Code List	20-10
Pictogram List	20-16
Specifications	
Memory List	
Index	
Warranty & After-Sales Services	
Customer Service	

## Safety Precautions

- Read safety precautions before using handset.
- Observe precautions to avoid injury to self or others, or damage to property.
- SoftBank is not liable for any damages resulting from use of this product.

### **Before Using Handset**

### Symbols

Make sure you thoroughly understand these symbols before reading on.

Symbols and their meanings are described below:



**DANGER** 

Great risk of death or serious injury from improper use



WARNING

Risk of death or serious injury from improper use



**CAUTION** 

Risk of injury or damage to property from improper use

### Symbols



**Prohibited Actions** 



**Compulsory Actions** 



**Attention Required** 

### **<b>∆DANGER**

### Handset, Battery & Charger

# Use specified battery, Charger and Desktop Holder only (see P.iii).



Using non-specified equipment may cause malfunctions, electric shock or fire due to battery leakage, overheating or bursting.

### Do not short-circuit Charger terminals.



Keep metal objects away from Charger terminals. Keep handset away from necklaces, hairpins, etc.
Battery may leak, overheat, burst or ignite causing injury.
Use a case to carry battery.

### **Battery**

## Prevent injury from battery leakage, breakage or fire. Do not:



- Heat or dispose of battery in fire
- Open/modify/disassemble battery
- Damage or solder battery
- Use a damaged or deformed battery
- Use non-specified charger (see P.iii)
- · Force battery into handset
- Charge battery near fire or sources of heat; or expose it to extreme heat
- Use battery for other equipment

If battery fluid contacts eyes, do not rub them. Rinse with clean water and consult a doctor immediately.



Eyes may be severely damaged.

### **♠WARNING**

### Handset, Battery & Charger

### Do not insert foreign objects into the handset. Charger or Desktop Holder.



Do not insert metal or flammable objects into handset, Charger or Desktop Holder; may cause fire or electric shock. Keep out of children's reach.

### Keep handset out of rain or extreme humidity.

Fire or electric shock may result.



#### Keep handset away from liquid-filled containers.

Keep the handset, Charger and Desktop Holder away from chemicals or liquids; fire or electric shock may result.



### Keep battery, handset, Charger or Desktop Holder away from microwave ovens.

Battery, handset, Charger or Desktop Holder may leak, burst, overheat or ignite, leading to accidents or injury.



### Do not disassemble or modify handset or related hardware.



- Do not open handset, Charger or Desktop Holder; may cause electric shock or injury. Contact SoftBank Customer Centre, Customer Assistance for repairs.
- Do not modify handset, Charger or Desktop Holder; fire or electric shock may result.

### Do not use Mobile Light near people's faces.

Evesight may be temporarily affected leading to accidents.



#### CAUTION:

Use of controls, adjustments or performance of procedure other than those specified herein may result in hazardous radiation exposure. As the emission level from Mobile Light LED used in this product is harmful to the eyes, do not attempt to disassemble the cabinet. Servicing is limited to qualified servicing station only.

### If water or foreign matter is inside handset:



Discontinue handset use to prevent fire/electric shock. Turn off handset, remove battery and unplug Charger, then contact SoftBank Customer Centre, Customer Assistance.



### **<b>∆WARNING**

### Handset, Battery & Charger

# Keep handset off and Charger disconnected near filling stations or places with fire/explosion risk.



Handset use near petrochemicals or other flammables may cause fire/explosion; turn handset off before using S! FeliCa at filling stations (cancel IC Card Lock beforehand).

## Do not subject handset to strong shocks or impacts.



Strong shocks or impacts to handset, Charger or Desktop Holder may cause malfunction or injury.

Should handset be damaged, remove battery then contact SoftBank Customer Centre, Customer Assistance. Discontinue handset use; fire or electric shock may occur.

#### If an abnormality occurs:



If a handset emits an unusual sound, smoke or odour, discontinue use; may cause fire or electric shock. Turn off handset, remove battery and unplug Charger; contact SoftBank Customer Centre, Customer Assistance.

### Handset

#### Take measures to prevent accidents.



- For safety, never use handset while driving. Pull over beforehand. Mobile phone use while driving is prohibited by the revised Road Traffic Law (effective 1 November 2004).
- Do not use Headphones while driving or riding a bicycle.
   Accidents may result.
- Moderate volume outside, especially near rail crossings/ intersections, etc. to avoid accidents.

## Do not swing handset by Headphones or strap. May result in injury or breakage.



Turn handset power off before boarding aircraft.
Using wireless devices aboard aircraft may cause



Using wireless devices aboard aircraft may cause electronic malfunctions or endanger aircraft operation.

#### Adjust vibration and ringtone settings:



Users with a heart condition/pacemaker/defibrillator should adjust handset settings accordingly.

### During thunderstorms, turn power off; find cover.



There is a risk of lightning strike or electric shock.

### **MARNING**

### Charger

#### Use only the specified voltage.

Non-specified voltages may cause fire or electric shock.

AC Charger: AC 100V-240V Input
 In-Car Charger: DC 12V-24V Input



#### Do not use In-Car Charger in positive earth vehicles.

Fire may result. Use In-Car Charger in negative earth vehicles only.



#### Charger care

- Do not touch with wet hands. Electric shock may occur.
- Do not use multiple cords in one outlet; may cause excess heat/fire.



• Do not bend, twist, pull or set objects on cord. Exposed wire may cause fire or electric shock.



### Do not short-circuit Charger terminals.

May cause overheating, fire or electric shock. Keep metal away from terminals.



### Do not use Desktop Holder inside vehicles.

Extreme temperature or vibration may cause fire or damage handset, etc.



### Take measures to prevent accidents.

Secure In-Car Charger to avoid injury or accidents.



### Damaged AC Charger/In-Car Charger cord:

May cause fire or electric shock; discontinue use and purchase a new Charger.



### **During thunderstorms:**

Unplug Charger to avoid damage, fire or electric shock.



### Charger/Desktop Holder use and children:

May cause electric shock/injury; keep out of reach.



### **<b>⚠WARNING**

### **Battery**

Battery may catch fire or burst.

- If battery does not charge properly, stop charging. Battery may overheat, burst or ignite.
  If there is leakage or abnormal odour, avoid fire sources.
  - U

distortion, remove battery from handset. It may leak, overheat or explode.



### **Handset Use & Electronic Medical Equipment**

This section is based on "Guidelines on the Use of Radio Communications Equipment such as Cellular Telephones and Safeguards for Electronic Medical Equipment" (Electromagnetic Compatibility Conference, April 1997) and "Report of Investigation of the Effects of Radio Waves on Medical Equipment, etc." (Association of Radio Industries and Businesses, March 2001).

Persons with implanted pacemaker/defibrillator should keep handset more than 22 cm away.



Radio waves can interfere with implanted pacemakers or defibrillators causing such devices to malfunction.



Turn handset off in crowds or trains where persons with implanted pacemaker/defibrillator may be near.

Radio waves can interfere with implanted pacemakers or defibrillators causing such devices to malfunction.

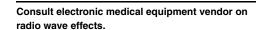


#### Observe these rules inside medical facilities:

If there is abnormal odour, excessive heat, discolouration or



- Do not enter an operating room or an Intensive or Coronary Care Unit while carrying a handset.
- Keep handset off in hospitals, including lobbies.
- · Obey medical facility rules on mobile phone use.





### **↑**CAUTION

### Handset, Battery & Charger

#### Handset care

- · Place handset on stable surfaces to avoid malfunction or injury.
- · Keep handset away from oily smoke or steam. Fire or accidents may result.
- Cold air from air conditioners may condense, resulting in leakage or burnout.
- Keep handset away from direct sunlight (inside vehicles, etc.) or heat sources. Distortion, discolouration or fire may occur. Battery shape may be affected.
- Keep handset out of extremely cold places to avoid malfunction or accidents.
- Keep handset away from fire sources to avoid malfunction or accidents.

### Usage environment

- Excessive dust may prevent heat release and cause burnout or fire.
- · Avoid using handset on the beach. Sand may cause malfunction or accidents.
- Keep handset away from credit cards, telephone cards, etc. to avoid data loss.

### **Handset**

#### Handset temperature



Handset may become hot while in use. Avoid prolonged contact with skin especially at high temperature. May cause burn injuries.

### Avoid leaving handset in extreme heat (inside vehicles, etc.).



Handset may become hot to the touch, leading to burn injuries.

### **Volume settings**



Moderate handset volume; excessive volume may damage ears or hearing.

#### Headphones



- Do not force plugs or pull on cord; may damage plugs or cord.
- Keep plugs clean to avoid noise and malfunction.

#### Inside vehicles



Handset use may cause electronic equipment to malfunction



### **ACAUTION**

### Handset

If you experience any skin irritation associated with handset use, discontinue handset use and consult a doctor.

See handset materials below. Some materials may cause skin irritation, rashes, or itchiness depending on your physical condition.



Parts	Materials & Finishing
Housing (Display side)	Magnesium alloy/Acrylic baking finish (sealer: epoxy baking finish)
Housing (Display back side)	ABS resin/Acrylic UV curing painting (sealer: acrylic painting)
Housing (Keypad/Keypad back side), battery cover	ABS resin/Acrylic UV curing painting (sealer: acrylic painting)
Housing ornament (Display back side)	ABS resin (chrome plating on nickel plating)
Display window, External Display window, lens cover	Acrylic resin
Mobile Light cover, Portrait/Macro Selector	ABS resin
Back ornament plate	ABS resin/Acrylic UV curing painting (sealer: acrylic painting)
Antenna	ABS resin/Brass/PA/Elastomer/SUS
Infrared Port	ABS resin (infrared grade)
Protector (Display edges)	Nylon
Display rotation stopper (stop pad)	Urethane resin
Speaker ornament sheet	SUS/Paint
Multi Selector (centre), Multi Selector (Cursor Keys)	ABS resin (chrome plating on nickel plating)
Start Key, Power On/Off Key, Mail Key, Yahoo! Keitai Key, Side Keys, Shortcuts & A/a Key, Clear/Back Key, TV/Text Key, Multi Job/Manner Key, Keypad	PC resin/Paint
Memory Card Slot cover, AV OUT/Headphone/Optical Digital Line-In Port cover, External Device Port cover	Urethane-based resin, PC resin/Acrylic UV curing painting (sealer: acrylic painting)
Battery	PC resin
Charger Terminal	SUS/Gold plating (sealer: nickel)
Screw (all pieces)	SWCH12A/Ni plating
USIM pin	Copper alloy/Gold plating (sealer: nickel)

### **ACAUTION**

### Charger

### Charger & In-Car Charger

- Grasp plug (not cord) to disconnect Charger. May cause fire/electric shock.
- Keep cord away from heaters. Exposed wire may cause fire or electric shock.
- Stop use if plug is hot or improperly connected. May cause fire/electric shock.
- Keep In-Car Charger socket clean. May overheat and cause injury.



May cause burn injuries.

### Use only the specified fuse.

1 A fuse for In-Car Charger. Or may cause damage/fire.



### Always charge battery in a well-ventilated area.

Avoid covering/wrapping Charger and Desktop Holder; may cause damage/fire.



### Do not use In-Car Charger when engine is off.

To avoid weakening the car battery, always start engine before charging the handset using In-Car Charger.



#### **During periods of disuse**

Always unplug AC Charger or In-Car Charger after use.



#### Handset maintenance

Always disconnect AC Charger or In-Car Charger when cleaning handset.



### In-Car Charger installation

Properly position the cable for safe driving to avoid injury or accidents.



### **⚠CAUTION**

### **Battery**

Do not throw or abuse battery. Battery may overheat, burst or ignite.



Do not leave battery in direct sunlight or inside a closed vehicle; may reduce battery performance or overheat. An overheated battery may cause fire.



Do not expose battery to liquids. Performance may deteriorate.



If battery fluid contacts skin or clothes, rinse with clean water immediately.



Do not dispose of an exhausted battery with ordinary refuse; always tape over battery terminals before disposal. Take exhausted battery to a SoftBank shop, or follow the local disposal regulations.



Keep battery out of children's reach.



 Charge battery in ambient temperatures between 5°C and 35°C; outside this range, battery may leak/overheat and performance may deteriorate.



- If your child is using handset, explain all instructions and supervise usage.
- If there is abnormal odour or excessive heat, stop using battery and call SoftBank Customer Centre, Customer Assistance.
- Charge battery at least once every six months; an uncharged battery may become unusable.

### **General Notes**

### General Use

- SoftBank is not liable for any damages resulting from accidental loss/alteration of handset or Memory Card data.
   Keep a copy of Phone Book entries, etc. in a separate place.
- Handset transmissions may be disrupted inside buildings, tunnels or underground, or when moving into/out of such places.
- Use handset without disturbing others.
- Handsets are radios as stipulated by the Radio Law. Under the Radio Law, handsets must be submitted for inspection upon request.

- Handset use near landlines, TVs or radios may cause interference.
- . Beware of eavesdropping.

Because this service is completely digital, the possibility of signal interception is greatly reduced. However, some transmissions may be overheard.

#### Eavesdropping

Deliberate/accidental interception of communications constitutes eavesdropping.

#### Inside Vehicles

- Never use handset while driving.
- Do not park illegally to use handset.

• Handset use may affect a vehicle's electronic equipment.

#### **Aboard Aircraft**

Never use handset aboard aircraft (keep power off). Handset use may impair aircraft operation.

#### **Handset Care**

- If handset is left with no battery or an exhausted one, data may be altered/lost. SoftBank is not liable for any resulting damages.
- Use handset within 5°C to 35°C and 35% to 85% humidity.
   Avoid extreme temperatures/direct sunlight.
- Exposing lens to direct sunlight may damage colour filter and affect image colour.
- Do not drop or subject handset to shocks.
- Clean handset with dry, soft cloth. Using alcohol, thinner, etc. may damage it.
- Do not expose handset to rain, snow or high humidity.
- Never disassemble or modify handset.
- · Avoid scratching handset Display.
- When closing handset, keep straps, etc. outside to avoid damaging the Display.
- When using Headphones, moderate volume to avoid sound bleed
- Function Usage Limits

These functions are disabled after handset upgrade/replacement or service cancellation:

Camera; Media Player; S! Applications; TV.

After a period of disuse, these functions may be unusable; retrieve Network Information (see **P.11-15**) to restore usability.

- Handset is not water-proof. Avoid exposure to liquids and high humidity.
- Keep handset away from precipitation.
- Cold air from air conditioning, etc. may condense causing corrosion.
- Avoid dropping handset in damp places (toilet, bathroom, etc.).
- On the beach, keep handset away from water and direct sunlight.
- Perspiration may seep inside handset causing malfunction.
- Avoid heavy objects or excessive pressure. May cause malfunction or injury.
- Do not sit down with handset in a back pocket.
- Do not place heavy objects on handset in a bag.
- Connect only the specified products to AV OUT/Headphone Port. Non-specified devices may malfunction or cause damage.
- Always turn off handset before removing battery. If battery is removed while saving data or sending mail, data may be lost, changed or destroyed.

### Copyrights

Copyright laws protect sounds, images, computer programs, databases, other materials and copyright holders. Duplicated material is limited to private use only. Use of materials beyond this limit or without permission of copyright holders may constitute copyright infringement, and be subject to criminal punishment. Comply with copyright laws when using images captured with handset camera.

Video recording and playback are based on MPEG-4.

This product is licensed under the MPEG-4 Visual Patent Portfolio License for the personal and non-commercial use of a consumer to (i) encode video in compliance with the MPEG-4 Video Standard ("MPEG-4 Video") and/or (ii) decode MPEG-4 Video that was encoded by a consumer engaged in a personal and non-commercial activity and/or was obtained from a licensed video provider. No licence is granted or implied for any other use. Additional information may be obtained from MPEG LA. See http://www.mpedla.com.

This product is licensed under the MPEG-4 Systems Patent Portfolio License for encoding in compliance with the MPEG-4 Systems Standard, except that an additional licence and payment of royalties are necessary for encoding in connection with (i) data stored or replicated in physical media which is paid for on a title by title basis and/or (ii) data which is paid for on a title by title basis and is transmitted to an end user for permanent storage and/or use. Such additional licence may be obtained from MPEG LA, LLC.

See http://www.mpegla.com for additional details.



Handset employs RSA® BSAFE™ software developed by RSA Security Inc.
RSA is a registered trademark of RSA Security Inc.
BSAFE is a registered trademark of RSA Security Inc. in the United States and/or other countries.

This product is equipped with JBlend<sup>™</sup> designed to accelerate the performance of Java<sup>™</sup> Application.

Powered by JBlend<sup>™</sup> Copyright

1997-2006 Aplix Corporation.
All rights reserved.

JBlend and JBlend-related brands are trademarks or registered trademarks of

Aplix Corporation in Japan and other countries.

Java and Java-related brands are trademarks or registered trademarks of Sun Microsystems, Inc. in the United States and other countries.





microSDTM and miniSDTM are trademarks of the SD Card Association.

Licensed by QUALCOMM Incorporated under one or more of the following United States Patents and/or their counterparts in other nations:

4,901,307 5,490,165 5,056,109 5,504,773 5,101,501 5,506,865 5,109,390 5,511,073 5,228,054 5,535,239 5,267,261 5,544,196 5,267,262 5,568,483 5,337,338 5,600,754 5,414,796 5,657,420 5,416,797 5,659,569 5,710,784 5,778,338

### **NetFront**®

This product employs NetFront Browser (Internet browser) and NetFront SMIL Player (SMIL player) developed by ACCESS Co., Ltd.

Copyright© 2004-2006 ACCESS Co., Ltd.

ACCESS and NetFront are trademarks or registered trademarks of ACCESS Co., Ltd in Japan or other countries.

This product includes a module developed by Independent JPEG Group.

Bluetooth is a registered trademark of the Bluetooth SIG, Inc.



The Bluetooth word mark and logos are owned by the Bluetooth SIG, Inc. and any use of such marks by SHARP is under license. Other trademarks and trade names are those of their respective owners.

FeliCa is a contactless IC card technology developed by Sony Corporation.

FeliCa is a trademark of Sony Corporation.

is a trademark of FeliCa Network, Inc.

The frequency band used for the Bluetooth® function of handset is shared with other industrial, scientific or medical equipment (microwave ovens, etc.), and used at premises radio stations, amateur radio stations, etc. (hereinafter "other radio stations").

- 1 Before using the Bluetooth® function, visually check that there are no other radio stations sharing the same frequency band nearby.
- 2 Should interference occur between handset and other radio stations, move to other place or stop the Bluetooth® function (stop the transmission) immediately.
- 3 For additional information and support, contact us at the following number.

### SoftBank Customer Centre, General Information

From a SoftBank handset, call toll free at 157 for General Information.

From landlines, see P.20-28 "Customer Service".

 This radio equipment operates in the 2.4 GHz band using the FH-SS modulation, and its maximum communication distance is ten metres.



Microsoft® Excel and Microsoft® Word are product names of Microsoft Corporation in the United States.

Microsoft and PowerPoint are registered trademarks of Microsoft Corporation in the United States and/or other countries.

This product employs Macromedia® Flash® Lite™ technology developed by Adobe Systems Incorporated.

Incorporated.

Copyright© 1995-2006 Adobe Systems
Incorporated. All rights reserved.

Macromedia, Flash, Macromedia Flash and
Macromedia Flash Lite are either registered
trademarks or trademarks of Adobe Systems

macromedia FLASH ENABLED

QR Code is a registered trademark of DENSO WAVE INCORPORATED.

Incorporated in the United States and/or other countries.

Powered by Mascot Capsule®/Micro3D Edition™

Mascot Capsule is a registered trademark of HI Corporation

©2002-2006 HI Corporation. All rights reserved.



Document Viewer is enabled by Picsel Technologies.

PICS E I Picsel, Picsel Powered, Picsel Viewer, Picsel File Viewer, Picsel Document Viewer, Picsel PDF Viewer and the Picsel cube logo are trademarks or registered trademarks of Picsel Technologies Ltd.

Cycloid is a registered trademark of SHARP Corporation.



Portions of this product are protected under copyright law and are provided under license by ARIS/SOLANA/4C.

Chaku-Uta and Chaku-Uta Full are registered trademarks of Sony Music Entertainment (Japan) Inc.

ComicSurfing is a trademark or registered trademark of CELSYS, Inc.

- SOFTBANK, SoftBank and the SoftBank logo are trademarks or registered trademarks of SOFTBANK CORP. in Japan and other countries.
- Yahoo! and the Yahoo! and Y! logos are trademarks or registered trademarks of Yahoo! Inc.

Video Call, S! Application, Custom Screen, Sky Mail, Movie Sha-mail, Sha-mail, 3D Pictogram, Input Memory, Near Chat, Multi Job, S! Mail, Arrange Mail, Feeling Mail, S! Cast, S! Town, S! Loop, Standby Window, PC Site Browser, Weather Indicator, Live Monitor, S! Address Book, Circle Talk, Hot Status, Lifestyle-Appli and Familiar Usability are trademarks or registered trademarks of SOFTBANK MOBILE Corp.

#### **CP8 PATENT**

Other company and product names mentioned herein are trademarks or registered trademarks of their respective owners.

The software contained in handset is copyrighted material; copyright, moral right and other related rights are protected by copyright laws. Do not copy, modify, alter, disassemble, decompile or reverse-engineer the software, and do not separate it from hardware in whole or part.

### Specific Absorption Rate (SAR)

911SH meets the government's requirements for exposure to radio waves.

These requirements are based on scientific basis to assure that radio waves emitted from mobile phones and other handheld wireless devices do not affect human health. They require that the Specific Absorption Rate (SAR), which is the unit of measurement for the amount of radiofrequency absorbed by the body, shall not exceed 2 W/kg\*.

This limit includes a substantial safety margin designed to

assure the safety of all persons, regardless of age or health, and meets the international standard set by International Commission on Non-Ionizing Radiation Protection (ICNIRP) in cooperation with World Health Organization (WHO). The highest SAR value for 911SH is 0.30 W/kg. Tests for SAR are conducted with handset transmitting at its highest certified power level, and follow the testing methods set by the government. While there may be differences between the SAR levels for various handsets, they all meet the governmental requirements for safe exposure. The actual SAR level of the handset while operating can be well below the highest value. This is because the handset is designed to operate at multiple power levels so as to use only the

Additional information on SAR can be obtained on the Websites on the right.

power required to reach the Network.

Ministry of Internal Affairs and Communications (Protection from Radio Wave Environment)

http://www.tele.soumu.go.jp/e/ele/index.htm

Association of Radio Industries and Businesses (ARIB) http://www.arib-emf.org/index02.html (Japanese only)

Requirements are stipulated in Radio Law (Ordinance Regulating Radio Equipment, Article 14-2)

**Getting Started** 

### Function & Feature Preview

Memory Card is required for items with grey background.

### **Cycloid Position**

Rotate Display to enjoy digital television or play games in full widescreen view.

P.1-12

### Television

Enjoy One Seg terrestrial digital television. Record shows on Memory Card. P.6-2

### Circle Talk

Press one key to speak to up to ten parties simultaneously via this Walkie-Talkie type service. **P.19-13** 

### PC Site Browser

View websites designed for PCs on handset.

P.15-18

### S! Town

Select an avatar to enter 3D virtual town via this online communication application. P.19-2

### S! Loop

S! Loop is a communication service.

P.19-3

### E-Book/Document Viewer

Read E-Book, E-Book dictionaries or documents (PDF files, etc.) on handset. P.18-5, P.12-18

#### **USIM Card**

For use only with USIM Cardcompatible SoftBank handsets; contains vital user information. P.1-4

#### Manner Mode

Press a single key to mute ringer and activate Answer Phone automatically. P.2-16

### Simple Menu

Select a simplified menu, ideal for users who use only basic handset functions.

P.2-19

### Phone Book

Save up to 750 entries; add up to three phone numbers/three mail addresses to each.

P.4-2

### S! Address Book (SAB)

Backup Phone Book via Server; synchronise Phone Book/SAB to reflect changes. P.4-15

### Video Call

Place or receive video calls: send live video or previously saved still image during calls. **P.5-2** 

### Camera

Capture still/video images shot with the 2 megapixel handset camera; send images via S! Mail. P.7-2

### Media Player

Play downloaded music and video images as well as those recorded/captured on handset. **P.8-2** 

### Data Folder

Access handset image and sound files from here; files are organised by file type.

P.9-2

### microSD<sup>™</sup> Memory Card

Save files to Memory Card to expand handset memory or backup your handset files. P.9-19

#### Display

Change Wallpaper, System Graphics, Fonts, et cetera to customise handset interface. P.10-3

### **Display Language**

Change Phone Settings to make handset user interface appear in either English or Japanese.

P.10-9

### **Custom Screen**

Load uni-themed Wallpaper, Indicators, ringtones, and more, all at the same time. P.10-10

#### Face Recognition

Save up to five facial images to use along with passwords, etc. to restrict handset access. P.10-22

### Bluetooth® & High-Speed Infrared

Wirelessly exchange handset files with compatible devices. Use Bluetooth® headsets, etc. P.11-2, P.11-10

### Mass Storage

Use a PC to directly access Memory Card content while card is inserted into handset. P.11-14

### Calendar & Tasks

Add events by date with time parameters; set Reminder, add stamps and set other options. P.12-2, P.12-8

#### **Barcodes & Text Scanner**

Scan UPC/QR Codes and text or create QR Codes from Phone Book entries, etc.P.12-19, P.12-22, P.12-23

#### S! FeliCa

Hold handset over compatible reader/writers to use e-money services, etc. all around Japan. **P.17-2** 

#### S! Cast

Subscribe to Japanese mobile periodicals delivered overnight to your handset automatically. **P.18-2** 

#### **Near Chat**

Exchange instant messages with compatible Bluetooth® devices within ten metres. P.19-19

### **Optional Services**

### **Call Forwarding**

Automatically divert all or all unanswered incoming calls to another preset phone number. P.13-2

### Voicemail

Redirect all or unanswered calls to Voicemail; access messages from handset/touchtone landline. P.13-4

### **Missed Call Notification**

Receive records of calls missed while handset is off/out-of-range and Voicemail is active.

P.13-5

### Call Waiting

Reduce missed calls! Answer incoming calls even while the handset is already engaged. P.13-5

### **Conference Call**

Switch between open lines or connect multiple lines at once for wireless teleconferencing. **P.13-6** 

### Call Barring

Restrict all incoming/outgoing calls or apply restrictions by type of call/current location. P.13-7

### Caller ID

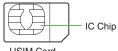
Set handset to show/hide your phone number for all outgoing calls or enter show/hide prefix. P.13-10

### **USIM Card**

### **General Information & Precautions**

Universal Subscriber Identity Module (USIM) Card is an IC card containing customer and authentication information, including the handset number, and limited storage for Phone Book entries and SMS messages. USIM Card must be inserted to use this handset.

- Save contacts on USIM Card Phone Book (see P.4-3).
- $\bullet$  Insert into compatible SoftBank handsets to access files.
- Do not apply excessive force to insert/remove USIM Card.
- Do not insert USIM Card into any other IC card device.
   SoftBank is not liable for resulting damages.
- Keep the USIM Card IC chip clean
- Use a dry, soft cloth to clean the USIM Card.
- Do not attach labels to USIM Card. Malfunction may result.



USIM Card

Note Some downloaded files may be inaccessible after repairs, USIM Card replacement or handset upgrade/ replacement.

In addition, S! Applications, ComicSurfing®, S! Town and Near Chat may be disabled after USIM Card replacement.

### ■If Handset is Dropped or Subjected to Shocks

Handset may not recognise USIM Card; **REFRESH** appears and handset returns to Standby. This is not a malfunction. If **Insert USIM Card** appears or handset does not restart, clean and properly reinsert USIM Card then restart handset.

### Important

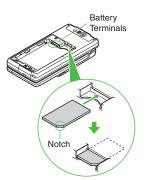
- USIM Card is the property of SoftBank.
- USIM Card will be reissued for a fee if lost or damaged.
- Return USIM Card to SoftBank upon subscription termination.
- Returned USIM Cards are recycled.
- USIM Card specifications may change without prior notice.
- Backup USIM Card files. SoftBank is not liable for lost files.
- If your USIM Card or handset (with USIM Card inserted) is lost or stolen, suspend your service immediately. For details, contact SoftBank Customer Centre, General Information (see P.20-28).

### **Inserting & Removing USIM Card**

- Follow the steps below after removing battery (see P.1-17).
- Do not force USIM Card into or out of handset; damage may result.
- Avoid contact with USIM Card IC chip and Battery terminals; may hinder performance or result in lost data (see P.1-4).

### Inserting

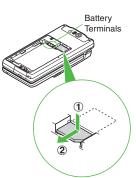
- 1 Slide in USIM Card with IC chip facing down
- Insert battery (Steps 3 4 in "Inserting" on P.1-17)



### Removing

Take care not to lose removed USIM Card.

- Gently slide out USIM
  Card as shown
- Insert battery (Steps 3 4 in "Inserting" on P.1-17)



### **USIM PINs**

There are two Security Codes for USIM Card: PIN1 and PIN2.



### PIN<sub>1</sub>

A 4-digit to 8-digit Security Code to prevent unauthorised use of handset.

- PIN 1 is 9999 by default: change as needed (see P.10-26 "Change PIN").
- Activate PIN Entry (see P.10-26) to require PIN1 entry each time handset (USIM Card inserted) is turned on.



### PIN<sub>2</sub>

Required to clear Call Costs or set Max Cost (see P.2-15). PIN 2 is 9999 by default; change as needed (see P.10-26 "Change PIN").



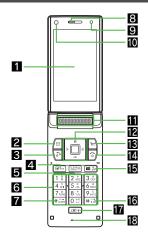
#### PIN Lock & PUK Code

PIN1 Lock or PIN2 Lock is activated if PIN1 or PIN2 is incorrectly entered three times consecutively. Cancel PIN Lock (see P.10-26) by entering the Personal Unblocking Key (PUK Code), For information on PUK Code, contact SoftBank Customer Centre, General Information (see P.20-28).

- Note If PUK Code is incorrectly entered ten times consecutively, USIM Card is locked and handset is disabled Write down PUK Code
  - For USIM Card unlocking procedures, call SoftBank Customer Centre, General Information (see P.20-28).
  - Emergency calls (110, etc.) are not possible when PIN Entry (see P.10-26) is active. See P.2-3 "Emergency Calls".

### **Handset Parts & Functions**

### Handset





### 2 Mail Key

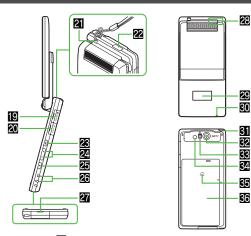
Open Messaging menu or execute Soft Key functions (see **P.1-23**).

### 3 Start Key

Initiate/answer calls. Open records of All Calls.

### 4 Shortcuts & A/a Key

Open Shortcuts menu. In text entry windows, toggle upper/ lower case roman letters or standard/small hiragana/katakana.



### Clear/Back Key

Delete entries, escape/return to previous window.

- 6 Keypad
- 7 ¥ Key

In text entry windows, open Symbol/Pictogram Lists.

8 Earpiece

#### Light Sensor

Detects ambient light level to adjust Display Brightness automatically (**P.6-11**, **P.10-13**). Do not place labels or stickers.

#### 10 Internal Camera

Use during Video Call.

### Speaker

### Multi Selector & Keypad Lock Key

Select menu items, move cursor, scroll, etc. In Standby, press 

for 1+ seconds to activate/cancel Keypad Lock.

### Yahoo! Keitai Key

Open Yahoo! Keitai Main Menu or execute Soft Key functions (see **P.1-23**).

### Power On/Off Key

Press and hold to turn handset power on/off.

### TV/Text Key

Activate TV or change character entry mode. In Standby, press for 1+ seconds to activate/cancel Simple Menu.

### **1**6 # Key

### Multi Job/Manner Key

Toggle multiple active function windows. Press for 1+ seconds to activate/cancel Manner mode.

#### 18 Microphone

#### Memory Card Slot

Insert Memory Card here.

### 2 AV OUT/Headphone/Optical Digital Line-In Port

Connect supplied Headphones, Video Cable, etc.

#### 2 Strap Eyelet

Attach straps as shown; avoid metallic straps.

#### 22 Infrared Port

Use for infrared data transmissions.

#### Circle Talk Key

Press to speak during Circle Talk.

### 22 Volume/Zoom Key

Adjust volume while watching TV or zoom in/out while mobile camera is active.

#### 25 Record/Shutter Key

Start/stop TV recording or capture images with mobile camera. In Standby, press for 1+ seconds to activate mobile camera.

#### 26 Charger Terminal

#### 27 External Device Port

Connect Charger here.

#### 23 Internal Antenna Location

### **External Display**

### Small Light

Flashes for calls/new mail; illuminates red while charging.

#### **GI** Antenna

Extend for TV reception.

#### **External Camera (lens cover)**

### B Portrait (♣)/Macro (♣) Selector

#### Mobile Light

Use as strobe/Pen Light.

#### SE 2 Logo

S! FeliCa contactless IC Card embedded. Place  $olimits \sigma \text{logo over reader/writer to use IC Card.}$ 

### Battery Cover

Note Antenna is for TV reception and does not affect voice quality.

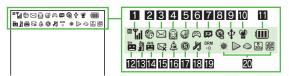
#### Internal Antenna

- Handset has no external antenna. Handset transmits and receives signals via Internal Antenna.
- Do not cover or place stickers, etc. over the area containing Internal Antenna.
- Voice quality varies with handset usage/location.
- For better reception in Standby, close handset (see P.1-12).

Tip Descriptions (P.1-7 - 1-9) are illustrative of general handset usage.

### **Display Indicators**

### Display



### Signal Strength

"រ៉ា: Within Range

Til: Strong, Ti: Moderate, Ti: Low, T: Weak

out: Out-of-Range

### 2 Voice/Video Call, Offline Mode (see P.2-18)

SSL, Packet Transmission (see P.15-3)

- ♣: Incoming Voice Call, 

  : Voice Call in Progress
- \$\mathbb{g}\$: Incoming Video Call, \$\mathbb{g}\$: Video Call in Progress
- 3: Incoming Circle Talk Request, 1: Offline Mode, 6: SSL
- @: Packet Transmission Protocol Ready
- : Waiting\*/Packet Transmission in Progress
- \*Indicator constantly appears if IP Service Setting is *On* and Hot Status Connection Setting is *Online*.
- : Packet Transmission Available

#### 3 Mail

- □: (red): Memory Low
- 🖾 : Receiving Mail, 🖾 : Sending Mail

#### 4 Hot Status\*

- - \*Indicator constantly appears if IP Service Setting is *On* and Hot Status Connection Setting is *Online*.

## Auto Delivery Info, Cast Info (see P.18-2)

#### Software Update (see P.20-8)

- 🗟: Software Update, 🖺: Software Update Result
- 3: Live Monitor Info

# S! Application (see P.16-5), Music Player (see P.8-10) TV Recording (see P.6-15)

- :: Music Player Active, \$\Pi\$: TV Recording in Progress

### Memory Card Status, Loudspeaker

### Microphone Mute (see P.2-11)

### TV Recording Timer/TV Timer (see P.6-19)

- ☑: Inserted, ☑: In Use, ☑: Formatting
- ☑: Unusable/Poor Connection
- \$: Loudspeaker Active. \$: Microphone Muted
- : Loudspeaker Active & Microphone Muted

### Multi Job (see P.1-26), IC Card Lock

- 팀: Multiple Functions (Multi Job) Active
- **Q**: IC Card Lock Active

# ☑ External Transmission, PC Site Browser (see P.15-18) TV Signal Strength

- ⇒: Infrared Connection in Progress
- 🖺: Infrared Transmission in Progress
- 8: Bluetooth® Transmission Ready

Appears in grey when Visibility is set to Hide My Phone.

- 8 : Bluetooth® Transmission in Progress
- : Bluetooth® Talk in Progress
- ■: PC Site Browser in Use
- : TV Signal Strength

### Mode (see P.10-2)

### Battery Strength (see P.1-16)

Indicator may appear vertically (e.g. 1).

#### Answer Phone (see P.2-9)

- : Answer Phone Active
- : Answer Phone Active & Message Recorded
- ■: Answer Phone Cancelled & Message Recorded

### Call Forwarding or Voicemail Active (see P.13-2)

Appears when *Always* (forwarding condition) is set for Voice Calls.

- Mew Voicemail (see P.13-4)
- Message Delivery Failure (see P.14-9)
- 16 Alarm (see P.12-11), Schedule (see P.12-4)
  - **\$**: Alarm Set

#### M Show Secret Data (see P.10-28)

#### Password Lock (see P.10-26), Keypad Lock (see P.1-22)

- Show Secret Data Active
- 🖺: Password Lock Active, 🖷: Keypad Lock Active

### Ringtone (see P.10-16), Vibration (see P.10-17)

- Æ: Silent, Æ: Increasing Volume, 
  B: Vibration Active

### Copyright Information, Infrared Transmission

- \*\*: Content Key Received
  When Content Key memory is low, \*\*\* (below 10 %) or
  \*\*\* (below 5 %) appears.

#### Weather Indicator (see P.18-4)

### **External Display**

Press •, • or • in closed position to turn External Display Backlight on. External Display shuts off after set Duration (see **P.10-14**).

#### Indicators

See major External Display indicators below.



#### **Clock View**

- While External Display Backlight is on (in closed position), press • to toggle Clock view (Large Clock, Clock (S), World Clock or Clock & Date).
  - Display Date & Time setting (see P.10-14) is not affected.
  - View is fixed while music plays, during infrared transfers, etc.

#### Additional Indicators

Indicator and number of calls/messages, etc. appear for missed calls, new mail/information, etc.

Missed Calls	**	Message Delivery Failure	⊠ × <b>→</b>
Answer Phone Message	æ	Content Key	+Î
Missed Call Notification	**	Bluetooth® Notification	<b>.</b>
New Voicemail		Cast Info	<b>A</b>
Alarm	Ф	Cast Reception Failure	<b>A</b> ×
Schedule Reminder	ī	TV Alarm (Watch)	#
Task Reminder	Ş	TV Alarm (Record)	₽
New Messages	X	Hot Status Notification	0
New Delivery Report		Weather Indicator Update	.∳0

- Up to two indicators appear at the same time. Press or
   to view more.
- Corresponding Pictogram (≅, etc.) appears for Feeling Mail.

### **Display Positions**

### Closed Position

Handset is closed. Keep handset in this position when not in use.



### ■ Portrait Position

Handset is open. Place or answer calls, enter text, etc.



### Cycloid Position

Open handset and rotate Display 90 degrees clockwise to use the following functions in wide view: Digital TV, TV Player, PC Site Browser, Document Viewer, mobile camera, Video Player, Video Call and compatible S! Applications.



#### Note 🕨

- Do not carry handset with Display in Cycloid position.
   Display may be damaged.
- Do not forcefully rotate Display; damage may result.
- In Cycloid position, use Headphones or Loudspeaker for telephony; in portrait position use Earpiece & Mic.

Tip ▶

Rotating Display into Cycloid position while handset is in Standby automatically activates TV. To change this setting, see P.6-25 "Turn Display to".

## **Battery & Charger**

### **Getting Started**

Charge battery before first use/after period of disuse.

### Battery Life

- Do not use/store battery at extreme temperatures; this may shorten battery life.
  - Ideally, use/store between 5°C 35°C.
- Use specified Charger only; others may damage handset/ battery or overheat or ignite battery.
- Replace battery if operating time shortens noticeably.

### Charging

- Do not use Charger for other purposes.
- Contact with metal may short, overheat or burst battery.
- Small Light illuminates red while charging. (It may take longer for the light to illuminate when handset is off.)

- Charging takes approximately 150 minutes (with handset off).
  - Charging time may vary by ambient temperature.
- Handset and Charger may warm during charging.
- Separate Charger from TV/radio if interference occurs.

### Precautions

- Clean device charging terminals with a dry cotton swab.
- Avoid:
- Extreme temperatures
- Humidity, dust and vibration
- Direct sunlight
- Charge battery at least once every six months; an uncharged battery may become unusable.
- Use a case when carrying battery separately.

Гір 🕨

- Battery must be inside handset to charge it.
- While charging battery with handset on, I flashes until battery is fully charged.
- Battery will charge regardless of handset position.

### Estimated Hours of Use (fully charged battery)

Continuous Talk Time	180 minutes
Continuous Standby Time	380 hours
Continuous Operating Time	6 hours
Continuous Playback Time	14 hours
Continuous Video Call Talk Time	100 minutes (with Internal Camera in use)
Continuous TV Reception Time	5 hours
Continuous TV Recording Time	4.5 hours

Values calculated with Backlight Brightness set to Level:2(Auto).

- Continuous Talk Time is an average measured with a new, fully charged battery, with stable signals. Continuous Talk Time may be less than half this value if signal is weak.
- Continuous Standby Time is an average measured with a new, fully charged battery, in closed position without calls or operations, in Standby with stable signals. Standby Time may be less than half this value if handset is out-of-range or signal is weak. Standby Time may vary by environment (battery status, temperature, etc.).
- Continuous Operating Time is the length of time handset keys can be pressed continuously without calls.
- Continuous Playback Time is measured while music plays (Sound Effects set to *Normal*) using Headphones, Offline Mode cancelled, and in closed position.
- Continuous TV Reception Time is measured while watching TV (Audio & Visuals set to Standard) using Headphones, until battery level falls to Level 1 (approximately 10% of capacity).
- The above values (Battery Time) are nominal values, measured under stable signal conditions.

### **Battery Time**

#### Using handset in poor conditions may shorten Battery Time:

- Poor Usage Conditions
  - Extreme temperatures (use within a range of 5°C to 35°C)
  - Impaired handset, battery or Charger terminals
  - Signal is weak/handset is out-of-range
- Power Consuming Operations
- TV is active
- Recording/playing TV programs
- Activating/using S! Applications
- Repeated mobile camera use or barcode scanning
- Frequent use of Mobile Light
- Playing video images
- Frequent use of Pen Light
- Continuous Keypad use (keeping backlights on for long periods)
- Using Music Player/Voice Recorder
- Frequent Bluetooth® transmissions
- Frequent infrared transfers
- Frequent opening/closing of handset
- Power Consuming Settings
  - Increasing Backlight Time Out/Display Saving time
- Setting Backlight to illuminate brighter
- Activating Bluetooth® in Standby
- Activating Video Output
- Activating Keypad Tones

### **Extend Battery Time**

Adjust Light Settings (see P.10-13) to extend Battery Time. Select shorter Display Saving/Backlight time and lower Brightness.

### When Battery Runs Out

A message appears and short beeps sound.

Press to stop short beeps. (Short beeps do not sound in Manner mode.)

### ■ During Voice Call

A double beep sounds every five seconds. After 20 seconds, the call ends and handset shuts down.

### ■ During Video Call

A message appears and call ends with a double beep, then short beeps sound. Handset shuts down after 20 seconds.

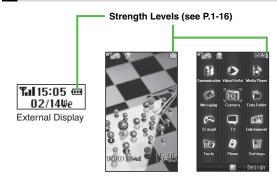
### **Battery Disposal**

Do not dispose of an exhausted battery with ordinary refuse; always tape over battery terminals before disposal. Take exhausted battery to a SoftBank shop, or follow the local disposal regulations.

# Tip This product requires a lithium-ion battery. Lithium-ion batteries are a recyclable resource.

- To recycle a used lithium-ion battery, take it to any shop displaying the symbol shown to the right.
- Lision
- To avoid fire or electric shock, do not:
  - Short-circuit battery
  - Disassemble battery

### **Battery Strength**

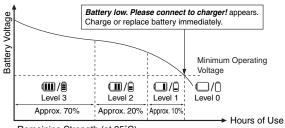


 When battery runs out, Battery low. Please connect to charger! appears and short beeps sound. Handset shuts down after 20 seconds.

#### Indicator

Battery Strength indicator varies as shown.

Charge or replace when level is low.



Remaining Strength (at 25°C)

### Battery Strength & Environment

At low temperatures, battery is consumed faster. At high temperatures, battery lasts longer.

- Note Battery Strength indicator is for reference only.
  - At Level 1, some functions including TV, Video Camera, Music Player and Voice Recorder do not operate (see P.6-8, P.6-15, P.6-16, P.7-8, P.8-9, P.12-16).

### Small Light & Battery Strength Indicator

#### Handset Power On

Smal	ll Light	Indicator (III/II)	Conditions
(	Off	Flashes	Ambient temperature is outside the range of 5°C to 35°C
Flash	nes red	Flashes	Battery life has ended, or battery defect
Illumin	ates red	Flashes	Charging
(	Off	On	Charging completed/Standby

#### Handset Power Off

Small Light	Indicator (Ⅲ/ॿ)	Conditions
Flashes red	Off	Battery life has ended, or battery defect
Illuminates red	Off	Charging
Off	Off	Charging completed

### **Installing & Removing Battery**

### Inserting

1 Press down and slide cover as Battery Cover shown



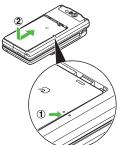
2 Lift and remove cover as shown



- 3 Insert battery
  - With printed side up, fit tabs into battery cavity slots.



- Close cover
  - Align the marks (1) on handset and cover then slide cover gently.



### Removing

- Turn handset power off before removing battery.
- Do not remove battery immediately after saving files, sending messages, etc.
- Press down and slide cover as Battery Cover shown



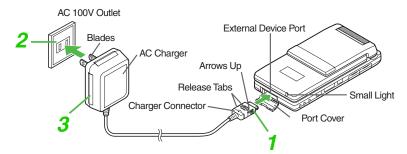
2 Lift and remove cover as shown



- Remove battery
  - Take hold of Battery Tab here and lift as shown.



### **AC Charger**



### Use specified Charger only.

### **Open Port Cover to connect Charger**

- · Insert connector until it clicks.
- . Use slot to gently pull Port Cover down and out as shown.



### Plug Charger into AC outlet

- Charging starts and Small Light illuminates red (see P.1-16). Charging takes approximately 150 minutes.
- Charging is complete when Small Light goes out.
- Extend Charger blades. (Fold back when not in use.)



### After Charging

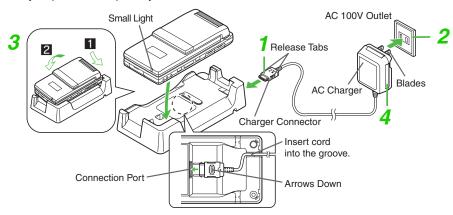
### Unplug Charger from AC outlet, then handset

- Squeeze release tabs to remove connector.
- Replace Port Cover to protect External Device Port.

- Note Do not pull, bend or twist AC Charger cord.
  - AC Charger is compatible with household currents between AC 100V and 240V.

### **Desktop Holder**

Desktop Holder may be purchased separately.



### Use specified Charger only.

- 1 Insert Charger connector into Desktop Holder until it clicks
  - Connection Port is on the back of Desktop Holder.
- Plug Charger into AC outlet
  - Extend Charger blades. (Fold back when not in use.)



### Gently insert handset into Desktop Holder

- Fit tabs into slots as shown in 1 and push handset as indicated in 2 until it clicks into place (resting flat).
- Charging starts and Small Light illuminates red (see P.1-16).
   Charging takes approximately 150 minutes.
- Charging is complete when Small Light goes out.

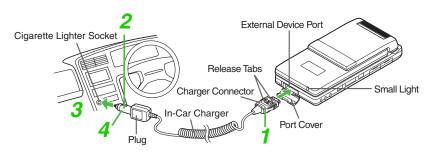
### After Charging

### Unplug Charger from outlet and remove handset

• To remove connector, squeeze release tabs.

### **In-Car Charger**

In-Car Charger may be purchased separately.



- Open Port Cover to connect In-Car Charger
  - Insert connector until it clicks.
- Plug Charger into cigarette lighter socket
- Start car engine
  - Charging starts and Small Light illuminates red (see P.1-16). Charging takes approximately 150 minutes.
  - Charging is complete when Small Light goes out.

  - **Tip** For more information, see In-Car Charger manual.
    - · Use optional In-Car Holder to secure handset.

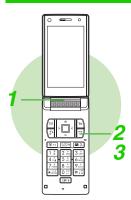
### **After Charging**

### Unplug Charger from cigarette lighter socket, then handset

- Squeeze release tabs to remove connector.
- Replace Port Cover to protect External Device Port.

- Note Version Use In-Car Charger in negative earth vehicles only.
  - Disconnect Charger before leaving vehicle to prevent charging with engine off.
  - Do not use In-Car Charger with Desktop Holder.
  - · Avoid charging battery inside extremely hot vehicles.
  - · Never use handset while driving.

### Handset Power On/Off





Standby

Open handset

Press and hold 6

After Power On Graphic, handset enters Standby.

**Turning Off** 

Press of for 2+ seconds

After Power Off Graphic, handset shuts down.

#### My Details Setup & Network Information

- When handset is turned on for the first time, setup confirmation appears after Power On Graphic. Choose Yes or It! → Press F → Enter last name → Press F → Enter first name
  - ▶ Press
- Handset initiates Network Information retrieval when □, ☑ or is pressed for the first time. Choose Yes or It! → Press
  - Retrieve Network Information to use Network-related services and TV. (Clock is set automatically after retrieval.)
  - To update Network Information manually, see P.11-15 "Retrieve NW Info".
- · Unless otherwise noted, operations in this manual are described with Clock set.

#### **Return to Standby**

- Press to return to Standby from function windows, menus, etc.
- When a confirmation appears, choose **Yes** and press . Handset returns to Standby.

- Note > USIM Card data is read after turning power on. Signal strength indicator may take some time to appear. It may take longer when turning power on for the first time.
  - Insert USIM Card appears when USIM Card is not inserted (see P.1-4).
  - Some functions are disabled if handset is left with power off or out-of-range for long periods. For details, contact SoftBank Customer Centre, General Information (see P.20-28).

Display turns off after a period of inactivity.



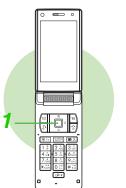
### My Details

 1
 Press
 ■ ପଅଳ

Handset phone number appears.

• To add, edit or delete My Details, see P.4-19.

Press to exit



### **Keypad Lock**

Use Keypad Lock to lock handset keys and prevent accidental operation/function activation.

### Activating

1 Press ■ for 1+ seconds

appears and Keypad Lock is set.

Cancelling

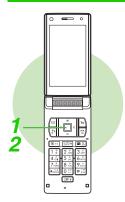
Press ■ for 1+ seconds disappears.

Note Emergency calls (110, etc.) are possible even when Keypad Lock is active. See P.2-3 "Emergency Calls".

#### Tip ► When Keypad Lock is Active

- Incoming calls temporarily cancel Keypad Lock. To answer a call, press [2]. [Activate Any Key Answer (see P.10-2) to answer calls with other keys (see P.2-6).] Keypad lock reactivates after the call.
- Handset power does not turn off even if (a) is pressed for 2+ seconds.

### **Handset Menus**





Main Menu
Shortcut to Custom Screens -

(see P.10-10)

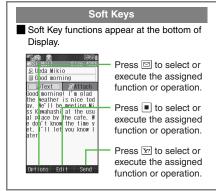
### **Main Menu**

Access functions/operations from Main Menu.

- Press 
  Main Menu opens.
- 2 Use 

   to select an item and press ■

Sub Menu opens (see **P.20-2** - **20-3**).



#### Main Menu Items

Communication	Launch Hot Status, Circle Talk, S! Town, S! Loop or Near Chat
Yahoo! Keitai	Access Yahoo! Keitai Mobile Internet and PC sites or use Live Monitor
Media Player	Play/download music/video
Messaging	Open/create messages, etc.
Camera	Capture still images or record video
Data Folder	Open files saved on handset/ Memory Card
S! Appli	Use/download S! Applications
TV	Watch Digital TV, play recorded programs, etc.
Entertainment	Launch ComicSurfing®/S! Cast or read E-Books
Tools	Use Calendar, Alarms, etc.
Phone	Search contacts, add entries, etc.
Settings	Customise handset interface, sounds, etc.



### **User Shortcuts**

### **Using Shortcuts**

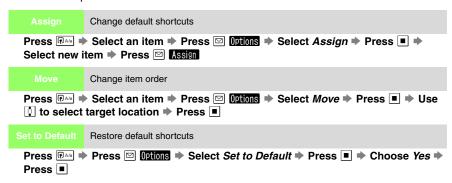
Press a key (1 2 - 9 to access assigned function, folder or menu. Default Shortcuts:

	1 8	Received Msg.	6 IR	Data Folder
	2 # ABC	Create Message	7 g PORS	Calculator
	3 d	Bookmarks	8 **	Alarms
	4 th	Calendar	9 <sub>wxvz</sub>	Bluetooth®
1	5 kl	Phone Book List		



- In Standby, press a key (1 9 ) for 1+ seconds Assigned function, folder or menu opens.
- **Editing Shortcuts**

Edit items except Main Menu and Enter Number.



### **Quick Operations**

In Standby, enter numbers to access functions. Accessible functions vary by entered digits. To activate functions, press corresponding Soft Key.

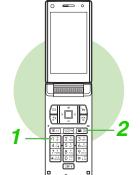
Function Digits	1	2	3	4	5 - 6	7 - 10	11 - 12	13 - 24	25 - 32
Speed Dial (see P.4-14)	0	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	X
Speed Video Call (see P.4-14)	0	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	X
Calculator (see P.12-15)	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	×	X
Expenses Memo (see P.12-26)	0	0	0	0	0	×	×	×	X
Speed Mail (see P.14-34)	O <sup>1</sup>	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	X
Calendar (see P.12-2)	×	×	×	O <sup>2</sup>	×	×	×	×	X
Set Alarm (see P.12-11)	×	×	×	$\bigcirc$ 3	×	×	×	×	X
Call Circle Talk (see P.19-14)	×	×	×	×	×	×	0	0	X
Place International Calls (see P.2-5)	×	×	×	×	0	0	0	0	0



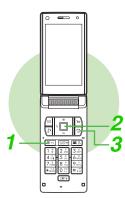
<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>2</sup>Enter four digits for month and day and press 🛅 to view entries up to 12 months forward of current date.

### Example: Enter 1111 to use Calculator





<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>3</sup>Enter four digits for time (24-hour format) to set Alarm.



### **Multi Job**

Open a function window while another is active.

- 1 In a function window, press All Shortcuts menu opens.
  - Some shortcuts are disabled.
  - Multi Job cannot be activated from some
  - windows/under some conditions (e.g. while watching TV in Cycloid position, when an S! Application is active, etc.).
  - In text/phone number entry windows, press [Plana] for 1+ seconds.

- 2 Select a function and press Menu/window opens (♣ appears).
  - Two function windows may appear in TV window.
  - Press 🖭 to toggle active windows.
- ? Press 🗟 to exit

The other window appears (♣ disappears).

When a confirmation appears, choose **Yes** 

Press

### **Handling Incoming Calls**

Press 
to answer a call. End the call to return.

### Pen Light

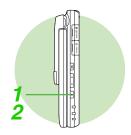
Use handset as a flashlight in closed position.

Press of for 1+ seconds

Mobile Light illuminates.

Press to turn off

Note Do not point Pen Light at people or look at it directly.



## **Security Codes**

Handset Code, Centre Access Code and Network Password are needed for handset use.

For details, contact SoftBank Customer Centre, General Information (see P.20-28).

### **Handset Code**

4-digit number (*9999* by default) required to use or change some handset functions.

- #appears as digits are entered.
- If Handset code is incorrect! appears, enter again.
- Change Handset Code as needed (see P.10-29).

### **Centre Access Code**

4-digit number selected at initial subscription; required to access Voicemail via landlines or subscribe to fee-based information.

### **Network Password**

4-digit number selected at initial subscription; required to restrict handset services. (see **P.13-7**).

- If Network Password is incorrectly entered three times consecutively, Call Barring settings are locked. To resolve, Network Password and Centre Access Code must be changed. For details, contact SoftBank Customer Centre, General Information (see P.20-28).
- Change Network Password as needed (see P.13-10).

Note |

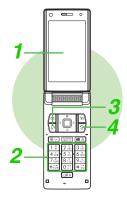
- Write down Handset Code, Centre Access Code and Network Password.
- Do not reveal Handset Code, Centre Access Code and Network Password. SoftBank is not liable for misuse or damages.

Tip ► There are two other Security Codes. For details, see P.1-6 "PIN1" and "PIN2".

**Basic Handset Operations** 

## Initiating a Call

See P.2-5 to initiate international calls from Japan and P.5-3 for Video Calls.



### Confirm handset is on

- Check signal strength (see P.1-9 11).
- Handset will not transmit when out, 1/8, 1/8 or appears (see P.20-4 - 20-6).

### Enter a phone number



- · Include dialling code for all numbers. To send/block Caller ID, enter a phone number and press 
  ☐ Options → Select
  - Show Mv ID or Hide Mv ID → Press

### Confirm the number and press 🕞

#### **Correcting Numbers**

- Use to move cursor and press to delete the digit above the cursor. Move cursor and press for 1+ seconds to delete the digits above and after the cursor.
- Before moving cursor, press for 1+ seconds to delete the entire number and return to Standby.
- If you misdial, press 1 to hang up and try again.

#### **Busy Numbers**

• Press 1 to end the call and try again later.

### Press ি to end call

· Alternatively, close handset.

#### Calling Numbers Not Saved in Phone Book

- · Save this number to your Phone Book? appears after calls.
  - To save, choose *Yes* → Press → Perform Step 4 in "Saving from Call Log" on **P.4-8**
  - To end without saving, choose No ⇒ Press
- To hide this confirmation, see P.4-5 "Confirmation for Unsaved Numbers"

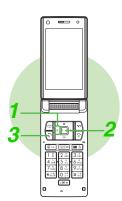
- **Note** In Cycloid position, use Headphones (with Microphone) or Loudspeaker for telephony; in portrait position use Earpiece & Mic.
  - Do not cover Microphone while talking.
  - Avoid covering area over Internal Antenna.
  - Voice quality is affected depending on how and where handset is used.

- Tip Check Call Timers (see P.2-14) and Call Costs (see P.2-15).
  - For operations during a call, see P.2-11 2-12.

### **Emergency Calls**

Emergency calls (110, 119, 118, etc.) are possible even while some handset restrictions are active.

Active Restriction	Emergency Calls
Keypad Lock (see P.1-22)	Possible
Max Cost (see P.2-15)	Possible
Offline Mode (see P.2-18)	Not Possible
PIN Entry (see P.10-26)	Not Possible
Password Lock (see P.10-26)	Possible
Outgoing Calls (see P.13-8)	Possible



### Redial

Place calls from Dialled Numbers. Up to 30 recently dialled numbers are saved.

🖊 Press 🖭 (🕒)



- Select a record and press 🔳
- 3 Press 🗈

Handset dials the number.

Indicators

	Dialled Voice Call	Dialled Video Call
ů,	Requested Circle Talk	

Dialled numbers appear with date and time, most recent first.

- Name appears if saved in Phone Book.
- Use to open Received Calls or All Calls.
- Tip When the same number is dialled more than once, only the last record appears. (All records appear for Circle Talk.)
  - Records remain even after handset power is turned off.
  - When there are 30 records, oldest records are replaced by new ones. To delete records manually, see P.2-13.

### Placing an International Call from Japan

Calls cannot be placed when outside Japan as 911SH does not support international roaming.

Service requires an additional contract. For details, contact SoftBank Customer Centre, General Information (see P.20-28).

### Enter a phone number

- Include dialling code for landline numbers.
- Press 
   □ Options
- 3 Select Int'l Call and press

Country names appear.

### ✓ Select a country and press

+ (international prefix symbol) and corresponding country code appear.

To call unlisted countries, select *Enter Code* → Press ■ → Enter country code → Press ■

### 5 Press 🗗

- Tip ▶ In Standby, press Opt for 1+ seconds to enter + (international prefix).
  - To change the default international prefix, see P.10-30 "Int'l Prefix".
  - To save frequently used country codes, see P.10-30 "Country Codes".
  - To restrict outgoing international calls, see P.13-7 "Call Barring".

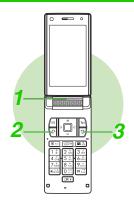
### **Quick Operations**

■ Enter a phone number → Press ♠ Select a country → Press ■ → Skip ahead to Step 5

#### **Direct Entry**

- Press Off or 1+ seconds (+ appears) ⇒ Enter country code
   Enter a phone number including the dialling code
   Skip ahead to Step 5
  - Omit the first **0** of the dialling code except when calling Italy (country code: 39).

## Incoming Call



When a call arrives, open handset



- Number appears when Caller ID is sent.
- Name appears if saved in Phone Book.
- To reject an incoming call, press ☑ Options while handset is ringing/vibrating ⇒ Select Reject → Press ■
- Standby returns; record appears in Received Calls.
- To place a caller on hold, press ③ while handset is ringing/vibrating.
  - Press 🔁 to answer the call on hold.
- Answering a Video Call: see P.5-3

- 🤈 Press 🗗
  - When Any Key Answer (see P.10-2) is Active
  - Press any of these keys to answer calls:
- 🙎 Press 🔂 to end call
  - · Alternatively, close handset.

Calls from Numbers Not Saved in Phone Book

- Save this number to your Phone Book? appears after calls.
  - To save, choose Yes ⇒ Press ⇒ Perform Step 4 in "Saving from Call Log" on P.4-8
  - To end without saving, choose *No* → Press ■
- To hide this confirmation, see P.4-5
   "Confirmation for Unsaved Numbers".

- **Tip** When Caller ID is not sent, *Withheld* appears instead of the phone number.
  - Up to 30 received call records are saved (see P.2-13).
    - Use Quick Recorder (see P.2-10) to record caller messages on handset when Answer Phone
      is inactive
    - Change ringtone volumes/patterns, vibration patterns and Small Light status (see P.10-16 10-18).
    - To answer calls while watching TV, see P.6-5.
      - To instantly mute ringtone for that call, press ......

### **Redirecting a Call**

Call Forwarding: see P.13-2

Press Y Fwd to direct incoming call to a specified number.

■ Voicemail: see P.13-4

Unanswered calls are forwarded to Voicemail Centre.

Activate Missed Call Notification (see **P.13-5**) for records of calls missed while handset is off/out-of-range.

■Answer Phone: see P.2-9

Record caller messages on handset.

Use Quick Recorder (see **P.2-10**) to record caller messages on handset when Answer Phone is inactive.

#### Information

- Information window opens for Missed Calls or Answer Phone messages.
  - Select Call and press to see details (see P.2-13).
  - Select Voice Message and press to play recorded messages (see P.2-10).
- Information window opens for other items as well. Select an item and press ■ to open the corresponding window.



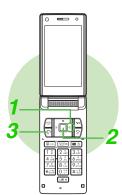
To open Information list, follow these steps.

Press ■ → Select Phone → Press ■ → Select Information → Press ■

■ To clear list, open Information list and press ☑ Options ⇒
Select Reset ⇒ Press ■ ⇒ Choose Yes ⇒ Press ■

#### **Answering Calls with Headphones**

- Press Call Button for 1+ seconds to answer a call.
  - To end the call, press Call Button for 1+ seconds until a beep sounds.



### **Calling from Received Calls**

Up to 30 received calls are saved. When Caller ID is sent, number appears. Place calls directly to those numbers.

**1** Press □ (►)



Received numbers appear with date and time, most recent first.

- Name appears if saved in Phone Book.
- Use to open Dialled Numbers or All Calls.

Select a record and press 🔳

3 Press 🗗

Handset dials the number.

#### Indicators

	Answered Voice Call	<b>₽</b>	Rejected Voice Call
#B	Answered Video Call	×	Rejected Video Call
*	Requested Circle Talk		Missed Call Notification
	Missed Voice Call		Answer Phone Answered
•	Missed Video Call	 139	Forwarded to Voicemail Centre
**	Missed Circle Talk Request		

### Tip ▶ • Names in Secret entries appear only when Show Secret Data is active.

- Records remain even after handset power is turned off.
- When there are 30 records, oldest records are replaced by new ones. To delete records manually, see P.2-13.

### Answer Phone

Record caller messages on handset.

- Answer Phone cannot be used when handset is off, out-of-range or in Offline Mode. Use Voicemail (see P.13-4) to record caller messages when Answer Phone is not available.
- Record up to 90 seconds or 20 messages between Answer Phone and Voice Memo (see P.2-12).
- Answer Phone is inactive by default.



Settings 

Call/Video Call (

Answer Phone

### Select Switch On/Off and press

- To sample outgoing message, select Outgoing Message 🖈 Press
  - Press to stop.

### **Activating**

### **1** Choose *On* and press ■

• Press 🗟 to return to Standby (🖺 appears). (🖺 appears when messages are recorded.)

#### Cancellina

### **1** Choose *Off* and press ■

Tip ► Alternatively, press for 1+ seconds in Standby to activate/cancel Answer Phone

- Note When less than 12 seconds remain or 20 messages are recorded. Answer Phone is disabled. Delete messages to activate Answer Phone
  - Answer Phone is not available for incoming Video Calls.
  - In Manner, Drive or Original mode, respective Answer Phone setting (see P.10-2) takes priority.

#### When Answer Phone is Active

- For incoming calls, outgoing message plays and recording starts
  - · Recording continues even if handset is closed.
- To answer calls, press 🔁 during recording (no message will be recorded).
- When recording ends, we appears.
- If recording capacity becomes full after the recording. Answer Phone is cancelled and sappears.

### **Playing Messages**

Main Menu Phone

### Select *Play Messages* and press 🔳

Number of recordings appears and playback starts from the most recent message. After all messages have played, playback ends automatically.

- Press 🖭 to replay.
- Press 🚟 to stop playback.
- 📕 To skip a message, press 🔳 🔳 Next 🛮 or 🖼.
- To play the previous message, press twice during playback.
- To delete a message, press 

  Delete during playback 

  Choose Yes 

  Press 

  Press 

  Press 

  Press □
- Note ➤ Message playback stops for incoming calls. Press № to answer a call.
  - **Tip** ► Alternatively, press in Standby to play messages.

#### **Earpiece Volume**

Follow these steps to activate or mute Earpiece for outgoing message/caller message recordings.

Press ■ → Select Settings → Press ■ → Use ⊡
to select Call/Video Call → Select Answer Phone →
Press ■ → Select Volume → Press ■ → Select
Link to Profile or Silent → Press ■

• For Link to Profile, current Earpiece Volume applies.

#### **Answer Time**

Adjust ring time between 0 and 30 seconds (Answer Phone waits to answer calls).

Press ■ → Select Settings → Press ■ → Use ← to select Call/Video Call → Select Answer Phone → Press ■ → Select Answer Time → Press ■ → Enter time (00 - 30) → Press ■

- To start recording immediately after a call arrives, enter 00 for time Press
- Activation Time is 09 seconds by default.
- When Answer Phone and Voicemail or Call Forwarding are both active, the function with the shortest ring time takes priority.

#### Example:

Ring time for Answer Phone: 9 seconds

Ring time for Voicemail or Call Forwarding: 10 seconds

In this example, Answer Phone responds first. (Priority may change depending on signal conditions.)

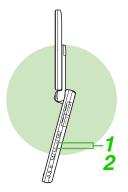
 If Answer Phone is full or handset is in Offline Mode or out-of-range, incoming calls are handled by Voicemail or Call Forwarding.

#### **Quick Recorder**

Use Quick Recorder to record caller messages on handset when Answer Phone is inactive. When a call arrives, follow these steps. Outgoing message plays and caller's message is recorded.

Press ☑ Options → Select Record Message →
Press ■

## **Engaged Call Operations**



### **Earpiece Volume**

Adjust Earpiece Volume (5 levels).

- Volume level remains as set even after handset power is turned off.
- To adjust Earpiece Volume in Standby, see P.10-19.
- Earpiece Volume is Level 3 by default.
- During a call, press **■** or **▶**
- Press **→** (up) or **→** (down) to adjust volume

### **Voice Output**

Use Loudspeaker for handsfree conversations During a call, press . To cancel, press 🔳. Mute Microphone Other party's voice is audible During a call, press Y Mute. ■ To cancel, press 🛂 Unmute Hold tone sounds and each other's voice is not audible Subscription to Call Waiting (see P.13-5) or Conference Call (see P.13-6) is required. During a call, press ☑ Options → Select Hold → Press 🔳 To cancel, press 🖾 Options 🖈 Select Retrieve 🖈 Press 🔳 Alternatively, press

#### **Touch Tones**

- Use Touch Tones to send alphanumeric messages to pagers or operate a home answerphone remotely. • Use 0 - 9. # and # to send Touch Tones.



### **Voice Memo**

Record up to 90 seconds or 20 messages between Voice Memo and Answer Phone (see P.2-9).

- **1** During a call, press □ Options
- 2 Select *Record* and press Recording starts.

- 3 Press 🔳 to stop
  - Alternatively, end call to stop. (Recordings remain even after handset power is turned off.)

Play

Play Voice Memos

Main Menu Phone

Select Play Messages ⇒ Press ■

For details, see P.2-10 "Playing Messages".

### **Other Engaged Call Operations**

Open Phone	Open Phone Book entries
<b>Book Entry</b>	Press ☑ Options → Select Phone Book List → Press ■ → Select an entry → Press ■
Save Phone	Save the other party's number to Phone Book
Book Entry	Press ☑ Options → Select <i>Phone Book List</i> → Press ☑ → Press ☑ Options → Select
DOOK EIIII y	Add New Entry → Press ■ → Perform from Step 2 on P.4-4
Open	Check received/sent/draft messages
Message	Press ☐ Options → Select Messaging → Press ☐ → Select an item → Press ☐
Create	Create a new message
Message	Press ☑ Options → Select Messaging → Press ■ → Select Create Message or Create
wessage	New SMS → Press ■ → Perform from Step 3 on P.14-8 or on P.14-7
Dial New	Call another number
Number	Press   Options  Select Dial New Number  Press  Fress  Fr
Enable/	Select whether to send Touch Tones during a call
Disable	Press ☑ Options → Select Disable DTMF or Enable DTMF → Press ■
DTMF	Fiess   UNRUM - Select Disable Dimir of Enable Dimir - Piess

Tip To switch sound output between handset and handsfree devices during a call, see P.11-8 "Sound Output".

### Call Log



Open the following records:

All Calls	All dialled/received calls
Dialled Numbers	All dialled calls
Received Calls	All received calls

Select a record and press

Record details appear.

1 Press 🗗

II Calla anana

All Calls opens.

Press •• to open others.

Tip ► Press 1 to open All Calls during a call.

Delete records one at a time

Press → Select a record → Press ✓ Options → Select Delete → Press → Choose Yes → Press ■

Delete All Delete all records

Delete All → Press ■ → Enter Handset Code → Press ■ → Choose Yes → Press ■

Tip ► To save phone numbers to Phone Book, see P.4-8 "Saving from Call Log".

### **Using Call Log**

Call

Place calls

Create Message

Create messages

Press 
Select Create Message 
Press 
Press Select Create Message 
Press Fress Press Press

### Call Timers & Data Counter

### **Call Timers**

Check estimated time of the most recent call (Last Call Time) and all calls made since Clear Timers was last applied (All Calls Time).

- Times for Dialled Calls and Received Calls appear separately.
- To show elapsed Call Time during a call, see P.10-31 "Call Time Counter".



- Select Dialled Calls or Received Calls and press
- Press to return to Call Timers menu
  - Press of to return to Standby.
- Tip Last Call Time and All Calls Time remain even after handset power is turned off.
  - Ring time for incoming or outgoing calls is not counted. On hold time is counted

**Reset Call Timers** 

Main Menu

► Settings → Call/Video Call (•••) → Call Time & Cost 

Call Timers

Select *Clear Timers* ▶ Press ■ ▶ Enter Handset Code → Press ■ → Choose Yes → Press ■

### **Data Counter**

Check estimated volume of the most recent or all packet transmissions (sent, received and total). Charges do not appear.

► Settings → Call/Video Call ( ••• ) → Call Time & Main Menu Cost Data Counter

- Select Last Data or All Data and press
- Press to return to Data Counter menu
  - Press of to return to Standby.

Reset Data Counter

► Settings → Call/Video Call ( ••• ) → Call Time & Main Menu Cost **Data** Counter

Select Clear Counter → Press ■ → Choose Yes → Press

### Call Costs

Check estimated call charge of the most recent call or all calls.

To show Call Cost automatically after each call, see **P.10-31** "Display Call Cost".

Main Menu 

Settings → Call/Video Call (□) → Call Time & Cost → Call Costs

- 🥤 Select Last Call or All Calls and press 🔳
- 2 Press 🔳 to return to Call Costs menu
  - Press of to return to Standby.
  - Tip ► Call Costs remain even after handset power is turned off.
    - Sum of charges appears for Conference Call (Optional Service).

Clear Costs Reset Call Costs

Main Menu 

Settings 

Call/Video Call (□) 

Call Time & Cost 

Cost 

Call Costs

Select Clear Costs → Press ■ → Enter PIN2 → Press ■ → Choose Yes → Press ■

Cost Units Set currency and conversion rate (per yen) to show converted amount in Call Costs

DefaultYEN 1

Cost → Čall Costs → Cost Units

Press ☑ ■ Titt → Enter PIN2 → Press ■ → Enter

► Settings → Call/Video Call ( ••• ) → Call Time &

Press Press Finter PIN2 Press Finter currency Press Finter conversion rate Press Finter conversion rat

### **Limit Call Costs**

Main Menu

Set a limit of total call charges

When the limit is reached, outgoing calls are blocked

Main Menu 
Settings → Call/Video Call ( → ) → Call Time & Cost → Call Costs

Select Max Cost → Press ■ → Press ☑ Set →
Select Set → Press ■ → Enter PIN2 → Press ■ →
Enter the amount → Press ■

- To cancel Max Cost, select *Max Cost* → Press → Press ☑ ♦ Select *Unset* → Press ☑ ♦ Enter PIN2 → Press ■
- To change Max Cost, select *Max Cost* → Press → Press ☑ **Edit** → Enter PIN2 → Press → Enter the amount → Press ■
- To check the remaining amount, select Residual Credit ⇒ Press ■

Note Emergency calls (110, etc.) are possible even when the limit is reached. See P.2-3 "Emergency Calls".

### **Manner Mode**

### **Minding Mobile Manners**

Please use your handset responsibly. Use these basic tips as a guide. Inappropriate handset use can be both dangerous and bothersome. Please take care not to disturb others when using your handset. Adjust handset use according to your surroundings.

- Turn it off in theatres, museums and other places where silence is the norm.
- Refrain from using it in restaurants, hotel lobbies, lifts, etc.
- Observe signs and instructions regarding handset use aboard trains, etc.
- Refrain from use that interrupts the flow of pedestrian or vehicle traffic.

#### Manner-Related Features

#### Manner Mode: see P.2-17

Press Manner Key to automatically mute all sounds and activate vibration for incoming transmissions.

■ Vibration Mode: see P.10-17

Activate vibration for incoming transmission alerts.

■ Volume Settings: see P.10-16

When carrying handset in public, decrease or mute incoming transmission alerts or S! Application tones.

#### Offline Mode: see P.2-18

Temporarily suspend all handset transmissions without turning off handset power.

Answer Phone: see P.2-9

Handle incoming calls inappropriate/unsafe to answer.

Drive Mode: see P.10-2

Small Light flashes for incoming calls; if unanswered driving message plays and Answer Phone activates.



#### **Activating & Cancelling**

Activate/cancel Manner mode in Standby, while browsing the Internet, during calls or while using TV, Media Player or S! Applications.

#### Activating





4 - -

2 appears and Manner mode is set.

- Press profesion for 1+ seconds
  disappears and Manner mode is cancelled.
- • B (Answer Phone), 
   ∄ (Silent) and 
   ⑤ (Silent) & Vibration) appear as set in Manner settings (see P.10-2 "Mode Settings").

#### When Manner Mode is Active

- Keypad Tones, Power On/Off and error tones are muted. Swap Call (see P.13-6) beeps are audible.
- Even in Manner mode, ringtone is audible from Headphones. Volume is fixed to Level 1.
- Shutter click and Self-timer tone sound even in Manner mode.
- Manner settings (see P.10-2 "Mode Settings") apply to Answer Phone, ringtones, Vibration, etc.

Tip ▶ • While Answer Phone is recording, caller's voice is audible from Earpiece.

• To change Manner settings, see P.10-2 "Mode Settings".

### **Activating/Cancelling Offline Mode**

Use Offline Mode to temporarily suspend all handset transmissions.

- Offline Mode blocks all calls/Internet transmissions. Bluetooth®/infrared transmissions are available.
- Offline Mode is Off by default.



Main Menu ► Settings → Network Settings ( → ) → Offline Mode

Choose *On* and press

appears and Offline Mode is set.

Cancelling

Settings → Network Settings ( → ) → Offline Mode Main Menu

Choose *Off* and press

If disappears and Offline Mode is cancelled.

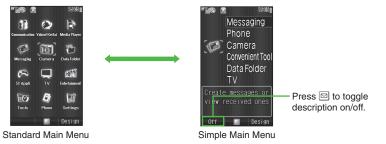
- Tip When Offline Mode is set while an S! Application (see P.16-2) is paused, confirmation appears. Choose Yes and press 
  to enter Offline Mode. (Network connection is disabled until Offline Mode is cancelled.)
  - Emergency calls (110, etc.) are not possible in Offline Mode. See P.2-3 "Emergency Calls".

# Simple Menu



Activate Simple Menu to reduce available handset functions and simplify menus.

- Handset is limited to basic operations (see P.2-20).
- Fonts are enlarged while Simple Menu is active.



# **Activating/Cancelling Simple Menu**

#### **Activating**

- - · Simple Menu remains active even after handset power is turned off.

Note Some menu items, function names, etc. differ from Standard Menu.

- Tip Activate Simple Menu in Normal mode (see P.10-2). While Simple Menu is active, Drive and Original modes are not available.
  - A message to end the corresponding function appears when Simple Menu is activated in the following cases:
  - Infrared transmission is in progress

■ S! Application is paused

Press for 1+ seconds

- Media Player is active (playing background music) Bluetooth® is active

Cancelling

# Simple Menu Operations

#### Menus

In Standby, press 
to open Simple Main Menu.

	Received Msg.		See P.14-23				
	Create Msg.		See P.14-7				
	Drafts	See P.14-18 See P.14-15					
Messaging	Templates	Templates					
	Sent Messages		See P.14-23				
	Unsent Msg.		See P.14-23				
	Create SMS		See P.14-7				
	Ph. Book List		See P.4-2				
	Add New Entry		See P.4-4				
Phone	Play Messages		See P.2-10				
Filone	Call VM		See P.13-4				
	My Details		See P.4-19				
	Speed Dial		See P.4-13				
Camera	_	See P.7-2					
	Calendar		See P.12-2				
	Alarms		See P.12-11				
	Calculator		See P.12-15				
		Wallpaper	See P.10-3				
Convenient	Assignment	Assign Tone	See P.10-16				
Tool		Volume	See P.10-16				
	Hot Status		See P.19-4				
	Circle Talk		See P.19-13				
	Answer Phone		See P.2-9				
	Simple Menu		See P.2-19				
	Pictures		See P.9-2				
	DCIM		See P.9-2				
	My Pictograms		See P.9-2				
Data Folder	Ring Tones		See P.9-2				
	S! Appli		See P.16-2				
	Music		See P.9-2				
	Videos		See P.9-2				

	Lifestyle-appli	See P.17-3
•	Books	See P.9-2
•	CustomScreens	See P.10-10
Data Folder	Flash®	See P.9-2
	Flash®Ringtones	See P.9-2
•	Other Docs.	See P.9-2
•	Memory Status	See P.9-2
TV	_	See P.6-2

#### ■Key Assignments

In Standby:

■      Long Press)	Switch to Standard Menu	See P.2-19
ি (Long Press)	Turn handset on/off	See P.1-21
Y/	Open Yahoo! Keitai Main Menu	See P.15-2
	Open Messaging menu	See P.14-2
(Long Press)	Open S! Mail Composition window	See P.14-7
Î.	Open Call Log (All Calls)	See P.2-13
•□	Open Call Log (Dialled No.)	See P.2-4
□•	Open Call Log (Received Calls)	See P.2-8
	Open Phone Book	See P.4-8
(Long Press)	Create new Phone Book Entry	See P.4-4
#ૻૢૻ/ਞ (Long Press)	Activate/cancel Manner mode	See P.2-17
(Long Press)	Activate/cancel Keypad Lock	See P.1-22
CLEAR ES	Play Answer Phone messages	See P.2-10
(Long Press)	Activate/cancel Answer Phone	See P.2-9

While Simple Menu is active, shortcuts and some Quick Operations (see **P.1-25**) are disabled.

Text Entry

# Character Selection

Use Kana and Pager (see **P.3-9**) to enter alphanumerics, Symbols, hiragana, kanji, katakana and Pictograms. Unless otherwise noted, text entry operations are described for use in text entry windows using Kana Mode.



#### **Entry Modes**

Follow these steps to change character entry mode.

- 1 Press
- 2 Use : to select a mode and press
  - For Pictogram or Symbols, corresponding list appears. (Entry mode remains unchanged.)



-Current Entry Mode

· Available Modes:

漢	Kanji (hiragana)	Α	Single-byte alphanumerics (upper/lower case)
ア	Double-byte katakana	a	Single-byte alphanumerics (lower case)
7	Single-byte katakana	1	Single-byte number
Α	Double-byte alphanumerics (upper/lower case)	区	Character Codes
а	Double-byte alphanumerics (lower case)		

A and A appear in upper/lower case mode (see below).

#### **Upper & Lower Case**

■ In double or single-byte alphanumerics mode, press 

RAN to toggle between upper/lower case and lower case modes.

Tip • Handset Character Codes correspond to 6,355 kanji.

### **Key Assignments**

Multiple characters are assigned to each key. Press a key to toggle between character options for that key.

Example: In katakana entry, press 13 three times for ク.

When entering characters, press 🗈 to toggle options in reverse. (Not available for single-byte numbers or Character Codes.) **Example: Enter** (1, then press 🔁 to return to  $\delta$ .

Key	Kanji (Hiragana) [Double-byte]	Katakana [Double & Single-byte]	Alphanumerics [Double & Single-byte]	Numbers [Single-byte]	Character Codes
1 %	あいうえお ぁぃぅぇぉ	アイウエオ ァイウェォ	@./1 □ (Space)	1	1
2 # ABC	かきくけこ	カキクケコ	ABCabc2	2	2
3 per	さしすせそ	サシスセソ	DEFdef3	3	3
4 th	たちつてとっ	タチツテトッ	GHIghi4	4	4
5 .kl	なにぬねの	ナニヌネノ	JKLjkl5	5	5
6 lg MNO	はひふへほ	ハヒフへホ	MNOmno6	6	6
7 gt Pors	まみむめも	マミムメモ	PQRSpqrs7	7	7
8 **	やゆよゃゅょ	ヤユヨャュョ	TUVtuv8	8	8
9 <sub>wXyz</sub>	らりるれろ	ラリルレロ	WXYZwxyz9	9	9
0 b*	わをんー	ワヲンー	0	0 +1	0
<b>X</b> ≈ <b>x</b> 1 2 5	* * Log/History, Pictogram List, Symbol List	r -2 Log/History, Pictogram List, Symbol List³ (Symbol List → Log/History → Pictogram List in single-byte entry mode)	Log/History, Pictogram List, Symbol List <sup>3</sup> (Symbol List → Log/History → Pictogram List in single-byte entry mode)	∦ P (Pause) ? - <sup>4</sup> Symbol List, Log/History, Pictogram List	
#%2			,.	#	

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>1</sup>Press  $\overline{0}_{h+}^{p*}$  for 1+ seconds to enter + (available for phone number entry).

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>2</sup>- is available only in single-byte katakana entry.

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>3</sup>Double or single-byte according to the entry mode.

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>4</sup> <del>K</del>, **P** (Pause), **?** and **-** are for phone number entry.

#### Key Assignments (Continued)

Key	Kanji (Hiragana) [Double-byte]	Katakana [Double & Single-byte]	Numbers [Single-byte]	Character Codes						
Ď	Conversion (Up) <sup>5</sup>		Curso	or Up						
·	Conversion (Down) <sup>6</sup>		Cursor Down	∮ (Line Break)						
•□			Cursor Left							
□•			Cursor Right							
<b>™</b> (0)			Change Entry Mode							
A/a	Toggle Case (for	some characters)								
Press	Delete One Character, Cancel Conversion	Delete One Character Delete Code/One Character								
Long Press		[	Delete before or after curso	r						
Û	Re-convert <sup>7</sup> Recover up to 64 deleted characters <sup>8</sup>		Recover up to 64 deleted characters <sup>8</sup>							
			OK							
	Phonetic Conversion									
<b>Y</b> /	Hiragana to Katakana/ Alphanumerics Conversion									

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>5</sup>Cursor moves up except during conversion.

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>6</sup>Cursor moves down except during conversion.

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>7</sup>Press immediately after inserting characters to re-convert them. (Not available for Arrange Mail.)

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>8</sup>Press 🖫 once for each character to recover immediately after deletion. (Not available for Arrange Mail or after using 🔤 (Long Press).)

# **Entering Characters**

#### Kanji, Hiragana & Katakana

Following the example below, enter **鈴木** to learn how to enter characters in kanji (hiragana) entry mode.

1 Press 3 twice

Word suggestions change as hiragana are entered.



- **9** Press 3 for 1+ seconds
  - Press a key for 1+ seconds to enter the next hiragana assigned to it and advance cursor (before conversion).



# Press 3 three times and press \*\*



- ✓ Press 2<sup>n</sup>/<sub>ABC</sub> twice
  - To enter unconverted hiragana, skip ahead to Step 6.



- **5** Press : (convert) and use : to select a word
  - The most recent selection appears first in the list.
  - To see other suggestions, press ☑ Prev. or ☑ Next.
  - - To change segment, see **P.3-6** "Segmenting Phrases".



# 6 Press



#### Katakana Entry

- Switch to double or single-byte katakana mode to enter katakana. (Press Goffirm after entry.) Alternatively, enter hiragana then select katakana from the word suggestion list.
- To convert hiragana to katakana/alphanumerics only, see P.3-11 "Hiragana to Katakana/Alphanumerics Conversion".

#### **Predictive & Previous Usage**

Use these functions to convert hiragana to kanji more quickly.

	Word suggestions change as up to five hiragana are entered
Previous Usage	Suggests words/characters likely to follow entry based on previous entries

- Both functions are active by default (see P.3-13 "Optional Predictive Functions").
- To lower priority of particular types of words (names of people, places, etc.) in the word suggestion list, see P.3-13 "Set Low Priority".

#### **User Dictionary**

- Save frequently used words/phrases to select from the word suggestion list. For details, see P.10-21.
- In text entry windows, save entered words/phrases from Options.

#### **■**Segmenting Phrases

If the word is not listed, press after Step 5 on **P.3-5** to exit. Use to segment hiragana to convert separately.

Example: Segment 35 into 3 and 5.



Selecting Multiple Converted Words

Press [ A/a

Example: To enter 西山大輔



#### Small Kana (ゥ, ッ, etc.)

Enter small hiragana **b**, **11**, **5**, **t**, **b**, **7**, **t**, **b** and **t** as well as small katakana.

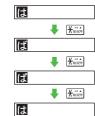
1 Enter a character and press [A/8]



#### Adding or °

#### 

In kanji (hiragana)/double-byte katakana entry, press the key once to add \* to \*\mathcal{D}(Ka) row, \*\mathcal{E}(Sa) row and \*\mathcal{E}(Ta) row characters, and press twice to remove. For \*\mathcal{L}(Ha) row characters, press once to add \*\, twice to add \*\, and three times to remove.



#### Tip ► In Single-byte Katakana Entry

- Press \* once to add single-byte or twice for .
- Press to remove or .

#### Space

## 1 Press 🕒

Alternatively, in kanji (hiragana), katakana or alphanumeric entry, press #ii six times for space.



#### Line Break

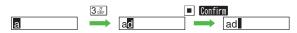
Insert line breaks in text, Text Templates, etc.

#### 1 Press 🗓 at the end of text



#### **Entering Alphanumerics**

Enter alphanumerics in double or single-byte alphanumerics mode. Alternatively, enter numbers in single-byte number mode.



- When the next character is on the same key (example: entering **a** then **b**), press first to move cursor.
- In double or single-byte alphanumerics mode, press 🖦 to toggle between upper/lower and lower case modes.
- To convert hiragana to katakana/alphanumerics only, see
   P.3-11 "Hiragana to Katakana/Alphanumerics Conversion".

#### Symbols, Pictograms & Emoticons

#### **Symbols & Pictograms**

Pictograms do not appear in e-mail or on incompatible SoftBank handsets.

Press to open Log/History (Log/History is available in some entry modes; see P.3-3)

Recently used Symbols/Pictograms appear.

- — appears by default or when Log/History is deleted.
- To see Symbols, press [37]; toggle as follows: Symbol List(s) → Log/History.
- To see Pictograms, press ⊠; toggles as follows: Pictogram Lists → Log/History.
  - Alternatively, press 📮 repeatedly to scroll Symbols or Pictograms.
- To enter cross-carrier Pictograms, see P.14-8 (below Step 7).
- Use **!** to select one and press
  - · Repeat Step 2 to enter more.
- **3** Press a key (02\* 9.5.) to exit list and enter the assigned character
  - Alternatively, press to exit list.

- **Tip** Double-byte Symbols appear only in double-byte entry mode. (All Pictograms are double-byte.)
  - Single-byte Symbols do not appear in Log/History.
  - Alternatively, enter きごう and press 🖳 (convert). Some Symbols can be selected.
  - For available Pictograms, see P.20-16. While creating Arrange Mail (see P.14-12), My Pictograms (see P.9-2) downloaded via the Internet can also be used.
  - Enter a descriptive word such as \( \mathbb{t} \mathcal{E} \) or \( \mathbb{t} \mathbb{t} \) and press (convert). Corresponding Pictograms can be selected.
  - My Pictogram History is available while creating S! Mail (see P.14-7) or Arrange Mail (see P.14-12).

#### Clear Log/History

- In a text entry window, press [27] Options > Select Input/ Conversion → Press ■ → Select Clear History → Press ■ → Choose Yes → Press ■
  - To return to the text entry window, press 🕮 🏓 Press 🕮

#### **Emoticons**

**1** Press ☑ Options

2 Select Emoticons and press ■

- Enter two digits (01 50) to jump to the emoticon assigned to the number.
- 3 Select an emoticon and press

Tip ▶ • For other emoticons, enter かお and press 및 (convert).

Alternatively, enter a descriptive word such as カーい or ラール and press 및 (convert). Corresponding emoticons can be selected.

 Immediately after inserting a descriptive word such as if L(1) or EL(1), corresponding emoticons may appear in the word suggestion list. To disable this function, see P.3-13 "Optional Predictive Functions" (Pre-used Emoticon).

#### **Mail & Web Extensions**

Enter .co.jp, http://, etc., easily.

**1** Press **□** Options

Select *Quick Address List* and press 🔳

 $oldsymbol{3}$  Select an extension and press lacksquare

• Mail addresses and URLs are single-byte.

#### **Character Code**

1 In Character Code entry mode, enter four digits (see P.20-10)

#### **Pager Code**

1 Press ☑ Options

Select Input/Conversion and press

**3** Select *Input Method* and press 🔳

4 Select *Pager Code* and press 🗉

 $\textit{Pager Code}\,\_\,\_$  appears at the bottom.

To switch to Kana Mode, select Kana ⇒ Press

5 Enter two digits (see P.3-10)

• Pager Mode is active until switched to Kana Mode.

#### **Character Entry Modes**

In Pager Mode, toggle between entry modes as follows: Press 

Select P, P, Pictogram, Symbols or Character Code 

Press 

Press ■

- For *Pictogram* or *Symbols*, corresponding list appears. (Entry mode remains unchanged.)
  - To toggle between upper and lower case modes, press 

    ▼ Press □ Prp.

 Hiragana to Katakana/Alphanumerics Conversion is disabled in Pager Mode.

• To enter or, see Pager Code List on P.3-10.

#### Pager Code List

- Blanks indicate no entry.
- Grey background indicates upper and lower case available. Press [Plan to switch immediately after character entry.

#### Double-byte upper case

_											
				Se	cond	digit	(Pre	ss ne	ext)		
		1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	0
	1	あ	(1	う	え	お	Α	В	С	D	Ε
first)	2	か	き	\	け	IJ	F	G	Η	-	J
	3	さ	し	す	せ	そ	K	┙	М	N	0
(Press	4	た	5	つ	て	٢	Р	Q	R	S	Т
Pre	5	な	に	ぬ	ね	の	U	٧	W	Χ	Υ
it (	6	は	ひ	ふ	^	ほ	Z	?	!	_	/
digit	7	ま	み	む	め	も	¥	&		illi)	*1
st (	8	や	(	ゅ	)	ょ	X	#	Space	*	*2
First	9	ら	ŋ	る	れ	ろ	1	2	3	4	5
	0	わ	を	h	*	۰	6	7	8	9	0

#### Double-byte lower case

				Se	cond	digit	(Pre	ss ne	xt)		
		1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	0
	1	あ	()	う	え	お	а	р	С	d	е
first)	2						f	g	h	i	j
fir	3						k	_	m	n	0
digit (Press	4			7			р	q	r	S	t
Pre	5						a	>	8	X	У
it (	6						Z				
dig	7										*1
	8	や		ゆ		ょ					*2
First	9										
	0				,	۰					

#### Single-byte upper case

				Se	ss ne	ext)					
		1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	0
	1	7	1	ġ	I	<b>t</b>	Α	В	С	D	Е
first)	2	ħ	‡	2	ታ	П	F	G	Η	_	٦
±	3	Ħ	シ	λ	t	y	K	٦	М	N	0
(Press	4	g	£	ッ	Ŧ	1	Р	Q	R	S	Т
P. P.	5	t	-	ヌ	礻	1	U	٧	W	Х	Υ
) <u>;</u>	6	٨	Ł	7	٨	*	Z	?	!	-	1
digit	7	7	""	٨	γ	ŧ	¥	&		(88)	*1
st	8	þ	(	1	)	3	X	#	Space	*	*2
First	9	ī	IJ	1	V	П	1	2	3	4	5
	0	7	7	ン	٠	۰	6	7	8	9	0

#### Single-byte lower case

				Se	cond	digit	(Pre	ss ne	xt)		
		1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	0
	1	7	1	ġ	I	<b>†</b>	а	b	С	d	е
first)	2						f	g	h	i	j
fir	3						k	_	m	n	0
digit (Press	4			ッ			р	q	r	S	t
Pre	5						u	٧	W	Х	У
it (	6						z				
dig	7										*1
st c	8	t		1		3					*2
First	9										
	0				,						

<sup>\*1</sup>Press (in mail message text, Text Templates, etc.).

 $<sup>^{*2}</sup>$ Press  $\overline{8^{*0}_{nv}}$   $\overline{0^{*0}_{nv}}$  to toggle between upper and lower case modes.

<sup>•</sup> w and are double-byte.

# Conversion Methods (Japanese Only)

#### **Phonetic Conversion**

Enter alternate readings to search for kanji.

1 Enter reading in hiragana

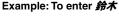
**2** Press **□** Kanji

3 Select a kanji and press



#### **One-Hiragana Conversion**

Enter the first hiragana to access previously selected words.













 Up to 20 word selections are saved per hiragana. When memory is full, the oldest entry is deleted to make room for a new entry.

#### Hiragana to Katakana/Alphanumerics Conversion

Enter katakana and alphanumerics in kanji (hiragana) entry mode.

- Enter hiragana and press 🗹 Kana
  - To enter AM, press  $2 \frac{7}{M} = 6 \frac{15}{MNO}$  then Y? Kana.
- Use to select a word and press Hiragana to Roman Letter Conversion (hiragana with or is converted to the same characters/Symbols):
  - お 1) Space С け か Α き В < Space Space せ そ さ D し Ε す Space Space た G 5 Н て Space Space つ ね な に Κ ぬ Space Space は М ひ ふ 0 Space ほ Space Ν ^ ま み Q む R κħ S ŧ Space ゃ Т Ф U ょ ٧ U Х る Υ ħ Ζ W Space - (Long Sound) ゎ を Space Space
  - Hiragana to Number Conversion (hiragana with or is converted to the same numbers):
    - あ (A) row...1 か (Ka) row...2 さ (Sa) row...3 た (Ta) row...4
    - な (Na) row...5 は (Ha) row...6 ま (Ma) row...7 や (Ya) row...8
    - ら (Ra) row...9 わをんー (Long Sound)...0

#### **Quick Conversion (for Hiragana)**

Quick Conversion helps reduce keystrokes needed to enter frequently used words.

A list of word suggestions appears based on the key pressed.

#### Example: To enter 微妙

Normal Conversion	6歳  6歳  ★☆ ( <b>び</b> )  7歳  7歳  ( <b>み</b> )   6歳  8歳  8歳  8歳  8歳  (よ)   1ま  1ま  1ま  ( <b>う</b> )
Quick Conversion	6版表 (は)7悪 (ま)8元 (や)1 (あ) (convert)

#### 1 Enter hiragana and press 🗓

Cursor turns green.

- While cursor is green, use to segment entered hiragana and then convert one segment at a time.
- To cancel Quick Conversion, press 

  → Press 

  for normal conversion

# 2 Use 🗓 to select a word and press 🔳

Note Use Quick Conversion in kanji (hiragana) mode only.

**Tip** The most recent selection (mostly nouns) appears first.

#### One Hiragana Predictive Entry

Enter hiragana and initiate Quick Conversion. Words starting with a hiragana in the same row (あいうえおfor あ) appear. Word suggestions vary by time of day.

Example: When **5** is entered

5:00 - 10:59	11:00 - 16:59	17:00 - 22:59	23:00 - 4:59
朝一番	あちぃ~	遊ぼう	アウチ!!
朝帰り	後でね	明日	ありがとう
行ってきます	いただきま~す♪		いえーい!!!
いってらっしゃい	移動中	今どこ?	行こうね
:	:	:	:

- · Words in the list are preset by time blocks.
- $\bullet$  If Clock is unset, only words for 11:00 16:59 are available.

#### One Hiragana Word Call

Enter the first hiragana of entries you used Quick Conversion for. The most recent selection appears first.

Example: You entered あたあさわ and selected お父さん last time.



#### **Conversion Settings**

Optional Predictive Functions Activate or cancel Predictive, Previous Usage or Pre-used Emoticon

DefaultOn (all)

Press ☐ Options → Select Input/Conversion →

Press ☐ → Select Predictive, Previous Usage or

Pre-usedEmoticon → Press ☐ → Choose On or Off

▶ Press

Select types of words to lower their priorities in the word suggestion list

Press ☐ Options → Select Input/Conversion →
Press ☐ → Select Set Low Priority → Press ☐ →
Select an item → Press ☐ → Press ☑ OK

 To select multiple items, select and press ■ for each item before pressing ☑ ■ 0K ■.

Reset Learning

Clear log of words selected in kanji conversion, Predictive, etc.

Press ■ Options → Select Input/Conversion →
Press ■ → Select Reset Learning → Choose Yes →
Press ■

• Words saved in User Dictionary remain.

# **Editing Characters**

#### **Deleting & Replacing**

- **1** Use **:** to select a character and press **□** 
  - The highlighted character is deleted.
  - Place cursor at the end of text and press defended for 1+ seconds to delete all text. When cursor is located amidst a block of text, characters on and after cursor are deleted.



2 Enter another character

#### Copy/Cut & Paste

When *Options* appears, copy or cut and paste text into the same window or another. (My Pictograms, etc. copied from Arrange Mail Composition window may not be pasted.)

1 Press ☑ Options

2 Select Copy or Cut and press 🔳

**?** Use : to select the first character of text and press Start point is set.

To change the start point, press

- Select the end point and press
  - Open text paste target window
- **5** Press **□** Options

Y7 Quit.

6 Select Paste and press



Cut



#### **Deleting Text On and After Cursor**

- Select the first character of text
- Press ☑ Options
- Select Cursor Position and press
- Select *Delete Posterior* and press

#### Jump to Top or End

In a text entry window, press 
☐ Options → Select Cursor Position → Press ■ → Select Jump to End or Jump to Top ⇒ Press ■

# Additional Functions

#### **Copying from Phone Book**

Insert Phone Book entry items into text entry windows. Select from name, phone numbers, mail addresses. Category, postal address, homepage, Note, and Birthday.

- Press ☑ Options
  - Move cursor to target location beforehand.
- Select *Advanced* and press
- 3 Select Phone Book and press
- Open a Phone Book entry or My Details
- **5** Use **!** to select an item and press |



#### **Using Text Templates**

Insert text saved in Text Templates (see **P.12-27**) into text entry windows.

- 1 Press ☑ Options
- **9** Select Text Templates and press ■
- 3 Select Call Templates and press ■
- Select text and press

Text is inserted

#### **Saving to Text Templates**

■ Follow these steps to save text in text entry windows to Text Templates.

Press ☑ Options → Select Text Templates → Press ■ → Select Save Templates → Press ■ → Select the first character of text → Press ■ → Select the end point → Press ■

- Enter up to 1,536 characters.
- Not available while creating Arrange Mail.

#### **Changing Font Size**

- **1** Press □ Options
- 2 Select Advanced and press
- **3** Select *Font Size* and press 🔳
- 4 Select a size and press 🔳
  - Tip ► Setting applies to *Editor* Font Size in Display Font Settings (see **P.10-4**).

# **Phone Book**

# **Overview**

Save frequently used phone numbers and mail addresses to Phone Book.

- Entry names appear for calls from numbers saved in Phone Book.
- Set ringtone/ringvideo by caller/sender, sort entries into Categories, etc. See P.4-3 for more about Phone Book entry items.

#### Dialling from Phone Book







#### Sending SMS/S! Mail messages from Phone Book



#### Note Back-up Important Information

When battery is exhausted/removed for long periods, Phone Book entries may be lost; handset damage may also affect handset information recovery. SoftBank is not liable for damages from lost/altered data.

#### ■When a Call Arrives







- Dial service dial numbers saved on compatible USIM Cards to use services.
  - Press → Select Phone → Press → Select

    Service Dial No. → Press → Select service →

    Press ■
  - For details, contact the service providers.
- Tip Use Phone Book Lock (see P.10-27) to protect entries from accidental alteration and to restrict access to Phone Book information.

# Saving to Phone Book

#### **Phone Book Entry Items**

Save up to 750 entries in handset Phone Book; USIM Card Phone Book entry limit varies according to card specifications.

Item	Description	Item	Description
Last Name:	Enter up to 32 characters. (Select	Homepage:1	Save URLs. Enter up to 1,024 bytes.
First Name:	irst Name: Name: when saving to USIM Card.)		Add personal details. Enter up to 256 characters.
Reading:	Enter up to 64 characters	Birthday:1	Enter birth date
Add Phone Number:	Add Phone Number: Enter up to three numbers on handset/ two on USIM Card (32 digits each)	Picture: <sup>1, 2</sup>	Set an image to appear for incoming calls/mail
	Enter up to three addresses on	Tone/Video for Voice Call:1	Set ringtone/ringvideo, Small Light or Vibration by caller/sender
Add Email Address:	handset/one on USIM Card (128 single-byte alphanumerics each)	Tone/Video for Video Call:1	
	Sort entries into 16 Categories (11 on some USIM Cards). Category names can be changed. Set ringtone/ ringvideo, Small Light and Vibration by Category (handset only).	Tone/Video for New Message:1	
		Light for Voice Call:1	
Category:		Light for Video Call:1	
		Light for New Message:1	
		Vibration for Incoming Call:1	
	Enter postal code (20 characters), country name (32 characters), state/ province (64 characters), city name (64 characters) and street name/ number (64 characters)	Vibration for New Message:1	
Address: <sup>1</sup>		Secret:1	Restrict access to Phone Book entries by saving them as Secret entries

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>1</sup>Not supported on USIM Card.

Note Depending on the USIM Card in use, some items may not be supported, and character entry limits or number of Categories may be lower. Also, the number of phone numbers or mail addresses per entry may be lower.

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>2</sup>Image may not appear while an S! Application is active, etc.

## **Creating Phone Book Entries**

Enter a name, reading, phone number and mail address. For other items, see P.4-5 - 4-7.

Storage media is set to handset (*Phone*) by default.

Main Menu Phone

Select Add New Entry and press =

Phone Book Details appears.

- If storage media confirmation appears, select To Phone or To USIM ▶ Press
- Select Last Name: and press
- Enter last name and press
- Select *First Name:* and press

Enter first name and press

New Entry ast Name First Name Reading Add Phone Number: Add Email Address: Category: No Category Address: Homepage:

> Phone Book Details

Characters entered for names (reading for kanji) appear.

- To correct reading, see P.4-7.
- Select Add Phone Number: and press
- Enter a phone number and press
  - Include dialling code for landline numbers.
- Select an icon and press
  - To save additional phone numbers, repeat Steps 6 8.

- Select Add Email Address: and press
- Enter a mail address and press
- Press
- Select an icon and press
  - To save additional mail addresses, repeat Steps 9 12.
- 13 Press 🖭 Save

To save an entry, enter at least one of the following: a) Note > last name; b) first name; c) phone number; or d) mail address.

#### **Incoming Calls while Creating Entry**

Contents are temporarily saved. End the call to return.

#### Storage Media

Follow these steps to set default storage media for new entries

Press ■ → Select Phone → Press ■ → Select Ph.Book Settings → Press ■ → Select Save New Entry → Press ■ → Select Phone, USIM Memory or Ask Each Time 

◆ Press

- Phone is set by default.
- For Ask Each Time, select storage media for each new entry.

#### **Confirmation for Unsaved Numbers**

Follow these steps to show/hide confirmation for saving to Phone Book after calls with unsaved numbers.

Press ■ → Select Phone → Press ■ → Select

Ph.Book Settings → Press ■ → Select New

Number Prompt → Press ■ → Select Incoming

Call or Outgoing Call → Press ■ → Choose On or

Off → Press ■

• Both are On by default.

#### Personal Ringtone/Ringvideo

Select ringtones or ringvideos for calls/mail from numbers/ addresses saved in Phone Book.

- Select from preset patterns or use the following melody or video files in Data Folder.
- Files in Ring Songs-Tones, Music or Flash®Ringtones folder (file name: 55 characters or less including extension)
- Files in Videos folder (file name: 55 characters or less including extension)
- Save files to Data Folder (Videos) before assigning video.
- Follow these steps after opening Phone Book Details (see P.4-4). When finished, Phone Book Details returns. Complete other fields.
- 1 Select Tone/Video for Voice Call:, Tone/Video for Video Call: or Tone/Video for New Message: and press ■

#### **2** Select *Assign Tone* and press 🔳

To cancel assigned tone/video, select *Remove Tone/Video*→ Press 
→ Choose *Yes* → Press 
→

#### 3 Ringtone

■ Select Preset Sounds, Ring Songs-Tones, Music or Flash® Ringtones and press ■

#### Ringvideo

Select Videos and press ■

■ Select a file and press

For *Preset Sounds*, select a tone ▶ Press ■

#### **Setting Ring Time for Incoming Mail**

After Step 4, select *Tone/Video for New Message:* →

Press ■ → Select *Duration* → Press ■ → Enter time →

Press ■

#### Note >

- If source file in Data Folder is deleted, renamed or moved to another handset/Memory Card folder (or is copy protected and licence expires), Sounds & Alerts (see P.10-16 "Ringtone/videos") setting applies.
- To apply settings to Secret entries, first activate Show Secret Data.

#### Personal Light/Vibration

Set Small Light illumination or handset vibration for calls/ mail from numbers/addresses saved in Phone Book. Follow these steps after opening Phone Book Details (see P.4-4). When finished, Phone Book Details returns. Complete other fields.

- Select Light for Voice Call:, Light for Video Call:, Light for New Message:, Vibration for Incoming Call: or Vibration for New Message: and press ■
- Select Switch On/Off and press ■
- Select On, Link to Sound or Off and press
  - . Link to Sound: Handset vibrates only when ringtone is a compatible SMAF file.
- Select Light Colour or Vibration Pattern and press =
- 5 Select a colour/pattern and press

#### **Personal Picture**

Save an image to each Phone Book entry; saved image appears for calls/mail from phone numbers/mail addresses saved in that entry.

Follow these steps after opening Phone Book Details (see P.4-4). When finished, Phone Book Details returns. Complete other fields.

### Select *Picture:* and press

- To cancel saved image, select Remove Picture ⇒ Press ◆ Choose Yes ◆ Press ■
- Selecting from Data Folder
  - Select Assign Picture and press ■
  - 2 Select an image and press

#### Capturing New Image

- Select Take Picture and press ■
- 2 Frame image on Display and press

Captured image appears.

3 Press ■

- Note > Setting is cancelled when source file in Data Folder is deleted, renamed or moved. (Similarly, if source file is copy protected and licence expires.)
  - . To apply settings to Secret entries, first activate Show Secret Data.
  - Images may not appear for incoming calls while messaging with an S! Application paused.

#### **Saving Secret Entries**

Restrict access to Phone Book entries by saving them as Secret entries.

Follow these steps after opening Phone Book Details (see P.4-4). When finished. Phone Book Details returns. Complete other fields.

Select *Secret:* and press ■

Choose *On* and press ■

#### **Unlock Temporarily**

- For temporary access to Secret entries, follow these steps. Press 

  Press 

  Options 

  Select Unlock Temporarily → Press ■ → Enter Handset Code → Press
  - Secret entries are hidden next time Phone Book is opened.

- Note Activate Show Secret Data (see P.10-28) to open Secret entries.
  - To cancel Secret, activate Show Secret Data (see P.10-28) and choose Off in Step 2. To edit Phone Book entries, see P.4-10 "Editing Phone Book Entries".
  - Secret entries do not appear in Standby Window or Hot Status member list.

#### Other Phone Book Entry Items

- For descriptions of each item, see P.4-3.
- Follow these steps after opening Phone Book Details (see P.4-4). When finished, Phone Book Details returns. Complete other fields.

Reading	Select <i>Reading:</i> → Press ■ → Enter reading → Press ■ → Press ■	
Category	Select <i>Category:</i> → Press ■ → Select a Category → Press ■	
Address	Select Address: Press Pelect Postal  Code: Press Pelect Country: Press Pelect State/  Province: Press Pelect City: Press Pelect Number:  Press Press Pelect Street & Number:  Press Press Pelect Street & Number:  Press Press Pelect Number: Press Pelect Street & Number:	
Homepage	Select <i>Homepage:</i> → Press ■ → Enter URL → Press ■ → Press ■	
Note	Select Note: → Press ■ → Enter text → Press ■	
Birthday	Select <i>Birthday:</i> → Press ■ → Enter date → Press ■	

#### Saving from Call Log

**1** Use **□** to open Dialled Numbers/Received Calls

2 Use 🗓 to select a record and press 🖾 Options

3 Select Save Number and press

▲ New Entry

1 Select As New Entry and press

Phone number is entered automatically and Phone Book Details (see **P.4-4**) appears. Complete other fields.

Add to Existing Entry

■ Select a Phone Book entry and press

Phone number is entered automatically and Phone Book Details (see **P.4-4**) appears. Complete other fields.

Note Withheld records cannot be saved. New numbers cannot be saved to handset Phone Book entries with three phone numbers or USIM Card entries with two phone numbers.

#### **Phone Book Memory Status**

Main Menu ► Phone → Manage Entries

Select Memory Status and press

Numbers of entries on handset and USIM Card appear.

Press 🔳 to exit.

# **Using Phone Book**

#### **Dialling from Phone Book**

Search Phone Book by katakana row (default search method) to call numbers within entries.

- To dial numbers saved in Secret entries, first activate Show Secret Data (see P.10-28).
- To search by other methods, see P.4-9.

1 Press 🖵

2 Use 🖭 to specify katakana row

 Alternatively, enter Reading to search Phone Book.



3 Use ♀ to select an entry and press ■

Phone Book entry opens. (Window Description: see **P.4-9**)

For entries with multiple numbers, use [1] to select one.

4 Press 🗗

Handset dials the number.

To place Video Calls, press ■ ◆
Select Video Call ◆ Press ■



#### Switching Between Handset & USIM Card

- Press □ → Press □ Options → Select Ph.Book Settings
  → Press → Select Select Phone Book → Press →
  Select Phone, USIM Memory or Both → Press
  - Phone is set by default.
  - For Both, entries in both storage media appear.

#### **Phone Book Search Methods**

By Reading	Shows entries that start with specified Reading	
By Category	Opens entries in the specified Category	
By a-ka-sa-ta-na	Shows entries with Readings that start with katakana in the specified row	

By a-ka-sa-ta-na is set by default.

Main Menu ► Phone ► Ph.Book Settings ► Sort Entries

# 1 Select By Reading, By Category or By a-ka-sa-ta-na and press

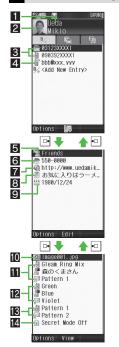
Dialling Methods:

By Reading	Enter Reading → Select an entry → Press ■ → Press 🔁
By Category	Select a Category → Press ■ → Select an entry → Press ■ → Press •
By a-ka-sa-ta-na	Use  ☐ to specify a row  ☐ Select an entry  ☐ Press ☐ ☐ Press ☐

For entries with multiple numbers, select one and press 🔁.

**Tip** ► In Standby, press and follow the steps above.

#### **Window Description**



- Name
- 2 Image Set for Picture
- 3 Phone Number
- 4 Mail Address
- 5 Category Name
- 6 Address
- **7** Homepage
- 8 Note
- Birthday
- Name of Image Set for Picture
- Ringtone/Ringvideo Settings
- Mall Light Settings
- 14 Secret Status

Tip ► To see details or use saved information, select an item and press ■. To add information, select an item in angle brackets (<Add New Entry>, etc.) and press ■.

# **Editing Phone Book Entries**

To edit Secret entries, first activate Show Secret Data (see P.10-28).

#### Correction/Change

- 1 Press 🗔, then select an entry
- **2** Press ☑ Options
- 3 Select Edit and press ■
- 4 Select an item and press

Edit contents.

- See procedure for saving items to Phone Book (see P.4-4 4-7).
- Edit Reading after editing names.
- **5** Press when finished
  - To edit other items, repeat Steps 4 5.
- 6 Press 🛂 Save

The entry is overwritten.

#### **Copying Phone Book Entries**

Exchange entries between handset and USIM Card.
USIM Card does not support some Phone Book entry items (see **P.4-3**). Those items are deleted when Phone Book entries are copied from handset.

#### One Entry

- 1 Press , then select an entry
- 2 Press ☑ Options
- 🗿 Select *Manage Entries* and press 🔳
- 4 Handset to USIM Card
  - Select Copy Entry to USIM and press ■
  - 2 Choose Yes and press ■

**USIM Card to Handset** 

Select Copy Entry to Phone and press ■

#### All Entries

If handset or USIM Card memory is low, entries cannot be copied all at once.

Main Menu ► Phone ► Manage Entries ► Copy All

- 1 Select *USIM to Phone* or *Phone to USIM* and press
- 2 Choose Yes and press

#### **Deleting Phone Book Entries**

One Entry

1 Press 🗓, then select an entry

**2** Press **□** Options

3 Select *Delete* and press ■

**4** Choose Yes and press ■

Tip ► The source files remain in Data Folder, even when deleting entries containing melodies, video or images set for incoming calls/mail or Picture.

#### All Entries

Main Menu ► Phone ► Manage Entries ► Delete All

**1** Select *Phone Entries*, *USIM Entries* or *Both Entries* and press ■

2 Choose Yes and press ■

3 Enter Handset Code and press

# **Category Settings**

Customise Category options; create new Category names.

#### **Changing Category Name**

Main Menu ► Phone ► Category Control

1 Use 

to select handset or USIM

1 Use 

1 Use 1 Us

**?** Select a Category and press 
■

• No Category (on handset) cannot be renamed.

Select *Edit Name* and press

To change icons, select Change Icon ⇒ Press ■ ⇒ Select an icon ⇒ Press ■ (Omit the next steps.)

▲ Enter name

 Enter up to 16 characters on handset; USIM Card character entry limit varies according to card specifications.

**5** Press

• Repeat Steps 1 - 5 for other Categories.

#### **Customising Handset Responses**

Set ringtone/ringvideo, Small Light or Vibration for incoming calls/mail by Category.

Category settings for incoming calls/mail are not available for Categories on USIM Card.

Main Menu ► Phone ► Category Control

Use 🖭 to select handset

**2** Select a Category and press ☑ Options

**3** Select Assign Ringtone, Assign Event Light or Assign Vibration and press ■

4 Select an item and press

• See the corresponding procedure for each setting.

- Ringtone/ringvideo: perform from Step 2 in "Personal Ringtone/Ringvideo" on P.4-5
- Small Light/Vibration: perform from Step 2 in "Personal Light/Vibration" on P.4-6

Note Personal ringtone/ringvideo, Small Light and Vibration settings (see P.4-5 - 4-6) take priority.

# Contact Groups

Create Contact Groups to send messages to multiple recipients at one time (see "Contact Groups" in Step 4 on **P.14-8**).

#### **Creating Contact Groups**

Create up to five Contact Groups.

Main Menu ▶ Phone ▶ Contact Groups ▶ <Add New Group>

🖊 Enter a Group name and press 🔳

#### **Saving Group Members**

Save up to 20 members per Group.

Main Menu ► Phone ► Contact Groups

Select a Group and press

2 Select Assign New Entry and press

3 Select an entry and press

- For entries with multiple numbers/addresses, use ☑ to select a SoftBank handset number or mail address ▶ Press ■
- To add other numbers/mail addresses, repeat Steps 2 3.

#### Editing Contact Groups

Renaming Groups

Main Menu ► Phone → Contact Groups

**1** Select a Group and press ☑ Options

- 2 Select Edit Name and press
- 3 Enter name and press
  - Enter up to 16 characters.
- 4 Choose Yes and press
  - Deleting Groups
- Main Menu ► Phone ► Contact Groups
- **1** Select a Group and press ☑ Options
- 2 Select *Delete* and press
- 3 Choose Yes and press ■
- 4 Enter Handset Code and press 🔳

#### **Editing Group Members**

- **Changing Members**
- Main Menu ► Phone ► Contact Groups ► Open a Group
- **1** Select a member and press ☑ Options
- 2 Select Re-assign Entry and press
- 3 Select an entry and press
  - For entries with multiple numbers/addresses, use 🗓 to select a SoftBank handset number or mail address ▶ Press ■
- 4 Choose Yes and press ■

- **Deleting Members**
- Main Menu ► Phone ► Contact Groups ► Open a Group
- Select a member and press 🖾 Options
- 2 Select Remove Entry and press
- **3** Choose *Yes* and press
  - Tip Source Phone Book entries remain even after deleting members.

# **Speed Dial List**

#### **Saving Phone Numbers**

Save phone numbers to Speed Dial List for easy dialling.

- Main Menu ► Phone → Speed Dial List
- **1** Select from 0 to 9 and press ■
- 🤈 Select an entry and press 🔳
  - For entries with multiple numbers, use ∯ to select one ▶
    Press ■
  - To overwrite existing number, choose *Yes* → Press 🔳

#### Saving from Phone Book

- Open a Phone Book entry and select a phone number > Press 

  Options 

  Select Add Speed Dial 

  Press 

  Press 

  → Select from 0 to 9 → Press ■
  - To overwrite existing number, choose **Yes** → Press ■

- Note > Saved numbers are deleted from Speed Dial List when edited in Phone Book or when source entry is deleted.
  - Numbers are editable even if source is a Secret entry.
- Tip Use Headphones (with Microphone) to call the number saved in Speed Dial 0.

#### **Speed Dial**

To dial numbers saved in Secret entries, first activate Show Secret Data (see P.10-28).

Press a key (010 - 96)

**9** Press 🗗

Handset dials the number. (Name appears if saved.)

- To place Video Calls, press for 1+ seconds. (Speed Video Call)
- Alternatively, select a name from Speed Dial List and press .

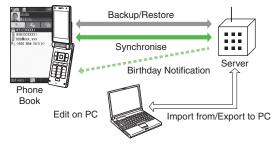
Delete entries one at a time Main Menu ► Phone ► Speed Dial List Select an entry → Press □ Options → Select Delete Press ■ Choose Yes Press ■ **Tip** Source Phone Book entries remain even after deleting Speed Dial entries. Return Speed Dial List to default setting Main Menu ► Phone ► Speed Dial List Press ☐ Options → Select Clear All → Press ☐ → Choose Yes ▶ Press ■

#### **Using Headphones (with Microphone)**

- In Standby, press Call Button for 1+ seconds until a double beep sounds; handset dials the number saved in Speed Dial 0.
  - To end the call, press Call Button for 1+ seconds until a beep sounds.

# S! Address Book (SAB)

Back up Phone Book content in SAB; add Phone Book changes to SAB anytime. Edit SAB online via PC; add SAB changes to Phone Book anytime. Restore lost or altered Phone Book content from SAB.



- SAB requires a separate contract and basic monthly fee.
- Use SAB to add Phone Book content to a new compatible SoftBank handset; some conditions apply (see P.4-16).
- Use a PC to edit SAB online (http://mb.softbank.jp/mb/en/support/useful/sab/).
- Save birthday information to SAB; use a PC to activate Birthday Notification online to receive SMS reminders.

Note Sync commands (Backup, Restore and Synchronise) all incur transmission fees.

#### **SAB Sync Commands & Features**

Backup/	Backup	Export Phone Book content to SAB <sup>1</sup>
Restore	Restore	Import SAB content to Phone Book <sup>2</sup>
	Normal	Synchronise Phone Book and SAB <sup>3</sup>
Synchronise	Sync from Client	Add Phone Book changes to SAB <sup>4</sup>
	Sync from Server	Add SAB changes to Phone Book <sup>5</sup>
Edit on PC	Import from PC	Upload PC address book info to SAB
	Export to PC	Export SAB content to PC address book
Send Notice	Birthday Notification	SAB sends reminders via SMS to handset

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>1</sup>Any existing SAB content is deleted.

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>2</sup>Any existing Phone Book content is deleted.

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>3</sup>If the same entry item is edited in Phone Book and SAB, SAB content is referenced.

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>4</sup>Unrelated SAB changes remain.

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>5</sup>Unrelated Phone Book changes remain.

#### Service Usage Outline

#### **Complete Contract**

Visit a SoftBank shop, dial 157 from a SoftBank handset for SoftBank Customer Centre, General Information or access My SoftBank via Yahoo! Keitai.



#### **Receive User ID & Password**

After subscription, User ID and Password arrive via SMS. • Handset phone number serves as User ID.



#### Save User ID & Password

See P.4-17 for procedures.



#### **Use SAB**

#### Export Phone Book content to SAB.

• Using sync commands incurs transmission fees.

Tip If User ID and Password SMS does not arrive, dial 157 for Customer Service or follow these steps:

> Press ☑ ➡ Select 設定・申込 (My SoftBank) Press ■ Select English Press ■ Select Password confirmation for S! Address Book → Press ■

■ Follow onscreen instructions

#### **Precautions**

#### Unsvnchronisable Items

SAB restoration cancels these Phone Book settings:

■ Picture, Tone/Video (for Voice Call, Video Call, New Message), Light (for Voice Call, Video Call, New Message), Vibration (for Incoming Call, New Message)

#### Unintentional Phone Book or SAB Content Deletion

- When no Phone Book content exists, selecting, Normal, Sync from Client or Backup deletes all SAB content.
- When no SAB content exists, selecting Normal, Sync from Server or Restore deletes all Phone Book content.

### Phone Book ⇔ SAB Content Capacity Disparities

When the number of savable items varies between Phone Book and SAB entries, Synchronisation reflects lower limit.

#### ■SAB Transfers to New Handsets

- SAB-Compatible 3G Handsets SAB content remains as last saved.
- Other 3G Handsets Service contract and SAB content remain (accessible via PC).
- V3/V4/V5/V6/V8 Series Service contract is terminated and SAB content is deleted.

#### **Contract Termination**

SAB content is deleted upon contract termination.

#### Saving User ID & Password

After completion of contract, User ID and Password arrive via SMS. Save them on handset to activate SAB.

Main Menu ▶ Phone ▶ S! Address Book ▶ Sync Settings

¶ Select User Settings and press ■

2 User ID

■ Select User ID and press ■

2 Enter handset number and press

#### **Password**

1 Select *Password* and press ■

2 Enter Password and press ■

3 Press Y Save

#### Backup & Restore

Backup (Phone Book → SAB)

Main Menu ► Phone ► S! Address Book

**1** Select *Backup* and press ■

**2** Choose *Yes* and press

🗿 Enter Handset Code and press 🔳

Handset connects to the Server and Backup starts.

After Backup, details appear.

To cancel, press ☑ Cancel → Choose Yes → Press ■

Restore (SAB → Phone Book)

Main Menu ► Phone ► S! Address Book

1 Select *Restore* and press

**2** Choose *Yes* and press ■

3 Enter Handset Code and press

Handset connects to the Server and Restore starts.

After Restore, details appear.

To cancel, press ഈ Cancel → Choose Yes → Press 🔳

# **Synchronising Phone Book**

# Manual Synchronisation

- For details, see the table on P.4-15.
- If this is your first use of SAB (new handset), Synchronisation is performed via Normal regardless of selection.

Main Menu ► Phone ► S! Address Book

- 1 Select Normal, Sync from Client or Sync from Server and press
- 2 Choose Yes and press ■
- 🗿 Enter Handset Code and press 🔳

Handset connects to the Server and Synchronisation starts.

- · After Synchronisation, details appear.
- To cancel, press 🗹 Cancel 🖈 Choose *Yes* → Press 🔳
- 4 Press to exit

# Auto Synchronisation

- Save User ID and Password beforehand.
- Auto Sync Settings is Off by default.

Main Menu ► Phone ► S! Address Book ► Sync Settings

- 🖊 Select *Auto Sync Settings* and press 🔳
- $oldsymbol{2}$  Select Set On/Off and press lacksquare
- $oldsymbol{3}$  Choose *On* and press lacksquare
- 4 Enter Handset Code and press 🔳

Set Frequency Select Auto Sync frequency

Default Every Sun. 00:00

### **Every Month**

Select *Every Month* → Press ■ → Enter date → Press ■ → Enter time → Press ■

### **Every Week**

Select *Every Week* → Press ■ → Select a day of the week → Press ■ → Enter time → Press ■

#### **Every Day**

Select *Every Day* → Press **P** → Enter time → Press

Set Sync Mode Select Auto Sync command

Default Normal

Main Menu 

Phone 

S! Address Book 

Sync Settings 

Auto Sync Settings 

Set Sync Mode

Select a command **▶** Press ■

# **Opening Log**

View result of Backup, Restore or Synchronisation.

Main Menu ► Phone ► S! Address Book

Select *View Log* and press Press I to return.

# My Details

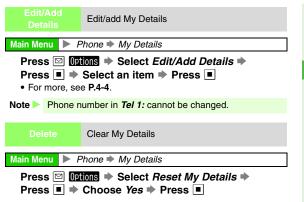
# **Opening My Details**

Confirm handset number (phone number on USIM Card). Save name, reading, phone number, mail address, personal data, etc.

Main Menu Phone

- Select My Details and press
  - My Details are similar to Phone Book entries (see P.4-9).
- Press 🔞 to exit

Tip ► Exchange My Details via Bluetooth® (see P.11-2) or infrared (see P.11-10) with compatible devices.



Note > Phone number in Tel 1: remains.

# Video Call

# Getting Started

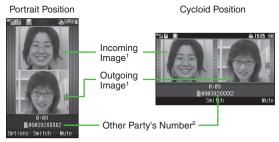
Communicate with another party using live video images.

- Use Video Call with compatible handsets only.
- Use Internal Camera to send your own image.
- Use External Camera to send higher quality images.



Note In Cycloid position, use Loudspeaker or Headphones (with Microphone) for telephone calls. (Use Earpiece in portrait position.)

# Window Description



<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>1</sup>Change incoming/outgoing image size/position (see **P.5-4** "Switch Images").

# Important Video Call Usage Notes

- Video Calls cannot be placed while TV is active. Exit TV and try again.
- If both parties are not using the same Video Call system, call may be interrupted. (Video Call charges apply.)
- Depending on the other party's handset specifications or settings, incoming image may appear small or not at all.
- Rapid motion can make images appear choppy or distorted.
- Conversations may be hampered by ambient noise. Use Headphones to reduce noise.
- Increasing Earpiece Volume for Loudspeaker (see P.5-5, P.5-8) use may cause feedback/interference. Moderate volume or use Headphones.
- Handset temperature may rise during Video Calls; this is normal.
- Use AC Charger during Video Call to avoid battery exhaustion.
  - Tip ► In Cycloid position, outgoing Internal Camera image is always zoomed in (2x). Place handset on stable surface as needed to adjust the distance.

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>2</sup>Name appears if saved in Phone Book.

# Initiating a Video Call

- 1 Enter a phone number
- Press □ Options
- 3 Select *Video Call* and press

When the call is answered, incoming image appears.

- Incoming image may not appear depending on handset settings. (Video Call charges apply.)
- For operations during a Video Call, see **P.5-4**.



# **⊿** Press ি to end call

- Alternatively, close handset to end calls. (Note, however, that if Headphones or a Bluetooth<sup>®</sup> headset is in use, line will remain open even when handset is closed.)
- Tip ► Enter a phone number (or select a record from Call Log) and press are for 1+ seconds to initiate a Video Call.
  - To initiate a Video Call from Phone Book, see P.4-8. To select a record from Call Log, see P.2-13.

# Answering a Video Call

1 When a Video Call arrives, open handset

Incoming Video Call appears.



- **2** Answer with Video Image
  - 1 Press Answer
  - 2 Select Show Picture and

press 🔳

Internal Camera image is sent.

For operations during a Video

Call, see **P.5-4**.

Answer with Voice Only

- 1 Press 
  Answer
- 2 Select Hide Picture and press
  - Outgoing image is suppressed. (Video Call charges apply.)
  - For operations during a Video Call, see P.5-4.
- 3 Press 🗟 to end call
  - Alternatively, close handset to end calls. (Note, however, that if Headphones or a Bluetooth<sup>®</sup> headset is in use, line will remain open even when handset is closed.)



#### Rejecting Video Calls

■ When a Video Call arrives, press ☑ Options → Select Reject → Press ■

### **Redirecting Video Calls**

When a Video Call arrives, press 🛂 Fwd.

#### **Placing Callers on Hold**

- When a Video Call arrives, press or follow these steps.
  - Press ☑ Options → Select Hold → Press ■
  - To answer the call on hold, press ⇒ Select **Show**Picture or Hide Picture ⇒ Press ■
  - Callers placed on hold receive Hold Guidance Picture; Microphone is muted.

Note Loudspeaker (see P.5-5, P.5-8) is temporarily cancelled when receiving Video Calls in Manner mode. To reactivate, set to *Loudspeaker On* during a call.

# **Engaged Video Call Operations**

Follow these steps in portrait position (not available in Cycloid position).

Camera

Change outgoing image

Default Internal Camera

During a call, press .

 Image toggles as follows: External Camera image → Alternative Image → Internal Camera image.

- Press to toggle image in reverse order.
- To change Alternative Image during a call, press ☑ Options ⇒ Select Settings ⇒ Press Perform from "Select Alternative Image" in "Camera Picture" on P.5-7

Earpiece Volume

Adjust Earpiece Volume (5 levels)

Default Level 3

During a call, press ◀ or ▶ ♦ Press ◀ (up) or ▶ (down) to adjust level

- Each press changes volume by one level.
- · Volume level remains as set even after handset power is turned off.

Mute

Mute Microphone

During a call, press 🔀 Mute.

To cancel, press 🛂 Unmute.

Switch Images Change incoming/outgoing image size/position

During a call, press .

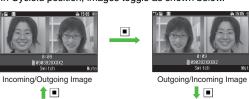
• Images toggle as shown below.







• In Cycloid position, images toggle as shown below.





Outgoing/Incoming Image •



Incoming Priority ▮▮



Incoming/Outgoing Image



Outgoing Priority ▮▣



Outgoing/Incoming Image



Incoming/Outgoing Image

View Video Call images on an external device

During a call, press .

- · Connect optional Video Cable to handset and device, and activate Video Output (see P.10-15).
- Images appear on the device when initiating Video Calls.
- Press to toggle display between the device and handset.
- Only incoming/outgoing image appears on the device. (Images do not appear on handset and device simultaneously.)
- To switch device Display Size, see P.10-15.

- Note Voice is audible from handset
  - Images may not appear on the device while menus and other windows are open.

Cancel or activate Loudspeaker

# During a call, press Options Select Loudspeaker Off or Loudspeaker On → Press ■

• Loudspeaker is temporarily cancelled when Manner mode is activated during calls.

Pause live voice/image transmissions Send Hold Guidance Picture

During a call, press 

Options 

Select Hold 

→ Press

To resume, press 环 Retrye.

Open
Phone Book

Open/save Phone Book entries or My Details

# **Opening Phone Book**

During a call, press ☑ Options → Select Open Phone Book
→ Press ■ → Select an entry (or My Details) → Press ■

 My Details appears only when Sort Entries is set to By Reading or By Category (see P.4-9 "Phone Book Search Methods").

#### **Saving Entries**

During a call, press ☐ Options → Select Open Phone

Book → Press ☐ → Press ☐ Options → Select Add

New Entry → Press ☐ → Perform from Step 2 on P.4-4

Transfer Audio

Select sound output when a handsfree device, etc. is used for telephony

During a call, press 

Options 
Select Transfer

Audio 
Press 
Select To Phone or To

Bluetooth 
Press 

■

Mirror Image

Activate or cancel reversed Internal Camera image

During a call, press ☐ Options → Select Settings → Press ■ → Select Mirror Image → Press ■ → Choose On or Off → Press ■

- External Camera image, Alternative Image and incoming images cannot be reversed.
- Mirror Image is *On* when initiating Video Calls.

Exposur

Adjust outgoing image brightness (5 levels: -2 to +2)

During a call, press ☐ Options → Select Settings → Press ☐ → Select Exposure → Press ☐ → Use ① to adjust level → Press ☐

- · Alternative Image appearance is fixed.
- Exposure is Level 0 when initiating Video Calls.

lelp

View a summary of key assignments

During a call, press ☑ Options → Select Help → Press ■

Press 
to return.

# **Other Engaged Call Operations**

■ Mobile Light

Press # for 1+ seconds to turn on or off.

- Use Mobile Light as a strobe for External Camera.
- Digital Zoom

Press (zoom in) or (zoom out).

- Not available for Alternative Image.
- In Cycloid position, Internal Camera image is always zoomed in.
- Manner Mode

Press for 1+ seconds to activate or cancel.

# Video Call Settings

To change these settings (except Remote Monitor) during calls, see **P.5-4** - **5-6**.

Camera Picture Outgoing image is either live video via Internal Camera or Alternative Image when initiating Video Calls

Default Internal Camera

Main Menu

► Settings → Call/Video Call ( ) → Video Call → Camera Picture

# Select Default Image → Press ■ → Select Internal Camera or AlternativeImage → Press ■

- To change Alternative Image, select Alternative Image
   Press
   Select Preset Picture or My Pictures
   Press
   Press
- To use Custom Screen image, select *Alternative Image* → Press → Select *Custom Screen* → Press → Press ■
- Custom Screen does not appear when Custom Screen (see P.10-10) is set to Pattern 1.
- External Camera image is selectable during a call.

Incomin Picture

Select quality of incoming images

Default Normal

Main Menu

► Settings → Call/Video Call ( Video Call → Video Call → Incoming Picture

# Select Normal, Quality Prior or Frame Rate Prior ⇒ Press ■

 Select Quality Prior for higher quality and Frame Rate Prior for faster frame rate. Outgoing Picture

Select quality of outgoing images

Default Normal

Main Menu

► Settings → Call/Video Call ( Video Call → Video Call → Outgoing Picture

# Select Normal, Quality Prior or Frame Rate Prior → Press ■

- Select *Quality Prior* for higher quality and *Frame Rate Prior* for faster frame rate.
- Outgoing Picture setting may automatically change during calls depending on the other party's Incoming Picture setting.

lold Guidance Pict Select image that can be sent while calls are on hold

Default Picture 1

Main Menu

► Settings → Call/Video Call ( Video Call → Video Call →

#### **Preset Picture**

Select *Preset Picture* → Press ■ → Select an image → Press ■ → Press ■

#### **Data Folder Images**

Select *My Pictures* → Press ■ → Select an image → Press ■ → Press ■

#### **Custom Screens**

# Select *Custom Screen* → Press ■ → Press ■

 Custom Screen does not appear when Custom Screen (see P.10-10) is set to Pattern 1.

Backlight

Select a Backlight status for Video Calls

Default Always On

Main Menu

► Settings → Call/Video Call ( Video Call → Video Call → Backlight

# Select Always On, Always Off or Normal Setting → Press ■

• Selecting Normal Setting applies Display Backlight setting (see P.10-13).

Activate or cancel Loudspeaker for Video Calls Default On

> Settings → Call/Video Call ( → ) → Video Call → Loudspeaker

#### Choose *On* or *Off* ▶ Press ■

• Loudspeaker is temporarily cancelled when initiating Video Calls in Manner mode.

Main Menu

Mute Microphone for Video Calls

Default Off

Main Menu

Settings ⇒ Call/Video Call (••) ⇒ Video Call ⇒ Mute Microphone

Choose *On* (mute) or *Off* ⇒ Press ■

Automatically answer Video Calls from numbers saved in Auto Answer List

Default Switch On/Off: Off. Answer Time: 00 seconds

Main Menu

► Settings → Call/Video Call (•••) → Video Call → Remote Monitor 

▶ Enter Handset Code

### Activating/Cancelling

Select Switch On/Off 

Press 

Choose On (answer automatically) or Off → Press ■

#### **Adding to Auto Answer List**

Select Auto Answer List → Press ■ → Select <empty> → Press ■ → Enter a number → Press ■

- To select from Phone Book or Call Log, select Auto Answer List → Press ■ → Select < empty> → Press □ Options → Select *Change* → Press ■ → Select *From Contacts List* or From Call Log → Press ■ → Select a number → Press
- To change entries, select *Auto Answer List* 🖈 Press 🔳 🖈 Select an entry → Press ■ → Enter a number → Press ■
  - To select from Phone Book or Call Log, select *Auto* Answer List → Press ■ → Select an entry → Press 🖾 Options → Select Change → Press ■ → Select From Contacts List or From Call Log → Press ■ → Select a number 

    ◆ Press
- To delete entries, select Auto Answer List → Press 🔳 → Select an entry → Press □ Options → Select Delete → Press ■ → Choose **Yes** → Press ■
- · Save up to ten numbers.

#### Changing Ring Time

Select Answer Time → Press ■ → Enter time → Press

- Note Even if Remote Monitor is active, calls from non-Auto Answer List numbers are not answered
  - Remote Monitor is effective only when handset is open.
  - For calls answered via Remote Monitor, a tone sounds from Speaker even if Manner mode is active/handsfree device is connected. (Tone and volume are fixed.)

**TV** 

# **Basics**

# ■One Seg Compatibility

911SH supports One Seg terrestrial digital television broadcast services developed for mobile devices.

- Set up a channel list for the current service area or access programs via the electronic program guide (EPG).
- View text-based Data Broadcasts, for interactive and program-related info.
- Record programs manually or save shows to Reservation List to record them or activate TV at the set time.



# Cycloid Position

Rotate Display into landscape orientation for widescreen TV. In portrait position, view Data Broadcast full- or half-screen. In Standby, rotate Display to Cycloid position to activate TV



(default). While New Message notice appears, turn Display from Cycloid to portrait position to open received messages without cancelling TV.

#### Watch Live Television → P.6-8

Set up a channel list for your service area to access available programing. From Standby, rotate Display to Cycloid position to activate TV (see **P.6-25** "Turn Display to"). Access programing from TV Listing (EPG).

#### Access Messaging → P.6-6

While New Message notice appears, change Display from Cycloid to portrait position to open received messages/access messaging functions in the lower half of Display.

#### Handle Incoming Calls → P.6-5

While handset is ringing, rotate Display from Cycloid to portrait position to pause TV and answer the call (see **P.10-31** "Turn Display to"). Alternatively, answer in Cycloid position.

#### Access TV Listing (EPG) → P.6-10

Access TV Listing (EPG) to find program channels and times; set Reservations by date and time to record shows or activate TV.

#### View Data Broadcasts → P.6-13

In addition to high-quality audio and visuals, enjoy text and other Data Broadcasts including various program-related information.

#### Record & Play Back Shows → P.6-15

Save a show to Reservation List or record it manually; watch TV while recording to Memory Card for later viewing on handset.

#### Reserve TV Programs → P.6-19

Record a show or activate TV at a specified time; enter dates & times manually or reference TV Listing electronic program guide.

# Getting Started

#### **Precautions**

- 911SH TV is exclusively for use in Japan. (Overseas broadcast frequencies vary by country/region.)
- Do not use TV while driving or riding a bicycle. Accidents may result. Mobile phone use while driving is prohibited by the revised Road Traffic Law (effective 1 November 2004). When walking, always pay attention to your surroundings, especially near rail crossings/intersections, etc.
- Voice Call transmissions, incoming messages or mobile phone use in the immediate vicinity may affect audiovisual quality.

Note > SoftBank is not liable for any damages resulting from accidental loss/alteration of handset or Memory Card data. Information saved on handset (TV links, channel list, etc.) is not transferable to other SoftBank handsets. Delete all data on disused handset whenever possible.

#### Note >

- USIM Card removal/service termination disables TV.
- TV may be disabled after a period of handset use without a Network connection. Retrieve Network Information. (see P.11-15) to activate TV.

#### **Data Broadcast Network Connection**

A confirmation appears the first time a Network connection is established from a channel; if accepted, further Network connections are established without confirmation until the channel is changed, etc.

#### **Poor Reception Areas**

Programing may not be viewable or record properly when:

- Too far from or too close to broadcasting stations
- In mountainous areas or near tall buildings
- Aboard trains or in moving vehicles
- Near high-voltage lines, neon lights or wireless base stations
- Near railroad tracks or highways
- Inside tunnels or underground shopping malls
- Anywhere a jamming signal is broadcast/reception is unstable

Note >

In One Seg, block noise may appear or audio may be muted depending on signal strength.

# **Battery**

When battery is low ( ), TV does not activate. If battery runs low during use, TV ends automatically.

# Charging

Use TV when battery is adequately charged or charging.

- To avoid interference, separate Charger and Antenna.
- Charging takes longer when TV is active.

# One Seg Digital Television Broadcasts

### Terrestrial Digital TV Broadcasts for Mobile Devices

In Japan, the 6 MHz band assigned to each terrestrial digital broadcast channel is divided into 13 segments: 12 dedicated to HDTV broadcasting and the remaining "One Seg" dedicated to mobile devices.

One Seg service began on 1 April 2006 in the three largest urban areas and 13 prefectures. For details, access the Association for Promotion of Digital Broadcasting Website: http://www.d-pa.org/english/ (PC) http://www.d-pa.org/1seg/k/ (Mobile) Japanese Only

#### 911SH One Seg Support

911SH is equipped for One Seg digital broadcast reception.

- Tip One Seg terrestrial digital broadcasting is transmitted within the UHF spectrum.
  - Unless otherwise noted, One Seg is referred to as "Digital TV" in this manual.

#### **Antenna**

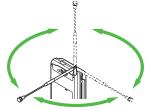
# **Digital TV Reception**

Extend Antenna to improve reception.

- · Pull Antenna by top bead until it clicks.
- After use, gently retract Antenna.
- Fold/rotate Antenna for best reception.
- Extend Antenna for better reception. unless transmission source is near.



• Use optional TV Antenna Connection Cable as needed.



# **Incoming Transmissions**

# **Incoming Calls**

TV pauses; press to answer call. End call to return to TV. (911SH returns to Standby after Video Calls or Circle Talk.)

- To receive and answer calls without interrupting TV, see P.6-25 "Calls & Alarms".
- TV recording continues when Voice Calls arrive, but ends for Video Calls or Circle Talk requests.
- If TV ends during a call (due to low battery, etc.), handset returns to Standby after the call. If other functions are in use at the same time, handset returns to active function window.

- Note In Cycloid position, use Headphones or Loudspeaker for telephony; in portrait position use Earpiece & Mic.
  - When Headphones are not attached, press To toggle Earpiece and Loudspeaker.

Tip To answer calls by rotating Display from Cycloid to portrait position, see P.10-31 "Turn Display to".

#### **Incoming Calls in Cycloid Position**

Set 911SH to show incoming call notice or enable call functions without interrupting TV (see P.6-25 "Calls & Alarms").



- Press To answer calls without interrupting TV.
  - Use Headphones or Loudspeaker for telephony: use Earpiece in portrait position (TV pauses).
  - TV audio is muted during calls.
- When Calls & Alarms for incoming calls/Circle Talk requests is set to Calls & Alarms, press en to toggle between TV and Call windows
- Placing handset in portrait position opens Call window (see P.10-31 "Turn Display to").
  - Press e to toggle between TV and Call windows.
- To end the call, press ெ. (TV window returns.)

# 6

# Incoming Messages

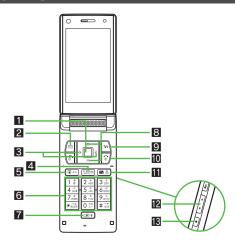
Double beep sounds and New Message notice (default: sender's number or name) appears at the top of Display.

- While New Message notice appears, rotate Display from Cycloid to portrait position to open Received Msg. folder in the lower half of Display; unavailable if another function is active or Message Notice (see P.14-36) is Off. Press 299 to toggle windows (see P.6-10).
- 気象情報 Received Msg. 1/ □ Ueda Mikio
- When TV ends and handset returns to Standby, Information window opens for any unchecked messages.
- To change/hide notice or mute alert sound, see P.14-36 "Message Notice".

### Using Headphones

- When Headphones are in use, incoming transmission and Alarm sounds are audible from Headphones and Speaker.
  - To disable Speaker, see P.10-19 "Ringer Output".

# **Key Assignments**



- Execute Data Broadcast Item
- 2 Open Options Menu
- **3** Channel Advance

Press • (reverse) or • (forward).

- Press for 1+ seconds to find channels automatically (see P.6-8 "Auto Search").
- 4 Return to Previous Data Broadcast Window
  - may not work depending on the window.

#### Open Shortcuts Menu (Multi Job)

• Not available in Cycloid position.

12

#### 6 Direct Channel Access

- With handset in portrait position, press a key for 1+ seconds to reassign current channel to it.
- While viewing Data Broadcast, press a key to execute the operation/function assigned to it.

#### **7** Toggle Active Windows (Multi Job)

- Press for 1+ seconds to activate/cancel Manner mode.
- In Cycloid position, toggle display size.

# Select Data Broadcast Item (Portrait Position)/ Volume Control (Cycloid Position)

# **望** Toggle Panel On/Off

• Press for 1+ seconds to access EPG.

#### **10** Exit TV

#### Activate TV/Change Area

• In Standby, press to activate TV.

#### Volume Control

Press (up) or (down).

Press for 1+ seconds to mute. To cancel, press (volume 1 returns).

#### **18** Record

Press for 1+ seconds to record programs.

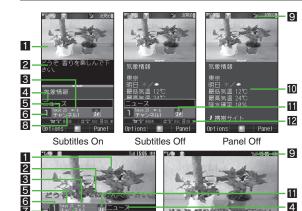
# Help

View a summary of key assignments.

Activate TV and press ☑ Options → Select Help → Press ■

■ Press ■ to return.

# **Window Description**



Subtitles On/Panel On

とうぞ 雪りを開しんで下さい。 Subtitles On/Panel Off

TV Image
Subtitle Text
Sound Language
Program Name
Display Size
Station Name
Signal Strength
Data Broadcast

5 Area Name III Channel

6 Channel Key 2 Volume

Tip ► In Cycloid position, indicator positions may vary by display size (see P.6-24 "Screen Size (Landscape)").

# **Area Setup**

Handset contains channel information organised by locality. Before watching TV for the first time, retrieve Network information (see P.11-15) and then follow these steps.

Press 🗃 🚉

Channels unset. Set now? appears.

Choose *Yes* and press ■

Select a region and press

- To set up channel list without specifying an area, select Other Region ⇒ Press ■
- Select a prefecture and press
- Select a locality and press
  - After setup (approximately 60 seconds), channel list appears.

Channels unset.

Set now?

To start over, press → Choose **Yes** → Press 🔳

Press ■

• To watch TV. select **Digital TV** and press .

- Note > Setup may not complete correctly depending on the area or service availability; perform Update All (see P.6-23 "Update").
  - To set up more Areas or edit Area elements, see P.6-22.

# Watching TV

Main Menu ► TV

# Select *Digital TV* and press ■

TV window opens. (Channel, volume, etc. from the previous viewing are retained.)

- Key Assignments: see P.6-6
- Data Broadcast: see P.6-13
- Subtitle & Sound Settings: see P.6-12

# Use Keypad to select a channel

· Other Channel Selection Methods:



Channel Advance	Use ••¹
Auto Search	Use    (Long Press) <sup>2</sup>
Switch Area	Press ■ Use to select an Area Press ■

<sup>1</sup>Channels saved in the active Area appear by default. To see all receivable channels, see P.6-24 "Navi Kev Settings".

- <sup>2</sup>When a stable signal is found, search stops automatically. • Press a key for 1+ seconds to assign current channel to that
- key for the active Area (see P.6-23 "Save Channel").
- To open Video List, press 

  Options 

  Select TV Player 

  → Press
- To switch display size, see P.6-24 "Screen Size (Landscape)" or "Screen Size (Portrait)".
- Press (up) or (down) to adjust volume.
- Press for 1+ seconds to mute.
  - To cancel, press <a>¬</a>.

 Data Broadcast information and the following Options menu items do not appear in Cycloid position: Change View (Data), Back to Top and Auto Subtitle Off.

Access TV Listing, TV Link and TV Player in portrait position.

# Multi Job

Open function windows while watching TV in portrait mode.

- Messaging window appears in the lower half of Display.
- Activate TV (perform Steps 1- 2 in "Watching TV" on P.6-8) then follow these steps:
- Data Broadcast content is only viewable in portrait mode.

# 1 Press [PA/s] Shortcuts menu opens.

# 2 Select a function and press Menu/window opens.

- Memory Card may not be available for saving files.
- To return to TV, exit other functions.



#### **Switching Panel Pattern**

**?** To exit, press 1 then choose *Yes* and press 1

# Activate TV and press ☑ Options ⇒ Select Settings ⇒

Press ► Select Panel Type → Press ► Select

Pattern1, Pattern2 or Pattern3 → Press ■

#### Switching One Seg Service

- Activate TV and press ☑ Options → Select Select Serv.

  Station → Press → Select Service 1, Service 2 or

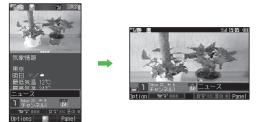
  Service 3 → Press
  - Available when multiple services are available.

#### Tip ► • Pen Light is disabled while TV is active.

• Keypad Tone is muted while TV is active.

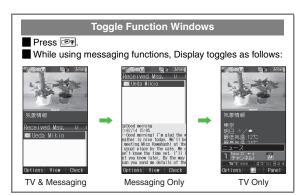
# Watching TV in Cycloid Position

Rotate Display to Cycloid position for widescreen view.



6 7

<



# TV Listing (Japanese Only)

Main Menu ► TV

# 1 Select TV Listing and press

EPG application starts.

- Complete local area setting to access program information; set timers to record/watch programs; see EPG application instructions for details.
- From TV, press **□ Options →** Select **TV Listing →** Press **□ ■** Alternatively, press **□** for 1+ seconds.

# **Program Information**

Open program details via current channel's schedule.

- Set timers via program schedule.
- Activate TV (perform Steps 1- 2 in "Watching TV" on P.6-8) then follow these steps:

# **1** Press ☑ Options

# 2 Select Program Info. and press

Program schedule appears.

- To set timer to record programs, select a program 🗭 Press 🔄
- To set timer to watch programs, select a program →
  Press ☑ Options → Select Programming → Press ■
- To open Reservation List, press ☐ Options → Select
  - Reservation List → Press ■
- To check Memory Card memory status, press ☑ Options ⇒ Select Memory Remaining ⇒ Press ■

# **3** Select a program and press Details appear.

# **Audio & Visual Settings**

Available Modes:

Standard Standard audiovisual para kinds of programs		Standard audiovisual parameters; applicable to all kinds of programs
	Dynamic	Standard contrast with increased brightness; use for watching sports and other dynamic scenes
	Movie	Low contrast with increased brightness; best suited for watching movies or dark scenes

Standard is set by default.

Main Menu ► TV → Digital TV

**1** Press ☑ Options

3 Select Standard, Dynamic or Movie and press

**Adjusting Parameters** 

Customise parameters by Standard, Dynamic or Movie.

Brightness	Adjust Backlight Brightness (5 levels). Turn Light Sensor on/off at levels 2 to 5.	
Contrast	Adjust Display Contrast (5 levels)	
Blackness	Adjust Display Brightness (5 levels)	
Colour	Adjust colour density (6 levels: 0 to 5)	
Tint	Adjust skin colour tone (9 levels: -4 to +4)	
Sharpness	Select Soft, Normal or Hard	
Sound	Select from ten sound options	

### **Default Settings:**

	Standard	Dynamic	Movie
Brightness	Level 2 (Sensor: On)	Level 5 (Sensor: Off)	Level 5 (Sensor: On)
Contrast	Level 3	Level 3	Level 1
Blackness	Level 2	Level 2	Level 5
Colour	Level 0	Level 0	Level 0
Tint	Level 0	Level 0	Level 0
Sharpness	Normal	Normal	Soft
Sound	Normal	Sports	Movie

Follow these steps after Step 2 above.

1 Select Standard, Dynamic or Movie and press 
☐ Edit

# 2 Adjusting Brightness/Contrast/Blackness/ Colour/Tint

- Select Brightness, Contrast, Blackness, Colour or Tint and press ■
- 2 Use 🗓 to adjust level and press
  - For *Brightness*, then press to turn Light Sensor on/off.

### Adjusting Sharpness

- Select Sharpness and press
- Select Soft, Normal or Hard and press
  - When Screen Size (Landscape) (see P.6-24) is Original Size, Sharpness Normal applies even if Soft is set. Changes may not be apparent in some images.

# Adjusting Sound

- Select Sound and press ■
- ☑ Select Normal, News, Sports, Drama, Variety, Music, Movie, BASS, Surround or Surround Bass and press

#### Resetting

- Select Reset and press
- 2 Choose Yes and press
  - All parameters return to their defaults.

Note Light Sensor (see P.1-8 ) detects ambient light level to adjust Display Brightness automatically. Brightness may take a moment to adjust immediately after opening handset or sudden changes in ambient light. Do not place labels or stickers over Light Sensor. 6

<

# **Subtitle & Sound Settings**

Activate TV (perform Steps 1-2 in "Watching TV" on **P.6-8**) then follow these steps:

Display Subtitle

Show or hide subtitles

Default On (In-Call/Manner)

Press ☐ Options → Select Subtitle/Sound → Press ■ → Select Display Subtitle → Press ■ → Choose On, On (In-Call/Manner) or Off → Press ■

- Choose On (In-Call/Manner) to see subtitles in Manner mode/ during calls only.
  - Subtitles are hidden while Headphones are connected.

Subtitle Position

Select subtitle position (top or bottom)

Available in Cycloid position only.

Default Bottom

Press 

Options 
Select Subtitle/Sound 
Press 
Select Subtitle Position 
Press 
Select Upper or Bottom 
Press 
P

Auto Subtitle Off Select whether to close subtitle area automatically when no subtitles are available

Available in portrait position only.

Press ☑ Options → Select Subtitle/Sound → Press ■ → Select Auto Subtitle Off → Press ■ → Choose On

or Off ⇒ Press ■

Subtitle Language

Select subtitle language

Available when multiple languages are supported.

Sound Type

Select sound playback option

Available when multiple sounds are supported.

Press Dotions → Select Subtitle/Sound → Press Dotions → Select Sound Type → Press Dotions → Select Sound1 or Sound2 → Press Dotions

Sound Language

Select sound options for bilingual broadcasts, etc.

Default Main

Press Dotions → Select Subtitle/Sound → Press 
Select Sound Language → Press Select

Main, Sub or Main + Sub → Press Select

#### **Subtitle Text**

- To show subtitles, choose On or On (In-Call/Manner) for Display Subtitle.
  - In portrait position, subtitles appear in subtitle area.
  - In Cycloid position, subtitles appear superimposed on TV images.
  - If not supported, subtitles do not appear regardless of the setting.
  - On programs supporting subtitles, subtitle area remains open even when no subtitles are available



Sublille Area

Follow onscreen instructions to access text-based Data Broadcasts, including program-related information as well as interactive television services and more.

- Data Broadcast information is viewable on 911SH only in portrait position.
- Data Broadcast information viewing is free, however, using data links/related services incurs Internet connection fees: Internet connection confirmation appears each time.



Data Broadcast

# **Basic Operations**

By default, available information appears at the bottom of Display automatically. Data Broadcast navigation varies by program.

Activate TV (perform Steps 1- 2 in "Watching TV" on P.6-8) then follow these steps:

Navigate menus, execute commands, etc.

Use 🗓 to select an item **▶** Press 🔳

Use 🗓 even for horizontally arranged items. (🖭 switches channels by default; to disable this function, see P.6-24 "Navi Key Settings".)

#### **Data Broadcast Settings**

Activate TV (perform Steps 1- 2 in "Watching TV" on P.6-8) then follow these steps:

View Data Broadcast on full Display

Press

Press 

Options 

Select Change View (Data) 

→

To cancel, press [Y]

Return to initial window

Press ☐ Options → Select Back to Top → Press ☐

Select storage media for images obtained from

Data Broadcast

Press ☐ Options → Select Settings → Press ☐ → Select Set Broadcast Data → Press ■ → Select Image Location → Press ■ → Select Phone Memory or *Memory Card* **▶** Press ■

Delete program-related/personal information saved from Data Broadcasts

# **Deleting by Station**

Press 

Options 

Select Settings 

Press 

→ Select Set Broadcast Data → Press ■ → Select Delete Station Data → Press ■ → Select a station → Press 

Options 

Select Delete 

Press 

→ Choose Yes ▶ Press ■

### **Deleting All**

Press 

Options 

Select Settings 

Press 

Press 

→ Select Set Broadcast Data 

Press 

Select

Press 

Select Delete Station Data → Press ■ → Press □ Options Select Delete All ⇒ Press ■ ⇒ Enter Handset Code → Press ■ → Choose Yes → Press ■

6

Show or hide Internet connection confirmation
Send, hide or confirm before sending Location Information
Send or hide manufacture number

Default Notify Connection: On Location: Check Each Time Manufacture Number: Off

Press ☑ Options → Select Settings → Press ■ →
Select Set Broadcast Data → Press ■ → Select
Notify Connection, Location or Manufacture Number
→ Press ■ → Choose On or Off → Press ■

• For Location, select On. Off or Check Each Time.

# TV Link (Japanese Only)

Some programs offer links to information via the Mobile Internet. Save your favourite links to TV Link.

TV Link Icons:

		Note	Linked information
1	8	Station Link	URL to access broadcast station server
1		Mobile Link	URL to access Mobile Internet site

· Connection fees may apply.

# Saving TV Links

Activate TV (perform Steps 1- 2 in "Watching TV" on **P.6-8**) then follow these steps:

# 1 Tune in to a program offering Data Broadcast then select a link source and press

 Link navigation varies by program. Follow onscreen instructions to save links.

# **Opening TV Links**

Main Menu ► TV

# 1 Select TV Link and press ■

TV Link list appears.

To open properties, select a link ⇒ Press ☑ Options ⇒ Select Details ⇒ Press ■

■ Press ■ to return.

To delete a link, select one → Press ☑ Options → Select

Delete? → Press ■ → Choose Yes → Press ■

To delete all links, press ☐ Options → Select Delete All → Press → Enter Handset Code → Press → Choose Yes → Press →

# 2 Select a link and press

Content appears.

If the link has expired, Rights expired. appears. Press to return to TV Link list.

Record clips on Memory Card while watching TV.

- Insert a Memory Card formatted for 911SH beforehand.
- Do not remove Memory Card while recording. Doing so may damage the card or result in lost files.
- Make sure there is enough free memory.
- If battery runs low, recording stops; charge battery while recording.
- Saved files cannot be copied/forwarded, attached to S! Mail or exported to other display devices.
- Estimated recording time for 256 MB Memory Card with no files or recordings is 80 minutes.
- Save up to 99 recordings on a Memory Card.
- Activate TV (perform Steps 1- 2 in "Watching TV" on P.6-8) then follow these steps:

# 1 Press • for 1+ seconds

Recording starts.

- While recording, Area and active channel are fixed; channels cannot be edited/saved.
- Data is recorded along with content by default. To record content alone see P.6-16 "Set Recording".
- Changing volume, display size or audio/visual settings does not affect recordings.
- To adjust volume or mute, see P.6-8.
- To switch display size, see P.6-24 "Screen Size (Landscape)" or "Screen Size (Portrait)".
- Audio & Visual Settings: see P.6-10



# **2** To stop, press • for 1+ seconds

- · Recording stops and is saved.
- To cancel and exit, press <a> → Choose</a> No → Press <a> ■</a>
- Choose Yes instead of No then press to save recording and exit.

#### When Timer Recording Time Arrives

Confirmation appears. To start timer recording, follow these steps.

Press 
P

#### **Copyright Protection**

- 911SH encryption technology complies with ISDB-T mobile Video profile (SD-Video standard) for copyright protection. This technology prevents unauthorised copying or playback through data encryption and authentication.
  - Recordings split on handset comply with the above standard.

6

<

- Note If memory/battery runs low or a Video Call/Circle Talk request is accepted, recording stops; content is saved.
  - When a Memory Card file is set as Ringtone/Ringvideo, default Ringtone/Ringvideo may sound/play for calls/ Circle Talk requests received while recording.
  - Copyright laws limit duplicated material to private use only, and prohibit unauthorised reproduction/other use.
  - SoftBank is not liable for any damages resulting from accidental loss or alteration of recorded content.
  - Recorded content cannot be copied.

Tip When recording with 911SH closed External Display stays on; to disable it set Duration (see P.10-14) to Off.

# **Data Broadcast Recording Setting**

Activate TV (perform Steps 1- 2 in "Watching TV" on P.6-8) then follow these steps:

Set handset to record content with or without data

Default Image + Text Press ☐ Options → Select Settings → Press ☐ → Select Set Broadcast Data → Press ■ → Select Set Recording → Press ■ → Select Image + Text or Image Only 

Press ■

# **Playing Recorded Programs**

Main Menu ► TV

Select TV Player and press

Video List appears.

• File Icons:

Ш	Standard file
00	Split file
Ħ	Unplayable file

# Select a file and press

Playback starts. (The last played file plays from where it stopped.)

- After playback, Video List returns.
- To toggle Panel On/Off, press 🕮. (Press 🗹 in Cycloid position.)
- Playing Split Files: see P.6-18
- To stop, press [Y/] for 1+ seconds

# **Playback Operations**

Fast Forward <sup>1</sup>	Press   Press   for playback. (Press   in portrait position.)
Fast Rewind <sup>1</sup>	Press ☐ Press ☐ for playback. (Press ☑ in portrait position.)
Skip Forward <sup>2</sup>	Press ###
Skip Backward <sup>3</sup>	Press X ***
Pause	Press (Press ) in portrait position.) Press again to resume playback.
Frame Advance	While paused, press •••
Replay <sup>4</sup>	Press • (Long Press)
Create Marker	Press •
Skip to Marker <sup>5</sup>	Use •• (Long Press) or press $0^{\frac{5}{h+1}}$ - $9^{\frac{5}{h+2}}$
Split	Press • (Long Press)
Toggle Display Size	Press (Available in Cycloid position.)
Volume Control/Mute	See <b>P.6-8</b>

<sup>1</sup>Each press increases speed.

Fast forward: 1.33x - 120x (five levels)

Fast rewind: 2x - 120x (four levels)

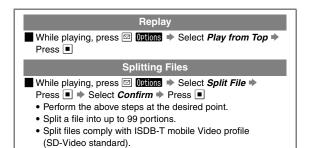
(Sounds play faster in 1.33x fast forwarding.)

<sup>2</sup>Advances 30 seconds at one time.

<sup>3</sup>Rewinds 15 seconds at one time.

<sup>4</sup>Moves to previous Marker, if any.

<sup>5</sup>Available when there is a Marker.



Tip ▶ • During playback, press ☑ Octions to access the following.
■ Subtitle/sound settings (see P.6-12)
■ Data Broadcast (see P.6-13)
■ Audio/visual settings (see P.6-10)
• To skip forward or backward during playback,

press Doptions and use Skip(FF) or Skip(REW).

#### Markers

Create Markers to specify start point or skip forward/backward. Follow these steps during playback.



**Tip** • Create up to ten Markers per file. Open file properties • Create up to 99 Markers in total. Press Start playback from Marker positions Press 

Options 

Select Marker List 

Press 

Press 

→ Press I to return. Select a number 

◆ Press To delete a Marker, open Marker List and select a number 🖈 Press ☐ Options → Select Delete → Press ☐ ■ To delete all Markers, open Marker List ⇒ Press Press 

Options 

Select Delete All 

Press 

Press 

→ Press 
to return. Choose **Yes** → Press ■ Tip ► Alternatively, press 🖾 Options in Video List to open Delete files Marker List. One File **Video List Operations All Files** Change file name Select a file → Press 🖾 Options → Select Rename → Press ■ ▶ Enter name ▶ Press ■ Press Select whether to play one file repeatedly Default Normal Select a file → Press □ Options → Select Playback Press Pattern → Press ■ → Select Normal or Repeat → Press

• Alternatively, press Deptions during playback.

Select a file → Press □ Options → Select Details → • Alternatively, press ( Options during playback. Check Memory Card memory status Press 

Options 

Select Memory Remaining 

→ Select a file → Press □ Options → Select Delete → Press ■ Choose Yes Press ■ Press 

Options 

Select Delete All 

Press 

Press 

→ Enter Handset Code → Press ■ → Choose Yes → **Playing Split Files** Select a split file → Press 🔀 Open → Select a file →

Save up to five timer entries to record/watch programs.

- Maximum continuous recording time per entry is 4 hours (when saving to Memory Card with capacity of 1 GB or more).
- If battery runs low, recording stops; charge while recording.

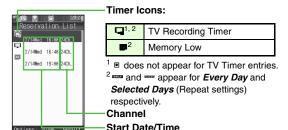
# **Opening Reservation List**

Main Menu ► TV

Options View Result

- Select Reservation List and press
  - To see timer details, select an entry 🖈 Press 🔳
  - To open timer log, press ☑ Result → Select a record → Press 🔳
  - To delete records, select one Press 🛂 Delete 🖈 Choose *Yes* → Press ■

# **Window Description**



Tip Follow these steps to check Memory Card memory status. Press 

Options 

Select Memory Remaining ▶ Press

# **Setting Timer via EPG**

Main Menu ► TV → Reservation List

Press ☑ Options

Select New Entry and press

Select *From TV Listing* and press ■

EPG application starts.

• Refer to the application's help menu for operational instructions.

# **Setting Timer Manually**

**New Entry** 

Main Menu ► TV → Reservation List

Press ☑ Options

Select *New Entry* and press ■

Select *Manual* and press

Select Programming (watching) or Recording and press

Enter start date/time and press

Enter end date/time and press

The last watched channel is entered below **Channel**: To proceed without changing any settings, skip ahead to Step 8. 6

#### Enter/edit items as needed

• Select an item and press . Complete selection/entry and press .

Channel:	Select a channel
TV station:	Enter/edit station name
Program:	Enter program name
Record TV Data:	Select Image + Text or Image Only
Repeat:	Select Once Only, Every Day or Selected Days

• In addition, edit set date/time in Start Date & Time: or End Date & Time: or change timer type in Program Type:.

8 Press Y Save The entry is saved.

• When memory is low, confirmation appears. Press 
to save.

#### **Timer Recording Precautions**

- End the current operations.
- Adjust Antenna angle for better TV reception.
- Make sure battery is adequately charged. (Charge battery while recording.)
- Make sure there is enough free space on Memory Card.

#### **Error Messages**

- If one of these messages appears, entry is not saved. Check start date/time, end date/time or channel.
  - Invalid starting or ending date/time! Cannot save.
  - Cannot save. Confirm End Time.
  - Reservation Times overlapping!
  - The maximum recording time is 4 hours.

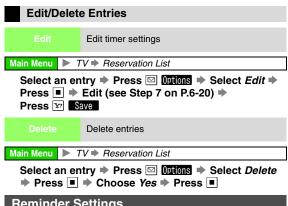
#### **Warning Messages**

- If one of these messages appears, recording may fail or be incomplete:
  - Starting time passed already. Will be recorded from the middle.
  - Reservation Times partly overlapping!
  - No Memory Card. Reservation is saved correctly.
  - Low on free space! Please insert another memory card.
  - Please charge the battery before recording.
  - Recording may stop due to temperature raised by long time recording.

#### **Timer Recording Time**

- Digital TV reception is slightly delayed on handset. Therefore, portions aired immediately before the timer start time may be included in recordings.
  - Recording ends a few seconds after the timer end time.
- Timer entries set via EPG are updated automatically when EPG data is updated due to program time changes.
  - Timer entries may not be updated automatically.
  - Timers are cancelled when target programs are cancelled.
- To set timers via program schedule, see P.6-10 "Program Information".





# Reminder Settings

Select timing/duration of TV Alarms and whether to sound Alarm tone, vibrate handset or illuminate Small Light with TV Alarm notices

> Default Alarm/Vibration/Light: On Reminder Time: 1 minute before Duration: 10 seconds

Main Menu ► TV → Settings → TV Alarm

#### Alarm (Tone)/Vibration/Small Light

Select Alarm. Vibration or Light → Press ■ → Choose On or Off 

Press ■

#### **Reminder Time**

Select Reminder Time → Press ■ → Select 1 minute before. 3 minutes before or 5 minutes before → Press ■ Duration

Select Duration → Press ■ → Select 10 sec., 20 sec. or 30 sec. ▶ Press ■

Select whether to end the current operations automatically to activate timers Default Off Main Menu ► TV → Settings → TV Reserve Prior

# Choose *On* or *Off* ▶ Press ■

- If it can run concurrently with TV, current operation continues.
- Timer activation is disabled during calls or while using some other functions.

# At TV Alarm Time

TV and Alarm activate. Alarm ends after the set duration. In Standby. recording starts at timer recording time even in closed position.

- Out of Standby/when TV is active, Finish application. appears if TV cannot activate in current state; press to end application and enable timer.
- If TV Reserve Prior is set to On. timer activates at Alarm time. In this case, the current operation ends automatically if TV cannot activate due to the operation or when using multiple functions. (Unsaved data will be deleted.) Timer activation is disabled during Video Calls or while using some other functions.



#### **Warning Messages**

- If this message appears, recording may fail or be incomplete:
  - Low on free space! Please insert another memory card.
- If this message appears, recording will not start.
  - Cannot record Memory Card is not inserted.

#### **Recording Result**

- Could not start recording. appears if recording failed due to low battery/memory, no Memory Card, active function, etc.
- Recording aborted. appears if recording was interrupted due to memory shortage or Memory Card removal, etc.

# **Additional Settings**

# **Area Settings**

Switch the current Area or save additional Areas (see **P.6-8** "Area Setup").

- Save up to ten Areas (Area 1 Area 9 or Area 0).
- Setup may not complete correctly depending on the area or service availability; perform Update All (see P.6-23 "Update").

# Switching Area

Activate TV (perform Steps 1-2 in "Watching TV" on **P.6-8**) then follow these steps:

Change Area

Receive broadcasts in other areas

Press **™** Select an Area **→** Press **■** 

If no channel exists, select a region → Press → Select a prefecture → Press → Select a locality → Press → Area setup starts (see P.6-8).

#### Moving into Another Area while Watching TV

Area may be changed. Set area? may appear. Follow these steps to switch to the corresponding Area.

Choose Yes → Press ■ → Select an Area → Press ■

If no channel exists, select a region → Press 
 Select a prefecture → Press 
 Select a locality → Press

# Adding/Editing Areas

Activate TV (perform Steps 1-2 in "Watching TV" on **P.6-8**) then follow these steps:

Add

Set up new Areas

Press ☐ Options → Select Set Channels → Press ■ → Select Change Area → Press ■ → Select an Area → Press ☐ Options → Select Set Area Info → Press ■ → Select a region → Press ■ → Select a prefecture → Press ■ → Select a locality → Press ■

• Area setup starts (see P.6-8).

Update

Update channels

Press ☐ Options → Select Set Channels → Press ■ → Select Change Area → Press ■ → Select an Area → Press ☐ Options → Select Set Channels → Press ■ → Select Update All or Update Further → Press ■

• Area setup starts (see P.6-8).

For *Update All*, then choose *Yes* ▶ Press ■

Tip ▶ • Select *Update All* to update all channels in the Area.

 Select *Update Further* to add new channels to current Area. (Channels assigned to the same keys are overwritten.)

Change Area Nar

Rename Areas

Press 

Options 
Select Set Channels 
Press 

Press 

■

Select Change Area → Press ■ → Select an Area

▶ Press Press Select Change Area Name

Press ■ ▶ Enter name ▶ Press ■

Reset Settings

Delete all channels in an Area

Press ☑ Options → Select Set Channels → Press ■
→ Select Change Area → Press ■ → Select an Area
→ Press ☑ Options → Select Reset Settings →

Press ■ → Choose *Yes* → Press ■

**Editing Channels** 

Activate TV (perform Steps 1- 2 in "Watching TV" on **P.6-8**) then follow these steps:

**Save Channe** 

Save current channel to active Area

Press 

Options 
Select Set Channels 
Press 
Select a key to assign 
Press 

Press

To overwrite a saved channel, select one and press ■ ⇒ Choose Yes ⇒ Press ■

 Alternatively, press a key for 1+ seconds in TV window to assign current channel to it. To overwrite a saved channel, choose Yes and press .

Move

Reassign channels to other keys by swapping positions between two channels

Press ☐ Options → Select Set Channels → Press ☐ → Select CH Switch → Press ☐ → Select a channel → Press ☐ Options → Select Move → Press ☐ →

Use (i) to select a target key ▶ Press ■

Delete

Delete channels

Press ☑ Options → Select Set Channels → Press ■
→ Select CH Switch → Press ■ → Select a channel
→ Press ☑ Options → Select Delete → Press ■ →
Choose Yes → Press ■

Using 🖭

Activate TV (perform Steps 1- 2 in "Watching TV" on **P.6-8**) then follow these steps:

Navi Ke

Assign key function to 🖭

Default CH Switch

Press ☑ Options → Select Set Channels → Press ■ → Select Navi Key Settings → Press ■ → Select CH Switch, By Manual or Invalid → Press ■

CH Switch	Toggle channels in active Area
By Manual	Toggle all receivable channels
Invalid*	Disable •••

\* (Long Press) remains valid for Auto Search.

# TV Settings

**Changing Display Size** 

Screen Size (Landscape

Select display size for Cycloid position

**Default**Standard

Main Menu 
▶ TV → Settings → Screen Size(Landscape)

Select Standard, Original Size, Full Screen, Enlarge(Up. Left), Enlarge(Up. Right) or Enlarge(Bottom) ▶ Press ■

To change display size while watching TV, press ☑ Options

Select Settings → Press ☑ → Select Screen

Size(Portrait) → Press ☑ → Select a size → Press ☑

Screen Size (Portrait)

Select display size for portrait position

Default Standard

Main Menu ► TV → Settings → Screen Size(Portrait)

### Select Standard or Enlarge → Press ■

To change display size while watching TV, press ☑ Options
 Select Settings → Press ■ → Select Screen
 Size(Portrait) → Press ■ → Select a size → Press ■

Tip Edges may be cropped when Full Screen or Enlarge is set. In this case, switch to Standard or Original Size.

# **Additional Settings**

Sound Output

Select Earphone or Loudspeaker

**Default** Earphone

Main Menu ► TV → Settings → Sound Output

### Select Earphone or Loudspeaker ▶ Press ■

• Audio is audible from Headphones even in Manner mode.

Note When *Loudspeaker* is set, audio is not audible from Headphones. Select *Earphone* in the above operation.

6

7

Calls & Alarms

Select handset response to calls, etc. while watching TV

Default Voice Call/Video Call/Circle Talk: Calls & Alarms, Alarm: Alarm Priority

Main Menu ► TV → Settings → Calls & Alarms

### **Incoming Calls/Circle Talk Requests**

Select For Voice Call, For Video Call or Circle Talk 

Press 

Select Calls & Alarms or Notice a Call 

Press 

Pres

#### Alarm

Select Alarm → Press ■ → Select Alarm Priority or Alarm Notice → Press ■

TV pauses for incoming calls/Circle Talk requests or Alarm
A message appears for incoming calls/ Circle Talk requests or Alarm

Set TV to end automatically after a period of time (Auto Exit Time) or when handset is closed (Phone Closing)

Default Auto Exit Time: Off, Phone Closing: On

Main Menu ► TV → Settings → Auto Power Off

#### **Auto Exit Time**

Select Auto Exit Time → Press ■ → Select Off, 10 min., 30 min., 60 min. or 120 min. → Press ■ Phone Closing

Select *Phone Closing* → Press ■ → Choose *On* (TV ends when handset is closed) or *Off* → Press ■

Tip On takes effect only when TV is active; does not apply during TV timer time or when handset is closed in Cycloid position.

Turn Display to Display is rotated to landscape in Standby

Default Set Horizontal

Main Menu

Settings → Phone Settings (□) → Turn Display to
 Activate TV

Select Set Horizontal (activate) or Off → Press ■

Camera

# Camera

# **Getting Started**

911SH feature a 2 megapixel CCD camera. Capture still images (see **P.7-5**) or record video (see **P.7-8**).

Tip ► Use Internal Camera or External Camera; unless otherwise noted, mobile camera operations are described for External Camera.

#### **Mobile Camera Basics**

- Clean dust/smudges from lens cover with a soft cloth before use.
- Handset movement may blur images; hold handset firmly or place it on a stable surface and use Self-timer. (see P.7-11).
- Mobile camera is a precision instrument, however, some pixels may appear brighter or darker.
- Shooting/saving images while handset is hot may affect the image quality.
- Subjecting the lens to direct sunlight will damage the camera's colour filter.

#### **Shutter Click**

- Shutter click volume is fixed, and sounds even in Manner mode.
- To change shutter click sound for still images, see P.7-15.

#### Incoming Calls/Alarm while Using Camera

- Before capturing image or recording video, mobile camera temporarily shuts down for incoming calls and Alarm. End the call or close Alarm Time notice to reactivate camera.
  - Press during a call to toggle mobile camera and Call windows.
- When recording video, Alarm Times are announced after exiting mobile camera.
- Captured image or clip is temporarily saved. End the call, close Alarm Time notice or exit mobile camera to return.

#### **Precautions for Video Recording**

When battery is low, Video Camera is not available. If battery runs low while recording video, recording stops. (Recorded video is saved.)

#### Auto Shut-off

Before image capture, mobile camera shuts down after three minutes of inactivity and handset returns to Standby.

#### **Exporting Images**

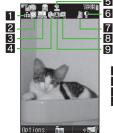
■ View images and video on PCs, TVs or other display devices via optional Video Cable (see P.10-14 "Viewing Images on External Devices").

6

7

# **Camera Display Indicators**

#### **Photo Camera Mode**



5 1 2 3 4

Portrait Position

Cycloid Position

#### 1 Capacity (see P.7-5)

- 🛍: 101 or more
- Red background: 3 or less

#### Picture Quality (see P.7-17)

⊞: High Quality, 
⊞: Fine, 
□: Normal

Picture Size (see P.7-16)

# 4 Self-timer Active (see P.7-11)

\$\infty\$: 10 seconds, \$\infty\$: 5 seconds, \$\infty\$: 2 seconds

#### Mobile Light (see P.7-16)

♦: On, 
♦: Automatic, 
♦: Low Light

#### Exposure (see P.7-16)

Dark Standard Right

Dark ◆ Standard → Bright

#### 7 Save to (see P.7-18)

∃: Handset, 
 ₱: Memory Card (Pictures)

图: Memory Card (DCIM), %: Ask Each Time

#### Continuous Shoot (see P.7-12)

🗐 - 🗐: Captured/Total

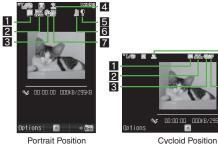
অ: 4 Pictures, আ: 9 Pictures, ৶: Overlapped

• #: Index Image (composite image for Overlapped) is on Display.

#### 9 Scene (see P.7-17)

▲: Automatic, ■: Night, \subsetem : Sports, \undersetem : Text

#### Video Camera Mode



**III** Video Quality (see P.7-17)

Oyciola i osii

⊞: High Quality, 
⊞: Fine, 
□: Normal

Record Size (see P.7-17)

#### Self-timer (see P.7-11)

🖏: 10 seconds, 🗞: 5 seconds, 🗞: 2 seconds

#### 4 Mobile Light (see P.7-16)

#### Exposure (see P.7-16)

Dark ◆ Standard → Bright

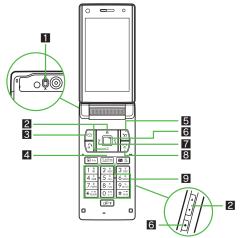
# 6 Save to (see P.7-18)

☐: Handset, 
☐: Memory Card, 
☐: Ask Each Time

#### Record Time (see P.7-17)

圖: For Message, 圖: Extended Video, 圖: SD VIDEO

# **Key Assignments**



#### ■ Portrait (೨)/Macro (🖏) Selector

Slide to Macro to capture images as close as 10 cm. Allow at least 40 cm for Portrait.

#### 2 Digital Zoom

Press (zoom in) or (zoom out).

#### **3** Options

4 Cancel

**5** Toggle Mode

6 Shutter

**7** Exposure

(darker), (brighter)

8 End

#### **9** Function Shortcuts

Activate mobile camera and press the following keys to use the corresponding functions.

1 8	Show Exposure slider			
	Hide indicators to frame image on full Display (see			
2 ABC	P.7-15 "Display Icons")			
	Toggle Viewfinder size (see P.7-16 "Display Size")			
4 t GHI	Switch save location (see P.7-18 "Save to")			
5 .kl	Change image size (see P.7-16 "Picture Size" or P.7-17			
O JKL	"Record Time/Size")			
6 lg	Switch Scene options for still image capture (see <b>P.7-17</b> )			
OMNO	Turn Microphone on/off for video recording (see P.7-17)			
7 gt PORS	Change image quality (see P.7-17)			
8 **	Toggle Self-timer mode (see P.7-11)			
9 <sub>wxyz</sub>	Maximise or cancel Digital Zoom			
0 % ±	Open Help (see P.7-5)			
<del>X</del> ↔ ▲	Toggle between Internal Camera and External Camera			
V·新店台	(see P.7-18 "Internal Camera/External Camera")			
#\$0	Toggle Mobile Light mode (see P.7-16)			

 Available options vary by selected image capture mode/ Display position. For details, see P.7-7 "Still Image Functions" and P.7-9 "Video Recording Operations".

#### Help

- Activate mobile camera and press Open to view a summary of key assignments.
  - Press 📮 to scroll down.
  - Press to return.

Alternatively, press 

Options 

Select Help 

→ Press ■

# Still Images

## **Photo Camera Mode**

Capture images to send via S! Mail, save as Wallpaper, etc. Various settings and functions are available for camera use.

Picture Size	2M (W 1200 x H 1600 dots: UXGA) 1.2M (W 960 x H 1280 dots: Quad-VGA) VGA (W 480 x H 640 dots: VGA) Standby (W 240 x H 400 dots: WQVGA) For Msg. (W 240 x H 320 dots: QVGA) For Msg. (W 120 x H 160 dots: QQVGA) Wide L (W 1200 x H 720 dots) Wide S (W 400 x H 240 dots)	
Format	JPEG (.jpg) <sup>1</sup>	
Save Location	Handset Data Folder (Pictures) or Memory Card Data Folder (Pictures/DCIM²)	

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>1</sup>Default file names appear as *Image001.jpg*, *Image002.jpg*, etc.

Picture Quality	High Quality/Fine/Normal		
Digital Zoom	2M (W 1200 x H 1600 dots): None 1.2M (W 960 x H 1280 dots): 1 - 1.3x VGA (W 480 x H 640 dots): 1 - 2.5x Standby (W 240 x H 400 dots): 1 - 4x For Msg. (W 240 X H 320 dots): 1 - 10x For Msg. (W 120 X H 160 dots): 1 - 20x Wide L (W 1200 x H 720 dots): None Wide S (W 400 x H 240 dots): 1 - 3x		
S! Mail Attachment	ОК		
Memory Capacity	340 files <sup>3</sup>		

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>3</sup>Approximate value for handset Data Folder, with default image size (see P.7-16) and quality (see P.7-17).

- Tip > Select storage media beforehand or each time you save an image file (see P.7-18 "Save to").
  - Saved video, melodies, S! Applications, etc. reduce still image memory.
  - To check memory status, see P.9-2.
  - Images captured at VGA (480 x 640), 1.2M (960 x 1280) or 2M (1200 x 1600) are saved as landscape images. (Images appear as portrait images when viewed on handset.)
  - Images captured at Wide L (1200 x 720) are saved as portrait images. (Images appear as landscape images when viewed on handset.)
  - Images captured at or above W 480 x H 640 dots are saved as landscape images. (Images captured with clamshell open appear as portrait images when viewed on handset.)

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>2</sup>Save VGA (480 x 640), 1.2M (960 x 1280), 2M (1200 x 1600) or Wide L (1200 x 720) size images.

## **Capturing Still Images**

Main Menu

Camera

# **1** Frame image on Display

- In Video Camera mode, press [27] (+ [37]) to switch to Photo Camera.
- Kev Assignments: see P.7-4
- Special Shooting Modes: see P.7-11
- Camera Settings: see P.7-15



Photo Camera

# 2 Press 🗉

Shutter clicks and the captured image appears on Display.

- When Auto Save is active, captured image is saved automatically and Viewfinder returns.
- To start over, press 🚟.
- To send image via S! Mail, press ☑ ( ♣ )
- Perform from Step 3 on P.14-8

# 3 Press ■ to save

Image is saved and Viewfinder returns for another shot.

- When confirmation for save location appears, select a location ⇒ Press ■
- To open saved images, see P.7-10 "Opening Still Images".

# 4 Press 🕤 to exit

#### **Cycloid Position**

- Activate mobile camera and rotate Display clockwise to capture images in Cycloid position.
  - Picture Size changes when Display is rotated to Cycloid position.
- All Picture Size options are available in Cycloid position as well. (For portrait images, Viewfinder is reduced to fit Display.)





#### Note Internal Camera Images

Your image appears on Display as a mirror image before/ after shutter is released; saved image appears reversed.

#### Tip ► When Captured Image is Unsaved

**Finished?** appears when closing mobile camera before returning to Viewfinder.

- Choose Yes and press to end. Handset returns to Standby.
- Choose *No* and press to return to captured image.

# **Still Image Functions**

# Before Image Capture

Press Detions to use the following functions:

Exposure		Adjust amount of light (see P.7-16)	
	Add Frame <sup>2</sup>	Add frames (see P.7-13)	
Modes <sup>1</sup>	Continuous Shoot <sup>3</sup>	Capture images sequentially (see P.7-12)	
Ž	Camera Effects <sup>2</sup>	Capture images with special effects (see P.7-14)	
Sca	n Barcode <sup>4</sup>	Scan barcodes (see P.12-19)	
Dat	a Folder	Access Data Folder files (see P.7-10)	
Pic	ture Size	Select image size (see P.7-16)	
Sce	ene <sup>1</sup>	Select a mode to suit lighting conditions or subject (see <b>P.7-17</b> )	
Pic	ture Quality	Select <i>High Quality</i> , <i>Fine</i> or <i>Normal</i> (see P.7-17)	
Sel	f-timer <sup>1</sup>	Set Self-timer (see P.7-11)	
	Display Icons	Hide indicators to frame image on full Display (see <b>P.7-15</b> )	
ings	Shutter Sound	Change shutter click sound (see P.7-15)	
Settings	Save Pictures to	Select handset or Memory Card (see P.7-18	
, ,	Auto Save	Select whether to save captured image automatically (see <b>P.7-18</b> )	

Internal Camera/ External Camera	Toggle between Internal Camera and External Camera (see <b>P.7-18</b> )	
Help	View a summary of key assignments (see P.7-5)	
Mobile Light <sup>1</sup>	Select mode (see P.7-16)	

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>1</sup>Available for External Camera.

Tip ► Open Options and use Multi Selector or Keypad to open/ set items.

# Before Saving

Press Options to use the following functions:

Save Pictures to	Select handset or Memory Card (see P.7-18)	
Data Folder	Access Data Folder; delete saved files	

 $<sup>^2</sup>$  Available when Picture Size is Standby (240 x 400), For Msg. (240 x 320) or For Msg. (120 x 160).

 $<sup>^3</sup>$  Available when Picture Size is VGA (480 x 640), Standby (240 x 400), For Msg. (240 x 320) or For Msg. (120 x 160).

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>4</sup>Available in portrait position only.

# Video

## **Video Camera Mode**

Record short video clips to send via S! Mail. Use Memory Cards to save long recordings (recording time varies by card capacity).

Image Size		W 176 x H 144 dots (QCIF) W 128 x H 96 dots (SubQCIF)	W 640 x H 480 dots (VGA) W 400 x H 240 dots (Wide) <sup>1</sup> W 320 x H 240 dots (QVGA) W 240 x H 176 dots (HQVGA) <sup>1</sup>	
Format		MPEG-4 or H.263 (.3gp) <sup>2</sup>	MPEG-4 (.3gp) <sup>2</sup>	MPEG-4 (.ASF) <sup>3</sup>
Save Location		Handset or Memory Card Data Folder (Videos)	Memory Card Data Folder (Videos)	Memory Card (SD VIDEO)
Vide Qual	-	High Quality/Fine/ Normal	High Quality	
S! Mail Attachment		ОК	N/A	
Recording Time (per shot) Message Video SD VIDEO		Approx. 60 seconds (Normal) Approx. 50 seconds (Fine) Approx. 30 seconds (High Quality)	_	
cordir (per s	Extended Video	30 minutes	_	
Ŗ	SD VIDEO			Capacity-based

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>1</sup>MPEG-4 (.3ap) only.

- **Tip** For best results, record within 1.5 metres, in good light.
  - Select storage media beforehand or each time you save a video file (see P.7-18 "Save to").
  - Saved still images, melodies, S! Applications, etc. reduce video memory.
  - To check memory status, see P.9-2.

# **Recording Video**

Make sure battery is adequately charged and there is enough free memory before recording video. When battery is low, Video Camera is not available. If battery runs low or memory becomes full while recording video, recording stops.



Press [ 1/2 ( + 1 1 1 1 )

Video Viewfinder appears.

· Omit this step if Video Camera is already active.

# Frame image on Display

- Key Assignments: see P.7-4
- Special Shooting Modes: see P.7-11
- Camera Settings: see P.7-15



Video Camera

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>2</sup>Default file names appear as *video001.3gp*, *video002.3gp*, etc.

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>3</sup>Default file names appear as *MOL001.ASF*, *MOL002.ASF*, etc.

# 3 Press

Recording begins after a tone.

To start over, press

# 4 To stop, press 🔳

Recording stops with a tone.

- Recording stops automatically when maximum recording time is reached or memory becomes full.
- When Auto Save is active, recorded video is saved automatically and Viewfinder returns.
- To play back, select **Preview** ⇒ Press ■
- Press 2. during playback to toggle Display Size.
- To start over, press 🚟.

# **5** To save, select *Save* and press

Video is saved and Viewfinder returns for another shot.

When confirmation for save location appears, select a location ⇒ Press ■

# 6 Press ⓑ to exit

#### Tip ► When Recorded Video is Unsaved

**Finished?** appears when closing mobile camera before returning to Viewfinder.

- Choose Yes and press to end. Handset returns to Standby.
- Choose *No* and press 
  to return to Menu.

# Video Recording Operations

# Before Recording

Save

Preview Save and Send Press Options to use the following functions:

Exposure		Adjust amount of light (see P.7-16)	
Display Size <sup>1</sup>		Change Viewfinder size (see P.7-16)	
Data Folder		Access Data Folder files (see P.7-10)	
Record Time/Size		Select a format based on recording time and image size (see <b>P.7-17</b> )	
Microphone		Activate to record sound (see P.7-17)	
Vid	eo Quality <sup>1</sup>	Select <i>High Quality</i> , <i>Fine</i> or <i>Normal</i> (see P.7-17)	
Sel	f-timer <sup>2</sup>	Set Self-timer (see P.7-11)	
S	Save Videos to <sup>3</sup>	Select handset or Memory Card (see P.7-18)	
Settings	Auto Save	Select whether to save recorded video automatically (see P.7-18)	
0)	Video Encode <sup>1</sup>	Select a video encoding format (see P.7-18	

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>1</sup>Available for SubQCIF, QCIF or Wide.

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>2</sup>Available for External Camera.

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>3</sup>Available when Record Time/Size is set to *For Message*.

	Toggle between Internal Camera and External Camera (see <b>P.7-18</b> )	
Help	View a summary of key assignments (see P.7-5)	
Mobile Light <sup>2</sup>	Select mode (see P.7-16)	

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>1</sup>Available for SubQCIF or QCIF.

Tip ▶ Open Options and use Multi Selector or Keypad to open/ set items.

# Before Saving

The following menu items appear after recording:

Save	Save video to handset or Memory Card (see P.7-9)	
Preview	Play video (see P.7-9)	
Save and Send*	Attach video to S! Mail (see P.7-15)	

Available when Record Time/Size is set to *For Message*. If *Send&Not Save* is set for Send File Settings (see P.14-38), *Multimedia* appears.

# Opening Images & Playing Video

To open files directly from Data Folder, see P.9-5.

# **Opening Still Images**

Main Menu ► Camera → Activate Photo Camera

Press ☑ Options

# 2 Select Data Folder and press 🔳

- Memory Status appears at the top.
- When Memory Card is inserted, select *Pictures* or *Camera Images* (DCIM) ▶ Press ■
- To open a created sub folder or a sub folder in DCIM, select it
  ▶ Press
  ■
- 3 Select a file and press
  - 🗾 To open other files, press 🔤 🖈 Select one 🖈 Press 🔳

# **Playing Video**

Main Menu ► Camera ► Activate Photo Camera

**1** Press **□** Options

# 2 Select Data Folder and press

- Memory Status appears at the top.
  - To switch between handset and Memory Card, press ☐ Options

    Select Change to Phone or Change to Memory Card →

    Press ☐
  - To open a created sub folder, select it ⇒ Press

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>2</sup>Available for External Camera.

# 3 Select a file and press ■

Video plays. Press ■ to pause/resume playback.

To open other files, press 

Select one 

Press 

Press ■

SD Video

Play QVGA or VGA size (.ASF) video

Main Menu ► Media Player ► Videos ► SD VIDEO

Select a file **▶** Press ■

To open other files, press Select one → Press

# **Special Shooting Modes**

#### Self-timer

Delay shutter release after Shutter Key is pressed to capture still images or record video.

- · Switch to External Camera to use Self-timer.
- Follow these steps before capturing an image (after Step 1 on P.7-6) or recording video (after Step 2 on P.7-8).
- Self-timer is Off by default.

**1** Press ☑ Options

**2** Select *Self-timer* and press 🔳

3 Select time and press

Viewfinder returns (\$\%, \$\% or \$\% appears).

To cancel, choose Off ⇒ Press

# 4 Frame image on Display and press 🔳

Tone sounds and countdown starts.

- After selected time elapses, shutter is released and captured image appears or video recording starts.
- To cancel Self-timer during countdown, press 🗹 Cancel .
  - Viewfinder returns. (Self-timer remains active.)

# **5** Saving Still Images

1 Press ■

Self-timer is cancelled and Viewfinder returns.

When confirmation for save location appears, select a location ▶ Press ■

#### Saving Video

To stop, press

**2** To save, select *Save* and press ■

Self-timer is cancelled and Viewfinder returns.

When confirmation for save location appears, select a location → Press ■

6 Press 🕤 to exit

When Captured Image/Recorded Video is Unsaved: see P.7-6 or P.7-9

Note Self-timer is not available when shooting speed for Continuous Shoot (see P.7-12) is Manual.

Tip ► Activate mobile camera and press (8 \*\*) to toggle Self-timer as follows:

10 seconds → 5 seconds → 2 seconds → Off

#### **Self-timer Details**

- To release shutter manually during countdown, press ■. Image is captured or video recording starts and Self-timer is cancelled.
- Incoming calls and Alarm interrupt countdown. (Self-timer remains active.)
- Available functions during countdown are Digital Zoom, Mobile Light and Exposure.

# **Continuous Shoot (Photo Camera)**

Capture a series of 4 or 9 separate images automatically with a single press of the Shutter Key. Select from three speed settings or choose the manual option to control the rate at which images are captured.

4 Pictures <sup>1</sup>	Capture four separate images with Index Image <sup>2</sup>
9 Pictures <sup>3</sup>	Capture nine separate images with Index Image <sup>2</sup>
Overlapped <sup>3</sup>	Capture five images to create a composite image

 $<sup>^{1}</sup>$ Available when Picture Size is VGA (480 x 640), Standby (240 x 400), For Msg. (240 x 320) or For Msg. (120 x 160). (Index image is not created for VGA.)

 Press for the first shot. Handset captures the rest automatically.

- In 4 Pictures or 9 Pictures mode, select shutter interval from three levels, or select *Manual* to release shutter manually.
- Switch to External Camera to use Continuous Shoot.
- Follow these steps before capturing an image (after Step 1 on P.7-6).

Press ☑ Options

**2** Select *Modes* and press 🔳

3 Select Continuous Shoot and press

4 Select from 4 Pictures to Overlapped and press

To cancel, choose Off ⇒ Press ■ (Omit the next steps.)

# 5 Select speed and press

Viewfinder returns with the corresponding indicator (see P.7-3).

- Manual is not available when Self-timer (see P.7-11) is active.
- Available shooting speed options vary by selected Picture Size.

# **6** Frame image on Display and press

The first frame is captured with subsequent frames captured at selected speed.

- For manual control (4 Pictures and 9 Pictures modes), repeat Step 6 for each frame.
- To stop before capturing all frames, press 🛂 Cancel.
  - To save captured images, skip ahead to Step 8.
  - To discard captured images, press . (Viewfinder returns with Continuous Shoot active.)

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>2</sup>Index Image consists of reduced images of each shot.

 $<sup>^3</sup>$ Available when Picture Size is Standby (240 x 400), For Msg. (240 x 320) or For Msg. (120 x 160).

# 7 Index Image or a composite image appears

- When Picture Size is VGA (480 x 640), the first captured image appears.
- Use 

  to toggle between frames and Index Image.

   The state of the s
- To save images individually, select a frame or Index Image and proceed to Step 8.
- 📕 To send image via S! Mail, press 🛂 ( 🖴 )
  - Perform from Step 3 on P.14-8



4 Pictures

# 🔏 To save, press 🔳

When confirmation for save location appears, select a location ⇒ Press ■

# **9** Saving All Images

# 1 Select All Pictures and press

Images are saved and Viewfinder returns with Continuous Shoot active.

#### Saving the Selected Image

# ■ Select Selected Picture and press

Image is saved and captured image returns with Continuous Shoot active.

- To save other images, use 🖭 to select one ▶ Press 🔳
  - Select Selected Picture ⇒ Press
  - Press to return to Viewfinder.

# 10 Press 1 to exit

When Captured Image is Unsaved: see P.7-6

Note In low light, shooting speed may slow down.

## Tip ► When Only Selected Image is Saved

**Finished?** appears when closing mobile camera before returning to Viewfinder.

- Choose Yes and press to end. Handset returns to Standby.
- Choose *No* and press to return to captured image.

# Adding Frames (Photo Camera)

- In addition to Preset Frames, use transparent PNG files (40 KB or smaller) obtained via the Internet, S! Mail, etc.
- Available when Picture Size is Standby (240 x 400), For Msg. (240 x 320) or For Msg. (120 x 160).
- · Switch to External Camera to add frames.
- Follow these steps before capturing an image (after Step 1 on **P.7-6**); after Viewfinder returns, complete image capture.

# **1** Press □ Options

**2** Select *Modes* and press **■** 

3 Select Add Frame and press ■

#### 4 Preset Frames

- Select Preset Frames and press ■
- Select a frame and press
  - To check frames, select one and press 
    View
  - Press to return.

#### **Original Frames**

- Select Data Folder and press
  - Some images may not be used as frames.
- Select a frame and press
  - To check frames, select one → Press ☑ View
  - Press to return.
- 3 Press ■

#### Cancelling

- Choose Off and press
- **Tip** ► In Continuous Shoot, frame is added to each image.

# Camera Effects (Photo Camera)

Capture images with special effects.

- Available when Picture Size is Standby (240 x 400), For Msg. (240 x 320) or For Msg. (120 x 160).
- Switch to External Camera to use Camera Effects.
- Follow these steps before capturing an image (after Step 1 on P.7-6); after Viewfinder returns, complete image capture.
- **1** Press □ Options
- 2 Select *Modes* and press ■
- 3 Select Camera Effects and press ■
- 4 Select an effect and press
  - To check effects, press ☑ View.
    - Press to return.
  - To cancel, choose Off ⇒ Press

# Sending Images

# Still Images

Capture and send images as S! Mail attachments. To attach images in Data Folder, see **P.9-11**.

# 1 Capture an image

- Perform Steps 1 2 on P.7-6
- To attach Continuous Shoot images, after Step 7 on P.7-13, use to select a frame or Index Image.
- **2** Press ഈ (⋈→)

Image is saved to Data Folder and Mail Composition window opens with image attached.

- To attach images without saving to Data Folder, see P.14-38 "Send File Settings".
- When confirmation for save location appears, select a location ⇒ Press ■
- 3 Complete other fields and send S! Mail (perform from Step 3 on P.14-8)
  - Tip Make sure recipient's handset is attachment-compatible. For information about Mail service and compatibility with other handset models, contact SoftBank Customer Centre, General Information (see P.20-28).

# Video Clips

Send recorded video clips via S! Mail.

- For details of attachable files, see the table on P.7-8.
- To attach video files saved in Data Folder, see P.9-11.

# Record video (perform Steps 1 - 4 on P.7-8 - 7-9)

# Select Save and Send and press

Video is saved to Data Folder and Mail Composition window opens with the video file attached.

- To attach video without saving to Data Folder, see P.14-38 "Send File Settings".
  - If Send&Not Save is set for Send File Settings (see P.14-38), Multimedia appears instead of Save and Send.
- When confirmation for save location appears, select a location 

  ◆ Press 

  ■

# **?** Complete other fields and send S! Mail (perform from Step 3 on P.14-8)

- Note > Send video clips to S! Mail- or VGS-compatible SoftBank handsets
  - Only MPEG-4 compatible SoftBank handsets support video files recorded on 911SH.
- Tip For information about Mail service and compatibility with other handset models, contact SoftBank Customer Centre, General Information (see P.20-28).

# Camera Settings

- Available options vary by selected image capture mode.
- Shortcut keys are assigned to some functions (see P.7-4 "Function Shortcuts").
- Follow these steps before capturing an image (after Step 1 on P.7-6) or recording video (after Step 2 on P.7-8); after Viewfinder returns, complete image capture/recording.





Default Pattern 1

Press □ Options → Select Settings → Press □ → Select Shutter Sound → Press ■ → Select a pattern ▶ Press

- To check sound, select a pattern and press 🖾 Play.
- Volume is fixed
- Shutter click sound for Continuous Shoot is unique and fixed.

Mobile Light	Select mode		
Photo Camera	O <sup>1</sup>	Video Camera	○1, 2

<sup>1</sup>Available for External Camera. <sup>2</sup>Low Light is not available.

Default Off Press 

Options 

Select Mobile Light 

Press 

■

- Select a mode ⇒ Press
- Setting returns to default after exiting mobile camera.

On	Mobile Light activates (and brightens for still image capture)	
Automatic	Mobile Light activates in low light (and brightens for still image capture)	
Low Light	Mobile Light activates and brightness is constant	
Off	Mobile Light remains off	

- Note > Do not use Mobile Light near people's faces or look into the light yourself.
  - Even when On or Automatic is selected, Mobile Light may not illuminate if battery is low.

Change Viewfinder size for video Photo Camera × Video Camera  $\bigcap$ 

> \*Available for SubQCIF, QCIF or Wide. Default Original Size

Press 

Options 

Select Display Size 

Press 

Press 

■

Select Original Size or Enlarge → Press

**Tip** When *Original Size* is set for Wide (400 x 240), Viewfinder appears smaller than the actual size. (Recorded video plays at W 400 x H 240 dots.)

Image Settings			
Exposure	Adjust brightne	ess for still image	s and video
Photo Camera	0	Video Camera	0
Press ☑ Options → Select Exposure → Press ■ → Use ⊶ to adjust level			

• Exposure setting returns to default upon exiting Photo Camera/ Video Camera or switching between Internal Camera and External Camera (see P.7-18).

	Gelect still image size		
Photo Camera	0	Video Camera	×

Pieturo Sizo Soloet etill imago cizo

Default Portrait position: VGA (480 x 640), Cycloid position: Wide S (400 x 240)

Press ☑ Options → Select Picture Size → Press ■ → Select a size (see P.7-5) ▶ Press ■

- Select For Msg. (240 x 320) or For Msg. (120 x 160) for Internal Camera.
- To change video image size, see P.7-17 "Record Time/Size".

Picture/Video Quality	Select image	or video quality	
Photo Camera	0	○ Video Camera ○*	
*Available when Record Time/Size is SubQCIF or QCIF			

\*Available when Record Time/Size is SubQCIF or QCIF.

Default Normal (Photo Camera), Fine (Video Camera)

Press ☑ Options → Select Picture Quality or Video Quality → Press ■ → Select quality → Press ■

 The image quality increases as follows: Normal → Fine → High Quality. Saving higher quality images/video requires more space in memory.

	Select a mode according to lighting or subject		ting or subject
Photo Camera	O*	Video Camera	×

\*Available for External Camera.

Default Automatic

Press ☑ Options → Select Scene → Press ■ → Select a mode → Press ■

 Scene setting returns to default upon exiting Photo Camera/ Video Camera or switching between Internal Camera and External Camera (see P.7-18).

Automatic	Automatic adjustment	
Night	Use in low light conditions	
Sports	Best suited for action sports or fast-moving subjects	
Text	Most suitable for high contrast black and white subjects	

Microphone Record sound together with video

Photo Camera X Video Camera

<u>Default</u>On

Press ☑ Options → Select Microphone → Press ■ → Choose On or Off → Press ■

Record Time Size Select *For Message* to record short video (up to 295 KB) to send via S! Mail For longer recording, select *Extended Video* 

Photo Camera	×	Video Camera	0

Default For Message, QCIF (176 x 144)

Press Dotions → Select Record Time/Size → Press 
→ Select For Message, Extended Video or SD VIDEO → Press → Select an option → Press →

- VGA (640 x 480) is available in portrait position only.
- For Message

QCIF	W 176 x H 144 dots
(176 x 144)	Format: MPEG-4 or H.263 (.3gp)
SubQCIF	W 128 x H 96 dots
(128 x 96)	Format: MPEG-4 or H.263 (.3gp)

■ Extended Video

VGA	W 640 x H 480 dots	
(640 x 480)	Format: MPEG-4 (.3gp)	
Wide	W 400 x H 240 dots	
(400 x 240)	Format: MPEG-4 (.3gp)	
QVGA	W 320 x H 240 dots	
(320 x 240)	Format: MPEG-4 (.3gp)	
HQVGA	W 240 x H 176 dots	
(240 x 176)	Format: MPEG-4 (.3gp)	
QCIF	W 176 x H 144 dots	
(176 x 144)	Format: MPEG-4 or H.263 (.3gp)	
SubQCIF	W 128 x H 96 dots	
(128 x 96)	Format: MPEG-4 or H.263 (.3gp)	

■ SD VIDEO

VGA	W 640 x H 480 dots
(640 x 480)	Format: MPEG-4 (.ASF)
QVGA	W 320 x H 240 dots
(320 x 240)	Format: MPEG-4 (.ASF)

Select a video encoding format Photo Camera X Video Camera  $\bigcirc$ 

> \*Available when Record Time/Size is SubQCIF or QCIF. Default MPEG4

> > Video Camera

Press ☐ Options → Select Settings → Press ☐ → Select Video Encode → Press ■ → Select H.263 or MPEG4 ⇒ Press ■

# Additional Settings

Photo Camera

Switch between Internal Camera and External Camera

\*Available when Record Time/Size is SubQCIF or QCIF. Default External Camera

Press 

Options 

Select Internal Camera or External Camera Press

• Setting returns to default after exiting mobile camera.

	Select a save location for images or video		
Photo Camera	0	Video Camera	O*

\*Available when Record Time/Size is set to *For Message*. Default Phone Memory (handset)

Press 

Options 

Select Settings 

Press 

Press 

→ Select Save Pictures to or Save Videos to 

◆ Press Select a location or Ask Each Time → Press

• For Ask Each Time, confirmation appears each time you save an image or video (with Record Time/Size set to For Message).

Camera Mode/Size	Save Location
Photo Camera (120 x 160 or 240 x 320) Video Camera	Phone Memory (handset) Memory Card
Photo Camera (480 x 640 or larger)	Phone Memory (handset) SD (Pictures) (Memory Card) SD (DCIM) (Memory Card)

- Note Ask Each Time is not available when Auto Save (see below) is active.
  - To save to Memory Card, insert a card before saving image or recording video.

Select whether to save captured images or recorded video automatically Photo Camera Video Camera

Default Off

Press 

Options 

Select Settings 

Press 

Select Auto Save → Press ■ → Choose On or Off → Press ■

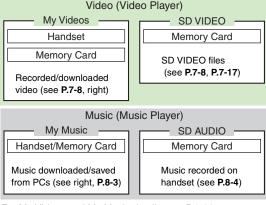
Auto Save is not available when Ask Each Time is set for Save Pictures to or Save Videos to (see above).

**Media Player** 

8

# **Media Player Basics**

Use Media Player to record and listen to music (Music Player) or play video (Video Player). Save video/music files to handset or Memory Card (including SD VIDEO and SD AUDIO). To open files, specify the location first.



- For My Videos and My Music details, see P.8-20.
- Playback stops when battery is low. Charge battery and resume from where it stopped (see Step 1 on P.8-10 or P.8-13).
- Consume media as it downloads (Streaming: see P.15-13).

#### Incoming Calls/Mail during Playback

- Playback stops for incoming calls or Alarm.
- When playback stops while streaming, the URL is saved to History (see P.15-13).
- A notification appears for incoming mail without interrupting playback.

# **Downloading Music/Video**

Open music/video-related links directly from Media Player to download music (Chaku-Uta®) and video via the Internet.

- Read information (price, expiry date, etc.) on the source site.
- Use Music Search (see P.8-3) to search by title, artist, etc.

Main Menu Media Player

**1** Select *Music* or *Videos* and press ■

2 Select *Download Music* or *Download Videos* and press ■

Handset connects to the Internet and download page appears.

· Follow the links to download music/video.

#### **Music Search**

■ Follow these steps to access Yahoo! Keitai Music Search site.

In Step 1 on P.8-2, select *Music* → Press ■ → Select *Music Search* → Press ■

• Fill in fields or follow links to search for/download music.

# **Downloading Content Keys**

Content Keys are required to use some downloaded files.

- To download Keys, open All Music/All Videos or Playlist (see Step 2 on P.8-10/Step 3 on P.8-13) then follow these steps.
- **1** Select a file and press Select a file with \*\*.

# **2** Choose *Yes* and press ■

Handset connects to the Internet and download page appears.

Follow onscreen instructions.

# **Saving Music Files from PCs**

Save music files onto Memory Cards from CDs, etc. using PCs or other devices to play them on handset Music Player.

#### **Precautions for Handling Music Files on PCs**

#### Respect copyrights.

- Comply with copyright and other intellectual property laws when using music saved on Memory Cards.
- Copyright laws limit duplicated material to private use only.
- Converted CD files may not be attachable to S! Mail.
- Play SD-Audio standard compliant music files. (These files cannot be used as ringtones.)
- Handset supports Secure AAC and AAC files compliant with the SD-Audio standard.
- For AAC files, see "Precautions for Handling AAC Files" on P.8-4.

#### Save music to the specified directory.

- Save music to either of the following folders on Memory Card via Mass Storage (see P.11-14), Memory Card reader/writer or other compatible devices.
- PRIVATE/MYFOLDER/My Items/Music
- PRIVATE/MYFOLDER/My Items/Sounds & Ringtones

#### Details

■ For more about saving music files from PCs, see "Utility Software Starter Guide" on Utility Software CD-ROM.

# **Precautions for Handling AAC Files**

# Use software supporting AAC conversion.

- Use software such as iTunes to convert music to AAC format.
- iTunes is an example only. SoftBank does not guarantee compatibility with any software.
- For software usage and specifications, see the provider's website, etc.

iTunes is a registered trademark of Apple Computer, Inc. registered in the United States and other countries.

# Supported bit rate (see right) and sampling frequency (see P.8-6) are as follows.

Bit Rate (kbps)	Rate (kbps) 16 <sup>*1</sup> , 24 <sup>*1</sup> , 32, 48, 64, 96 <sup>*2</sup> , 128 <sup>*2</sup>	
Sampling Frequency (Hz)	16000, 22050, 24000, 32000, 44100, 48000	

<sup>\*1</sup> Monaural only.

Note Titles and artist names for AAC files created using iTunes, etc. do not appear on handset.

# **Recording Music**

Connect handset to audio sources supporting optical output to record music onto Memory Cards.

- 911SH encryption technology complies with Secure Digital Music Initiative (SDMI) for copyright protection. This technology prevents unauthorised copying or playback through data encryption and authentication.
- Analogue recording is not supported.

# Required Cables for Recording Music

- Optical Conversion Cable (optional accessory)
- Optical digital connecting cable (sold separately)

# Recording Time

Estimated Recording Time for Memory Card with no Files or Recordings:

Card Capacity	Bit Rate/Recording Time	
	96 kbps	128 kbps
64 MB	80 minutes	60 minutes

Bit rate measures audio compression rate or the quality of audio data recorded per second. Sound quality improves at higher rates.

<sup>\*2</sup> Stereo only.

#### **Precautions before Recording**

#### Charge battery while recording.

- Recording stops when battery level falls too low. Always use AC Charger when recording to ensure a stable power supply.
- When battery is low. Music Player will not record. If battery runs low while recording, recording stops.
- Music is recorded onto Memory Card (SD AUDIO folder).

To start Music Player, insert a Memory Card formatted for 911SH (see P.9-20, P.9-21).

Activate Offline Mode to prevent disruptions (see Steps 1 - 2 on P.8-7).

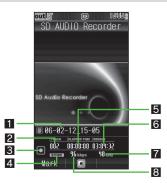
Incoming communications may disrupt recording or damage outputs of audio sources. (To place calls or send mail, stop recording and cancel Offline Mode.)

Do not remove Memory Card while recording.

Doing so may damage the card or result in lost files.

- Note Copyright laws limit duplicated material to private use only, and prohibit unauthorised reproduction/other use.
  - SoftBank is not liable for any damages resulting from accidental loss or alteration of recorded content.
  - Recorded content cannot be copied.

#### **Recording Window Indicators**



- Title
- 2 Track Number
- **Status**

■: Recording, ■: Stopped

4 Synch Recording (see P.8-8)

- Synch Recording On
- Elapsed Time
- 6 Remaining Recording Time
  - · Reduces after each recording
- Sampling Frequency (see P.8-6)
- Bit Rate (see P.8-8)

#### Track Bookmarks

Add Bookmarks to tracks to use Repeat or Random Play. Track Bookmarks are created when track marks or periods of silence are detected between tracks.

- Recording from CD/MD players, etc. with Synch Recording On creates Track Bookmarks from source media track marks.
- When Synch Recording is Off, Track Bookmarks are created at periods of silence between tracks; if Music Player does not detect silence, the tracks are saved as a single file.
- Brief sound dropouts occur when Track Bookmarks are created.
- Track Bookmarks may not be created automatically depending on the connected audio source. In this case, divide music into tracks manually (see Step 4 on P.8-8).

Note Recording may result in silence or a single music file with a low volume level if the music consists of long periods of silence or sustained low volume level.

# Sampling Frequency

Sampling frequency is the number of times an audio signal is measured (sampled) per second, expressed in kilohertz (kHz). Similar to bit rate, higher rates translate into better sound quality. Sampling frequency is automatically set to 32 kHz, 44.1 kHz or 48 kHz according to the recording method or audio source.

When recording from DVD players, cancel DTS.

Note Recording results may not be satisfactory depending on the signal format.

# **Connecting to Audio Sources**

# Precautions

Connect Optical Conversion Cable with an optical digital connecting cable, then to handset gently. Disconnect Optical Conversion Cable gently by holding the plug and handset.

 Do not use excessive force when connecting/disconnecting cables; doing so may damage cable, Mini Plug or Headphone/ Optical Digital Line-In Port.

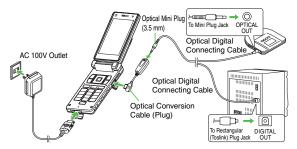
#### Use specified Optical Conversion Cable only.

 Non-specified cables may not function properly and damage may result.

#### **Cable Connections**

Use Optical Digital Audio Toslink-Mini or Mini-Mini Cables (sold separately) with Optical Conversion Cable to connect audio sources to handset.

- Use Optical Conversion Cable only for recording music.
- Optical Conversion Cable is designed exclusively for 911SH and other specified SoftBank handsets. Do not use for other devices to prevent damage or malfunction.



## Recording

- Most operations are described with Synch Recording active.
- Read the precautions on P.8-5 before recording.
- To listen to music while recording, adjust Monitor Level before recording (see P.8-8).
- Prepare an audio source and pause playback at the beginning of music.

Main Menu Media

▶ Media Player ⇒ Music

# **1** Select *SD AUDIO Recorder* and press

- Receive calls during recording? appears.
  To prevent disruption by calls, choose No and press in Step 2 to activate Offline Mode (see P.2-18).
- If Offline Mode is already active, skip ahead to Step 3 on P.8-8.
- SD AUDIO Recorder can only be selected when a Memory Card is inserted.

# **2** Choose *No* and press

Recording window opens.

- Customise settings before recording (see P.8-8 "Recording Settings").
- To accept incoming calls, mail, etc. while recording, choose *Yes* ⇒ Press ■



8

# ? Press

Handset is ready for Synch Recording (see right).

• When Synch Recording is Off, recording starts right away.

# Start playback

Recording starts automatically when handset detects sound.

- When Synch Recording is *Off* and there is silence between tracks, Track Bookmark (see P.8-6) is created automatically.
  - To create Track Bookmarks (see P.8-6) manually, press 🖾 🏻 🕍 while recording.

## To stop recording, stop playback on the audio source

Recording pauses, then stops after 15 seconds.

- If **No** was chosen then was pressed in Step 2 on **P.8-7**, Offline Mode is cancelled after recording ends.
- When Synch Recording is *Off*, press to stop recording.

- Note 
   Do not remove Memory Card or battery while recording. Doing so may damage the card or result in lost information.
  - Do not touch cables or plugs while recording. May cause noise or skipping.
  - When recording from PCs or BS/CS digital tuners, recording level may decrease.

- Tip Alarm is disabled while recording, and starts after Music Player stops/closes.
  - · Recorded music is saved by date and time by default.

# **Recording Settings**

Follow these steps after Step 2 on P.8-7.

Set volume level to listen to music while recordina

Default Level 3

Press ☐ Options → Select Monitor Level → Press ☐

⇒ Use 

• to adjust level 

⇒ Press

•

Select whether to start recording automatically when playback starts on audio sources

Default On

Press 

Options 

Select Synch Recording 

Press 

Press 

■

- Choose On (start) or Off ⇒ Press
- When recording from a CD without silence between tracks with Synch Recording Off, Track Bookmark is not created automatically.

Select a bit rate (see P.8-4 "Recording Time")

Default Normal (96 kbps)

Press 

Options 

Select Bit Rate 

Press 

→ Select Normal (96 kbps) or High-quality (128 kbps) ▶ Press

• Sound quality is better at 128 kbps. However, recording time shortens as more space is required in memory.

Select sensitivity to detect silence for creating Track Bookmarks

Default-41dB

Press 

Options 

Select Auto Mark Level 

Press 

□

- Select -41dB or -59dB → Press
- Select -59dB for soft music to prevent unintended Track Bookmark creation.

# Playing Music

Play music on handset/Memory Card. Use Headphones (with Microphone), etc. to listen to sound without bothering others.

## Precautions before Playing Music/Video

- Music Player is not compatible with some recording/playback formats. Music may not play depending on the Memory Card status.
- Grasp the plug when connecting or disconnecting Headphones. Do not bend the plug to avoid damaging the cord or Headphone Port.
- Use only the specified accessories (Headphones, etc.). Other devices may not function properly and cause damage to Headphone Port.
- When battery is low, Music Player will not play. If battery runs low during playback, Music Player shuts off.

- Tip To activate/cancel Manner mode during playback, press for 1+ seconds.
  - In Manner mode, sound is audible from Headphones.
  - To answer calls during playback with Headphones, etc., press Call Button for 1+ seconds.
  - Turn down the volume if distortion is noticeable in Speaker sound.
  - · As saved files increase, files, My Music and Playlists may take longer to open.

# **Playback Window Indicators**



- Playback in Progress
- 2 Playlist Name
- 3 Title
  - Titles also appear on External Display during playback.

#### 4 Artist Name

- No Artist Name appears if not available.
- Artist names also appear on External Display during playback.
- Track Number
- 6 Status
- ☐: Playing, ☐: Paused, ☐: Fast Forwarding, ☐: Fast Rewinding ☐ Playback Pattern (see P.8-12)
  - □1: Repeat, □: Repeat All, □: Random
  - Indicator does not appear for Normal.
- **8** Elapsed Time
- 9 Volume

#### Information Link

 appears when linked information is accessible via WEB Link Connection (see P.8-11 "Accessing Linked Information").

#### Sound Effects (see P.8-12)

□□: Bass, (<□): Surround, (<□): Surround Bass (Loud): Loud-Wide, Karaoke: Karaoke, Rock: Rock

Hall: Hall, HipHop: Hiphop

• Indicator does not appear for Normal.

#### **Playback**

Main Menu ► Media Player → Music

# **1** Select *My Music* or *SD AUDIO* and press ■

- For *My Music*, use •• to select *Music*Folder or Ring Songs-Tones.
- To play the last played file from where it stopped, select Last Played Music ⇒ Press ■



Mv Music

# 2 Select *All Music* or a Playlist and press ■

Three Playlists (7° V1931-1 to 7° V1931-3) are saved by default.

- To search files, press ☑ Options → Select Search → Press
   → Enter search text → Press ■
- When no matching text is found, text entry window returns. Change text and try again.
- To sort files, press ☑ Options → Select Sort → Press → Select a sort option → Press
  - Sort is available for files in All Music.

# Select a file and press

Playback window opens and playback starts.

- Playback stops after the last file when Playback Pattern is set to Normal (see P.8-12).
- **Tip** Use LCD Remote/Mic with Headphones (optional accessory) to remote control Music Player activated via Music menu.

# Playback Operations (Music/Video)

	Press •□	
Replay	Press repeatedly to play previous files. <sup>1</sup>	
Skip Forward	Press •2	
Fast Forward	Press and hold <a> Press</a> And hold <a> Press</a> Release for playback.	
Fast Rewind	Press and hold <a> Release</a> for playback.	
Pause	Press ■ Press again to resume playback.	
Volume Control <sup>3</sup>	Press ¹¹/◀ (up) or ♀/► (down)	
Mute	Press ♀ (Long Press) Press ₺ to play sound.	
Open Help	Press Options → Select  Help → Press ■	

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>1</sup>In Random Play, • only replays the current file.

#### **Opening File Properties**

- While playing or paused, press ☐ Options → Select Details 

  ◆ Press 

  ■
  - Press 🖟 to scroll down.
    - Press to return.

#### **Accessing Linked Information**

- While playing or paused, press 
  ☐ Options → Select Access WEB Link or WEB Link Connection → Press ■
  - Choose Yes → Press

  - Accessing linked information activates Yahoo! Keitai (@ appears) and may incur transmission fees.
  - Press to disconnect.

Playback pauses for Alarm, then resumes automatically. Note

- Tip ▶ Press 🕪 to create mail messages and use Phone Book, etc. during playback; however, some functions are not available.
  - Stop music? appears when [6] is pressed in Standby. Choose *Yes* or *No* and press ■.

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>2</sup>Not available for the last file when Playback Pattern is set to Normal

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>3</sup>Volume level remains as set until changed.

# **Playback Settings**

Play back files in surround sound; increase bass or dynamic range

Default Normal

Main Menu ► Media Player → Music → Settings

Select Sound Effects → Press ■ → Select an effect ▶ Press

Normal	No sound effects	
Bass	Boosts bass frequencies	
Surround	Adds surround effect	
Surround Bass	Adds surround effect with enhanced bass	
Loud-Wide	Boosts all frequencies, adding a broadening effect	
Karaoke	Adds softening effect ideal for vocals	
Rock	Adds low to high frequencies, enhancing balance	
Hall	Boosts high frequencies, enhancing reverberation	
Hiphop	Boosts bass to midrange, enhancing resonance	

Play all or Playlist files repeatedly or randomly

Default Normal

Main Menu ► Media Player → Music → Settings

Select Playback Pattern → Press ■ → Select a pattern **▶** Press ■

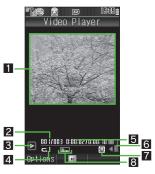
Normal Play in order until the last file ends		
Repeat	Repeat one file	
Repeat All	Repeat all files	
Random	Play all files randomly	

# **Playing Video**

Play video files recorded with mobile camera or obtained via the Internet, S! Mail, etc.

- Use Headphones, etc. to listen to sound without bothering others.
- Read the precautions on P.8-9 beforehand.

# **Playback Window Indicators**



1 Video Image/Subtitles

2 Clip Number

3 Status

□: Playing, □: Paused, □: Advancing Frame

□: Fast Forwarding, □: Fast Rewinding

4 Playback Pattern (see P.8-14)

• Indicators are the same as those for Music Player (see P.8-10).

#### **5** Elapsed Time

• To specify start point, see P.8-14 "Time Search".

#### 6 Volume

#### Information Link

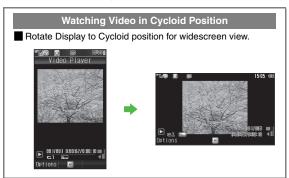
- • 

   appears when linked information is accessible via Access
   WEB Link (see P.8-11 "Accessing Linked Information").
- To disable linked information, see P.8-15 "Web Link Settings".

#### Sound Effects (see P.8-15)

: Bass. ( B): Surround. ( Surround Bass

Indicator does not appear for Normal.



■ qiT Press 2.4 during playback to toggle Display Size (see P.8-15).

# **Playback**

Play video on Video Player.

- To change playback settings, see P.8-14.
- To add subtitles, see P.8-17.
- To export video to TVs or other display devices, see P.10-14 "Viewing Images on External Devices".

Main Menu ► Media Player → Videos

# Select My Videos or SD VIDEO and press

- For SD VIDEO, skip ahead to Step 4 on P.8-14.
- To play the last played file from where it stopped, select *Last* Plaved Video ⇒ Press ■

# Select Phone Memory or Memory Card and press

# Select All Videos or a Playlist and press ■

- To search files, press ☑ Options 🖈 Select **Search** → Press ■ → Enter search text 

  ◆ Press
- When no matching text is found, text entry window returns. Change text and try again.
- To sort files, press ☑ Options 🖈 Select **Sort** → Press ■ → Select a sort option ▶ Press ■
  - Sort is available for files in All Videos.



All Videos

8

# ✓ Select a file and press

Playback window opens and playback starts.

- Playback stops after the last file when Playback Pattern is set to Normal (see right).
- To access linked information, see P.8-11.

# Playback Operations (Video Only)

For basic operations, see **P.8-11** "Playback Operations (Music/Video)".

Change Settings	Press   Options  Select Settings  Press  See right	
Edit	See <b>P.8-15</b>	
Frame Advance	While paused, press • (Long Press)	
Toggle Display Size	Press 2 or  (see <b>P.8-15</b> )	

#### **Video with Linked Information**

After playing video (with **Q**) Internet connection confirmation appears.

To access linked information, choose Yes ▶ Press ■

 Confirmation does not appear when Web Link Settings (see P.8-15) is Off.

#### **Time Search**

Specify start point while playing or paused.

Press ☑ Options → Select Time Search → Press ■

→ Enter time → Press ■

**Tip** ► • Video recorded on other devices may appear rotated.

 Out of Video Playback window, Media Player shuts down after five minutes of inactivity.

# **Playback Settings**

Available for files in My Videos only.

Play all or Playlist files repeatedly or randomly

Main Menu ► Media Player ► Videos ► Settings

Select Playback Pattern → Press ■ → Select a pattern → Press ■

Normal Play in order until the last file ends		
Repeat one file		
Repeat All Repeat all files		
Random	Play all files randomly	

Backlight Select a Backlight status for playback

Default Always On

Default Normal

Main Menu ► Media Player → Videos → Settings

Select Backlight → Press ■ → Select a pattern → Press ■

Always On	Backlight remains on during playback
Always Off	Backlight remains off during playback
Normal Settings	Applies Display Backlight setting (see P.10-13)

Default Enlarge

Main Menu ► Media Player → Videos → Settings

Select Display Size → Press ■ → Select Normal, Enlarge, Full Screen, Wide Screen or Cinema Screen ▶ Press

- · Some Display sizes are not selectable.
- Alternatively, press 2. or glavback to toggle Display Size as follows: Full Screen (no indicators) → Full Screen (with indicators) → Wide Screen (no indicators) → Wide Screen (with indicators) → Cinema Screen (no indicators) → Cinema Screen (with indicators) → Normal → Enlarge
  - Press 2. or or naused Full Screen, Wide Screen or Cinema Screen to show or hide indicators.

Play back files in surround sound; increase bass or dynamic range through Headphones

Default Normal

Main Menu

Select Sound Effects → Press ■ → Select Normal. Bass, Surround or Surround Bass → Press ■

• For descriptions of each effect, see P.8-12.

Select whether to show linked information

Default On

Main Menu ► Media Player → Videos → Settings

Select Web Link Settings 

→ Press 

→ Choose On (show) or Off → Press ■

# **Editing Video**

HQVGA (W 240 x H 176 dots) or larger video cannot be edited.

Select Two Points	Save portion between two points as a new file	
Crop	Delete Before	Save portion after selected point as a new file
	Delete After	Save portion before selected point as a new file
Subtitle		Add subtitle text to video

Note >

- . Some files may not be edited.
  - Edited video may not play properly if Memory Card is not formatted for 911SH
  - To save to Memory Card, a maximum of 1.2 MB of free memory is required in addition to the file size.

8

# **Clipping Portions between Two Points**

Follow these steps after Step 4 on P.8-14.

- **1** While playing or paused, press **□ Options**
- 2 Select Edit and press ■
- **3** Choose *Yes* and press
  - Incoming transmissions are blocked during editing.
- Select Crop and press
- **5** Select Select Two Points and press Video plays.
  - Press 
    to pause/start video.
- 6 Press Start at the start point
  The start point is specified and playback resumes.
- 7 Press End at the end point
  The portion is saved and playback starts.

Note Portions over 30 minutes may not be saved.

# **Cropping Video Clips**

Delete the portion before or after the selected point to save the rest as a new file.

Follow these steps after Step 4 on P.8-14.

- **1** While playing or paused, press ☑ Options
- 2 Select Edit and press
- 3 Choose Yes and press
  - Incoming transmissions are blocked during editing.
- 4 Select Crop and press ■
- **5** Select *Delete Before* or *Delete After* and press video plays.
- To adjust start point, press 
  to start/pause video.
  - The portion before or after the selected point will be deleted.
     To cancel, press [25].
- 6 Press © Cut at approximate start point
  The remaining portion is saved and playback starts.

Note Portions over 30 minutes may not be saved.

#### **Adding Subtitles**

Set subtitles to appear while playing video. Select timing, add effects, etc.

# **Entering Text**

After entry, set timing and time period for subtitles.

- Save up to ten subtitles (48 single-byte alphanumerics each).
- Follow these steps after Step 4 on P.8-14.
- While playing or paused, press <a> □</a> Options
- Select *Edit* and press
- Choose Yes and press
  - · Incoming transmissions are blocked during editing.
- Select Edit Subtitle and press
- Select <empty> and press
- Enter text and press
  - Press 
    to pause/play video.
- Press ☑ Start at the start point

# Press End at the end point

Edit Subtitle menu opens.

- If video has ended before pressing End . start over from Step 7.
- To edit text, select Edit Text → Press ⇒ Edit text ⇒ Press ■
- **Q** Change display settings (see P.8-18) and add effects (see P.8-19)



· To complete without changing display settings or adding effects, proceed to Step 10.

# 10 After completing all the settings, press 🗹 I

- To add more, repeat Steps 5 10.
  - To edit saved subtitles, select one → Press → Select Edit Text → Press ■ → Edit → Press ■ → Perform from Step 9
  - To delete saved subtitles, select one → Press 🖾 Options →
- Press Y7 Save

# Select Overwrite or Create New and press

• Playback starts. (Subtitles appear only in Normal size.)

8

# **Display Settings**

Follow these steps in Step 9 on P.8-17.

Duratio

Set timing and time period for subtitles

Select *Duration* → Press ■ → Press ☑ Start at the start point → Press ☑ End at the end point

When finished, perform from Step 10 on P.8-17.

Display Position

Set position for subtitles to appear

Select Advanced → Press ■ → Select Display

Position → Press ■ → Use → to select a position

→ Press ■

When finished, press → Perform from Step 10 on P.8-17

Font Siz

Change font size of subtitles

Default Large (20 x 20)

Select Advanced → Press ■ → Select Font Size → Press ■ → Select Large(20x20) or Small(12x12) → Press ■

When finished, press ഈ → Perform from Step 10 on P.8-17

Scrolling

Select a direction and visual effect for subtitle scroll

Default Direction: Stop, Effect: Frame In

#### **Scroll Direction**

Select Advanced → Press ■ → Select Scrolling → Press ■ → Select Direction → Press ■ → Select Stop, Left to Right or Right to Left → Press ■

When finished, press ♠ Press ♠ Perform from Step 10 on **P.8-17** 

#### **Scroll Effects**

Select Advanced → Press ■ → Select Scrolling → Press ■ → Select Effect → Press ■ → Select an effect → Press ■

Frame In	Subtitle comes in from an end, then disappears in the centre	
Frame Out	Subtitle appears in the centre and scrolls out	
Rolling	Subtitle scrolls from end to end	

When finished, press ₩ → Press ₩ → Perform from Step 10 on **P.8-17** 

### **On-Screen Time**

Select Advanced → Press ■ → Select Scrolling → Press ■ → Select On-Screen Time → Press ■ → Enter time → Press ■

When finished, press ➡ Press ➡ Perform from Step 10 on **P.8-17** 

Background

Select from seven background colours

Default Black

Select Advanced → Press ■ → Select Background Colour → Press ■ → Select a colour → Press ■

When finished, press 
Perform from Step 10 on P.8-17

#### **Adding Text Effects**

- Up to two effects can be applied per entry.
- Follow these steps in Step 9 on P.8-17.

Font Colou

Change font colours

Default White

#### **Changing Colour of Entire Text**

Select Advanced → Press ■ → Select Font Colour
→ Press ■ → Select A// → Press ■ → Select a

colour **▶** Press **■** 

When finished, press 
Perform from Step 10 on P.8-17

#### **Changing Colour of Portion**

Select Advanced → Press ■ → Select Font Colour → Press ■ → Select Select Text → Press ■ →

Use № to select the first character of text ▶

Press ■ ▶ Use • to select the end point ▶

Press ■ → Select a colour → Press ■

When finished, press Perform from Step 10 on P.8-17

Select Advanced → Press ■ → Select Highlight →
Press ■ → Use → to select the first character of
text → Press ■ → Use → to select the end point →
Press ■ → Select a colour → Press ■

When finished, press □ → Perform from Step 10 on
P.8-17

Rlink

Set subtitles to flash

Highlight subtitles

Select Advanced → Press ■ → Select Blink →

Press ■ → Use → to select the first character of

text → Press ■ → Use → to select the end point →

Press ■

When finished, press → Perform from Step 10 on P.8-17

Rese

Reset Advanced subtitle settings

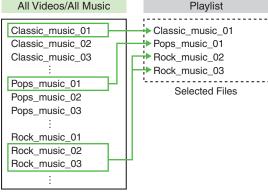
Select Advanced → Press ■ → Press □ → Press □ → Choose Yes → Press ■

Reset does not affect Duration setting.

8

# Managing Video & Music Files

Organise video/music files on handset in My Videos and My Music. All files are saved in All Videos or All Music. Use Playlists to organise them.



All Files

- · Playlists store only file locations. Source files remain in All Videos or All Music.
- Three Playlists are saved by default. To create new Playlists, see riaht.
- Use Music Manager on the supplied Utility Software CD-ROM to create Playlists and organise music files via PCs.

Note To save video to Memory Card, a maximum of 1.2 MB of free memory is required in addition to the file size.

# **Adding New Playlist**

Create up to 99 Playlists in My Videos, My Music and SD AUDIO each.

- Playlists cannot be added into SD VIDEO.
- Playlist 1 to Playlist 3 (or 7° V/III/1 to 7° V/III/3) are saved in My Videos and My Music by default.

Main Menu > Media Player Video Playlists ■ Select *Videos* and press Select My Videos and press ■

Select Phone Memory or Memory Card

Music Playlists

- Select Music and press ■
- 2 Select My Music or SD AUDIO
- **?** Press
  - To delete Playlists, select one Press ☑ Options → Select Delete Playlist → Press ■ → Choose Yes ▶ Press
  - To rename Playlists, select one 🖈 Press 

    Options 

    Select Edit List Title → Press ■ → Enter new name





My Videos

- Select *Add New Playlist* and press ■
- Enter name and press

# **Adding Files to Playlists**

Add files to Playlists from All Videos or All Music.

- Playlists store only file locations. Source files remain in All Videos or All Music.
- Files in SD VIDEO cannot be added to Playlists.

Main Menu Media Player

1 Adding Video Files

Select Videos and press ■

Select My Videos and press ■

Select Phone Memory or Memory Card

**Adding Music Files** 

■ Select Music and press

2 Select My Music or SD AUDIO

2 Press 🔳

**3** Select *All Videos* or *All Music* and press ■

✓ Select a file and press 
☐ Options

5 Select Add to Playlist and press

6 Select a Playlist and press ■

File is added to the end of the Playlist.

To delete saved files, press ⇒ Select a Playlist ⇒ Press ■ ⇒ Select a file ⇒ Press ☑ Options ⇒ Select Delete ⇒ Press ■ ⇒ Choose Yes ⇒ Press ■

To move files within a list, press → Select a Playlist → Press → Select a file → Press ☑ Options → Select Change Order → Press ■ → Use 1 to move file → Press ■

### **Opening Playlist Properties**

■ Follow these steps when Playlists are listed (see Step 2 on P.8-10, Step 3 on P.8-13 or Step 2 on the left).

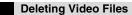
Select All Music, All Videos or a Playlist ▶

Press ☑ Options ▶ Select Details ▶ Press ■

# **Deleting Files in SD VIDEO & SD AUDIO**

Delete video files in **SD VIDEO** and music files in **All Music** of **SD AUDIO**.

Source files will be deleted.



Main Menu ► Media Player → Videos → SD VIDEO

- **1** Select a file and press ☑ Options
- 2 Select Delete and press
- 3 Choose Yes and press ■
- **Deleting Music Files**

Main Menu ► Media Player → Music → SD AUDIO → All Music

- ¶ Select a file and press 
  ☐ Options
- 2 Select Delete Track and press
- **3** Choose *Yes* and press ■

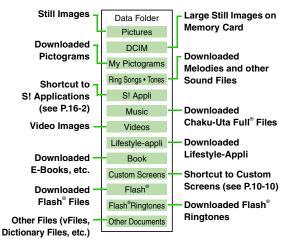
#### Deleting Files in My Videos/My Music

■ Delete files in All Videos and All Music from Videos and Ring Songs·Tones/Music in Data Folder respectively (see P.9-9).

Managing Files (Data Folder)

# Data Folder

Handset files are organised in folders by file format.



- Tip > Access the corresponding Yahoo! Keitai Menu directly from Pictures, My Pictograms, Ring Songs Tones, S! Appli, Music, Videos, Lifestyle-appli, Books and Custom Screens.
  - Exchange files via Bluetooth® (see P.11-2) or infrared (see P.11-10) with compatible SoftBank handsets.

# **Window Description**

To open Data Folder from Standby, follow these steps.

Press ■ Select Data Folder ⇒
Press ■

純恋歌 is saved in Ring Songs Tones by default.

Title	Composer	JASRAC Licence
Junrenka	Shonannokaze	T-0690131

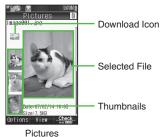


### Memory Status

- To check memory usage status, open Data Folder and follow these steps.
  - Select Memory Status → Press → Select Phone Memory or Memory Card → Press ■
  - Delete messages/files when memory is low. Handset performance may be affected when memory is full.

### File List

In Data Folder, select a folder and press . File list appears.



# **Major Icons**

# Still Image & Animation Files

lcon	Format & Extension	Description
PEG	JPEG (.jpg)	JPEG image
PNO	PNG (.png)	PNG image
	E-Animation (NEVA files) (.nva)	Animation (may include sound)
° wo	SVG (.svgz)	SVG-T file

### Video Files

I	lcon	Format & Extension	Description
		MPEG-4 (.3gp)	3GPP video image
		MPEG-4 or H.263 (.3gp or .mp4)	3GPP video image

# Sound Files

lcon	Format & Extension	Description
	SMAF (.mmf)	Melody via the Internet (may include images)
Ī.	Audio (.mp4)	Downloaded Chaku-Uta®
J.	Voice (.amr)	Voice/sound recorded on Voice Recorder

- **Tip** ▶ → appears for copy protected files. ✓ appears for files in the public domain.
  - 🕯 appears for files used for Wallpaper, System Graphics, ringtone, ringvideo, etc.
  - @ appears for copy/forward protected files.

# **Display Settings**

# Switching File List View







Inline

Grid

Preview

Main Menu Data Folder

**1** Select a folder and press ■

Press □ Options

- Select a folder other than My Pictograms, Ring Songs Tones,
   S! Appli, Music, Lifestyle-appli, Flash® or Flash® Ringtones.
- 3 Select Manage Items and press ■
- Select Change List View and press

# **5** Select *Inline View, Grid View* or *Preview View* and press •

 Preview View appears for folders other than Books, Videos, Custom Screens or Other Documents.

**Tip** ► Alternatively, press in file list to toggle the view.

# Sorting Files

Sort files by name, date, size, type or Content Key status. Select *Unsorted* to list files randomly.

Main Menu Data Folder

# 1 Select a folder and press

To open a created sub folder or a sub folder in DCIM, select it▶ Press

# **2** Press **□** Options

- Select a folder other than S! Appli or Lifestyle-appli.
- If *Download* icon is highlighted in file list, skip ahead to Step 4.

3 Select Manage Items and press

■ Select Sort and press
■

5 Select a method and press

Note It may take a while to sort many files.

Tip To reverse the order, sort by the same method again.

# **Opening Files**

Main Menu

Data Folder

# **1** Select a folder and press ■

File list appears.

- To switch between handset and Memory Card, press ☑ Options ⇒ Select Change to Phone or Change to Memory Card ⇒ Press ■
- To open a created sub folder or a sub folder in DCIM, select it ▶ Press ■

# 2 Select a file and press

The content plays or appears.

- Press to zoom in. (Press repeatedly to zoom in more.)
  - To zoom out, press
- Press 🗓 (up) or 및 (down) to adjust volume.
- To switch sound file name display, select a file ⇒ Press ☑ Options
  ⇒ Select Item Displayed ⇒ Press ⇒ Select File Name or
  Title (default) ⇒ Press ■

# **3** Press to return to file list

- Press we twice to return to file list from zoomed view.
- From file list, press to return to Data Folder.



File List (Pictures)

Note Remote control on LCD Remote/Mic (optional accessory) is disabled for Music Player activated via Data Folder.

### **Activating Mobile Camera**

Open file list in Pictures, DCIM or Videos folder and follow these steps.

Press ☑ Options → Select Take Picture or Record Video → Press ■

- Mobile camera activates in Photo Camera mode from Pictures and DCIM folders, or in Video Camera mode from Videos folder.
- To capture still images, see P.7-6.
- To record video, see P.7-8.

# Selecting Multiple Files

Select multiple files in a folder to move, copy or delete them all at the same time.

# Main Menu Data Folder

- To open a created sub folder or a sub folder in DCIM, select it
  ▶ Press
- 2 Select a file and press Y Check

Select a folder and press

- ✓ appears.
- Select a folder other than S! Appli or Lifestyle-appli.
- To uncheck, select a file with 

  → Press 

  ✓ Uncheck

# 3 Repeat Step 2 to select more

• Copy, move, or delete files (see P.9-9).

### Slide Show

Main Menu Data Folder

Select Pictures or DCIM and press

■ To open a created sub folder or a sub folder in DCIM, select it
▶ Press

2 Select a file and press ☑ Options

3 Select Slide Show and press

Slide Show starts.

• All images in the folder appear sequentially.

When Speed is set to *Manual*, press is or it advance or reverse frames.

4 Press 🔳 to stop

### **Setting Interval**

Follow these steps after Step 3.

Press ☑ Set → Select Speed → Press ■ → Select Fast, Normal, Slow or Manual → Press ■

• Speed is Normal by default.

#### Repeat Slide Show

Follow these steps after Step 3.

Press ☑ Set → Select Repeat → Press ■ →

Choose On or Off → Press ■

• For Off, all images in the folder appear then file list returns.

• Repeat is On by default.

# Properties

Main Menu Data Folder

¶ Select a folder and press ■

To open a created sub folder or a sub folder in DCIM, select it
▶ Press ■

2 Select a file and press 

Options

• Select multiple files as needed.

3 Select *Details* and press ■

• Press 🖫 to scroll down.

The following information appears:
 File name, type, size, last modified date, vendor, copy/forward protection and other restrictions (number of times to open, expiry term), etc.

■ Available information varies by file.

#### SVG Files

- Handset supports Scalable Vector Graphics-Tiny (SVG-T).
   Follow these steps to view graphics such as tables or maps.
   Press → Select Data Folder → Press → Select Other Documents → Press → Select an
   SVG file → Press →
  - Press Options to use the following functions.
  - Key Assignments:

Line Scroll	•••
Page Scroll	2½ (Up), 4½ (Left) 6½ (Right), 8½ (Down)
Zoom	1 to (Zoom Out), 3 to (Zoom In)
Rotate	7.5 (Counterclockwise) 9. (Clockwise)
Key Action Mode	0 n n
Set Default	5 to 1800.

- Some features may not be available depending on the file.
- To create SVG files via PC, use PC Document Conversion Utility on Utility Software CD-ROM.
- For more information on SVG-T, visit http://j.sst.ne.jp/svgt/ index\_pdc.html (Japanese only).

#### **CCF Files**

Follow these steps to read CCF files (comics, photo books, etc. saved in Books folder) designed for ComicSurfing® application (see **P.18-9**).

Press ■ → Select Data Folder → Press ■ →
Select Books → Press ■ → Select a CCF file →
Press ■

- ComicSurfing® S! Application starts.
- Refer to the ComicSurfing<sup>®</sup> help menu for operational instructions.
- When an S! Application is paused, Application suspended. End application? appears. Choose Yes and press twice to start ComicSurfing°.
- When ComicSurfing is paused, properties of opened CCF file may not be accessible.

#### Flash

■ Download Flash® animation files via the Internet; use as Wallpaper (see **P.10-3**), etc.

### Flash® Ringtones

■ Download Flash® Ringtones via the Internet; use as ringtones with Flash® animation (see above).

### My Pictograms

Download GIF image Pictograms via the Internet; create Arrange Mail (see P.14-12).

# Managing Files & Folders

# **Adding Folders**

- · Assign different names to folders within a layer.
- Folders cannot be added to DCIM, S! Appli or Lifestyle-appli folder.

Main Menu Data Folder

Select a folder and press ■

Press ☑ Options

Select *Manage Items* and press ■

■ Select Create Folder and press

5 Enter name and press

# **Changing File/Folder Name**

- File extensions do not change.
- · Assign different names to files/folders within a layer.
- Single-byte Symbols ¥, /, :, ;, ., <, >, /, ?, \*/ and "are not supported.
- · Make sure there is enough free memory.
- Folders/files in DCIM, S! Appli or Lifestyle-appli folder cannot be renamed.

Main Menu Data Folder

Select a folder and press ■

Select a file or folder and press 

☐ Options

Select *Manage Items* and press

Select *Rename* and press

Edit name and press

# **Deleting Files & Folders**

Delete files and created folders in Data Folder.

To delete S! Applications, see P.16-6 "Deleting S! Applications".

Main Menu Data Folder

**1** Select a folder and press ■

**2** Deleting Folders

1 Select a folder and press 
☐ Options

Select a folder other than S! Appli or Lifestyle-appli.
 Deleting Single Files

1 Select a file and press 
☐ Options

**Deleting Multiple Files** 

1 Perform from Step 2 on P.9-5 to select multiple files and press ☑ Options

Deleting All Created Folders & Files

1 Select a file and press 
☐ Options

Select Manage Items and press ■

3 Select Delete or Delete All and press

For deleting folders or *Delete All*, enter Handset Code ⇒
Press ■

4 Choose Yes and press ■

# **Copying/Moving Files**

Copy or move files to the corresponding folder on Memory Card or to created sub folders within the folder (handset or Memory Card).

- Copy or move files in DCIM folder to Pictures folder (handset or Memory Card).
- Copy/forward protected files cannot be copied.
- Some files may not be copied or moved.
- Files in S! Appli and Lifestyle-appli folders cannot be copied or moved.

Main Menu Data Folder

- Select a folder and press
  - Select a folder other than S! Appli or Lifestyle-appli.
  - To open a created sub folder or a sub folder in DCIM, select it
    ▶ Press
- **2** Copying/Moving Single Files

1 Select a file and press 
☐ Options

Copying/Moving Multiple Files

1 Perform from Step 2 on P.9-5 to select multiple files and press ☑ Options

- Select *Copy* or *Move* and press
- Select Phone or Memory Card and press
  - To move files set as Wallpaper or used for other functions, choose *Yes* → Press ■
  - To copy/move to created sub folders, select a folder ▶ Press 🔳
- 5 Select Copy here.. or Move here.. and press

- Note If a copy protected file is included in the selected files, only the remaining files are copied.
  - Files copied or moved to Memory Card may not be usable on other SoftBank handsets or PCs. etc.
  - Name of copied or moved file may change when the same name already exists in the folder.

# Using Files

Use Data Folder files as Wallpaper, Phone Book Picture, ringtone and ringvideo.

- Set as Wallpaper, Add to Ph.Book, Set as Ring Video and Set as Ringtone appear only for compatible files.
- Some files may not be used depending on the size.

Some copy protected files (→ or ⋈) cannot be used even Note > if Set as Wallpaper, Add to Ph.Book, Set as Ring Video or Set as Ringtone appears.

# Wallpaper

Main Menu Data Folder

- Select Pictures, DCIM, Flash® or Other Documents and press ■
  - To open a created sub folder or a sub folder in DCIM, select it ▶ Press
- Select a file and press 
  ☐ Options
- Select Set as Wallpaper and press
  - For images smaller or larger than Display, select *Centred*, Full Screen or Fit Image → Press
    - For Display size images or *Centred*, use 🗓 to zoom in/out or press I to rotate.
- **4** Press ■

Wallpaper is set.

# Saving to Phone Book

Main Menu Data Folder

Select Pictures, Ring Songs Tones, Music, Videos or Flash®Ringtones and press ■

Select a file and press 
☐ Options

Select *Add to Ph.Book* and press ■

For more, perform Step 4 in "Saving from Call Log" on P.4-8.

# Ringvideo & Ringtone

Assign video or sound file as ringvideo or ringtone for Voice Calls.

Ringvideo

Main Menu 

Select a file and press 
☐ Options

Select Set as Ring Video and press

Ringtone

Main Menu Data Folder

Select Ring Songs Tones, Music or Flash® Ringtones and press

Select a file and press 
☐ Options

3 Select Set as Ringtone and press

### **S! Mail Attachments**

Attach files to S! Mail from Data Folder.

Main Menu Data Folder

Select a folder and press ■

Select a file and press 
☐ Options

Select Send and press

Select As Message and press

For large JPEG images, select attachment size 🖈 Press 🔳

Complete other fields and send S! Mail (perform from Step 3 on P.14-8)

# **Printing Images**

Connect handset to a printer via Bluetooth® and print JPEG/PNG images.

- Use a Bluetooth®-compatible printer.
- Activate Bluetooth® on the printer.

Main Menu Data Folder

# **1** Select *Pictures*, *DCIM* or *Other Documents* and press ■

- To open a created sub folder or a sub folder in DCIM, select it
  ▶ Press
- Select a still image and press 

  ☐ Options
- 3 Select Print and press
- 4 Select Via Bluetooth and press Device search starts.
- **5** Select a device and press
  - When requested, enter passcode ▶ Press 🔳
  - When transmission is in progress, choose *Yes* **▶** Press
- **6** Choose *Yes* and press ■

Offline Mode is set and printing starts.

- When printing completes, printer stops automatically.
- To cancel, press 🗹 Cancel.

Note Some images sent to Basic Imaging Profile-compatible printers may not be printed due to printer limitations.

# **Editing Still Images**

# **Changing Image Size**

Resize Pictures folder images for Wallpaper, Alarm, etc.

- Alternatively, crop image for size or zoom in/out on portions.
   (File size changes when images are resized.)
- Picture Editor appears only for compatible files.

# Resize to Preset Size

Main Menu 

Data Folder → Pictures → Select a file → Options (□) → Edit → Picture Editor → Resize

# ¶ Select from To Wallpaper to QVGA and press ■

A rectangle appears on the image (except for *To Wallpaper* and *Power On/Off*).

To Wallpaper	W 240 x H 400 dots
Power On/Off	W 240 x H 400 dots
For Incoming Call	W 176 x H 144 dots
Alarm	W 240 x H 104 dots
QVGA	W 240 x H 320 dots



For Incoming Call

# **9** Use : to specify display area

- Display area may be unspecifiable depending on image size.
- To zoom in/out, press ☐ Resize → Press ☐ (zoom in) or ☐ (zoom out)
- To start over from size selection, press 💹

- 3 Press
- 4 Press 🛂 Save
- **5** Enter name and press
- 6 Select a location and press Image is saved to Data Folder as a new entry.

# **Cropping Images**

Main Menu 

Data Folder → Pictures → Select a file → Options (□) → Edit → Picture Editor → Resize

- **1** Select *Cut* and press ■
- **2** Use 
   to move + to the upper left corner of the portion to crop and press ■
- **3** Use **!** to move + to the lower right corner of the portion to crop and press
  - To cancel, press 

    Start over from Step 1
- 4 Use 🔄 to specify display area
  - Display area may be unspecifiable depending on image size.
     To zoom in/out, press ☐ Resize → Press ☐ (zoom in) or ☐ (zoom out)
  - To cancel, press 

    Start over from Step 1
- **5** Press ■
- 6 Press 🛂 Save
- **7** Enter name and press
- 8 Select a location and press

Image is saved to Data Folder as a new entry.

# **Visual Effects (Retouch)**

Dress up images with pre-loaded visual effects.

- Apply to W 52 x H 52 dots or larger JPEG/PNG images including Continuous Shoot images.
- Picture Editor appears only for compatible files.

Main Menu	Data Folder → Pictures → Select a file → Options (□) → Edit → Picture Editor → Retouch
	Options (☑) → Edit → Picture Editor → Retouch

# Select an effect and press

• Retouch Effects:

Sepia	Renders image in sepia tone
Sparkling	Adds sparkling effect to bright portions of image
Ripples	Superimposes widening rings over image
Tile	Adds a brick frame around image
Emboss	Renders image in black and white relief
Oil Painting	Renders image as a blurred image
Clear Frame	Adds a transparent 3D frame around image
Round Frame	Adds a round, opaque frosting around image
Soft Frame	Adds a soft, opaque edged frame around image
Zigzag Frame	Adds a jagged edged frame around image

- To start over, press
- 2 Press 🔳
- 3 Press 🗹 Save
- ▲ Enter name and press ■
- **5** Select a location and press Image is saved to Data Folder as a new entry.

**Note** Edited images may be too large to save or send via S! Mail.

# **Adding Text & Stamps**

Picture Editor appears only for compatible files.

Main Menu

Data Folder → Pictures → Select a file →
 Options (□) → Edit → Picture Editor

- 1 Adding Text
  - Select Paste and press
    - To specify colours, press ☐ Colour → Select text colour → Press → Select outline colour or no outline → Press → Press ☑ Done
  - 2 Select Free Text and press
    - To enter the date, select Date → Press → Skip ahead to Step 2
  - 3 Enter text and press
    - Enter up to 16 characters.
    - Alternatively, use Scan Code/Text Scanner to insert text.

### **Adding Stamps**

- Select Stamp and press
- 2 Select a stamp and press
  - To change the stamp, press 🚟.
- 2 Use 

  to move text or stamp to target location and press
  - To specify colours, press ☐ Colour → Select text colour → Press ☐ Select outline colour or no outline → Press ☐ → Press ☐ Done
- 3 Press ☑ Save
  - I Enter name and press
- **5** Select a location and press

Image is saved to Data Folder as a new entry.

# **Face Arrange**

Make smiley, angry or sad faces.

- Apply to JPEG and PNG images.
- Face Arrange may not fit all images. Adjust position and size as required (see P.9-15).
- Picture Editor appears only for compatible files.

Main Menu 

Data Folder → Pictures → Select a file → Options 

Options 

Arrange

# 🖊 Select a type and press 🔳

• Face Arrange Types:

Collage: Right-half	Copies right side of face onto left side
Collage: Left-half	Copies left side of face onto right side
Grin	Pulls eyes down & mouth up
Mad	Pulls eyes up & mouth down
Sad	Pulls eyes & mouth down
Big Eyes	Adds graphic eyes
Burning Eyes	Adds flames in the eyes
Crying	Adds tears
Aristocrat	Adds a monocle and moustache
Angry Mark	Adds a stress mark to face

- To check current positions of targets, press Parts.
  - Press to return.
  - To start over, press

- Press •
- 3 Press 🛂 Save
- Enter name and press
- Select a location and press

Image is saved to Data Folder as a new entry.

**Note** When using Face Arrange, take care not to create images that may embarrass or offend others. Always obtain permission before photographing others.

# **Adjusting Face Arrange Position**

Change the default positions and sizes of targets to fit the image. Changes apply to the current image only.

- In Step 1 under "Face Arrange" on P.9-14, press ☑ Parts
- Press 

  Modify

A rectangle appears with + in the upper left corner.

# 3 Set the face line







+ to the upper left corner



Use 🔄 to move Face line is set

To start over, press

# 4 Set the eyes and then mouth in the same way



- When finished, all the targets appear.
- To readjust targets, start over from Step 2.
- To restore the original positions, press . (Not available after setting mouth position.)

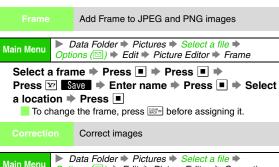
- 5 Press
- 6 Choose Yes and press ■
- **7** Select a location and press

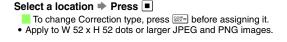
Image is saved to Data Folder as a new entry with Face Arrange positions adjusted, and Face Arrange menu returns.

 Complete Face Arrange. Face Arrange is applied to the adjusted positions.

### **Additional Picture Effects**

Picture Editor appears only for compatible files.





Options (□) → Edit → Picture Editor → Correction

Select from Sharpness to Dark → Press ■ → Press ■

→ Press ▼ Save → Enter name → Press ■ →



▶ Data Folder ⇒ Pictures ⇒ Select a file ⇒

Options (□) → Edit → Picture Editor → Rotate

Rotate images



### **Converting File Format**

Main Menu

Select File Format → Press ■ → Select a format → Press ■ → Press ☞ → Press ☑ Save → Enter name → Press ■ → Select a location → Press ■

Changing file format may affect file size and image quality.
 Changing File Size

Select File Size → Press ■ → Select a size → Press ■ → Press ▼ Save → Enter name → Press ■ → Select a location → Press ■

· Changing file size may affect image quality.

### **Cancelling Effects**

- Before saving/adding an effect, select Undo ⇒ Press
  - To restore effect immediately after cancelling, select Redo ⇒ Press ■

# **Panorama Images**

Combine two still images into one.



Panorama Image Effects:

Standard	Standard Applicable to all kinds of shots	
Near View	Best suited for close-up shots with parallax correction	
Document	Use for images with text	

- Use JPEG images between W 48 x H 64 and W 120 x H 160 dots/ W 160 x H 120 dots
- Some portions may be cropped to adjust two images to the same size.
- The result may not be satisfactory if colour tones are different between two images.



- Data Folder → Pictures → Select a file → Options (□) → Edit → Composite
- 1 Select Merge Panorama and press
- Left image is set.

   Merge Panorama is selectable only for compatible files.
- 2 Select 2 and press ■
- **3** Select another image and press Two images are set.
  - If image is incompatible, a message appears; select another.
- 4 Select *EFFECT* and press ■
- Select from *Standard* to *Document* and press
  - To check images, select either ▶
    Press
    - Press to return.
    - To change images, select one →
      Press → Press ☑ Change →
      Select an image → Press ■
    - To switch the positions, press 🖾 Flip.



Merge Panorama Window

- 6 Press 🗹 Save
- **7** Press 🔳
- Enter name and press ■
- **9** Select a location and press

Image is saved to Data Folder as a new entry.

# Split Screen

Combine up to four reduced images into one.

- Apply to JPEG and PNG images.
- Make sure there is enough free memory.
- Images are placed in the upper left, upper right, lower left and lower right in numerical order.



Split Image



Select SplitPicture 240x400 or SplitPicture 240x320 and press ■ Upper left image is set.

- Select 2 and press ■
- 3 Select an image and press
  - If image is incompatible, a message appears; select another.

- Repeat Steps 2 3 to add images
  - In Step 2, select 3 or 4.
  - To preview Split Picture, press ☑ Options Select View Composite → Press
  - Press to return.
  - To change images, select one Press ■ Press □ Change → Select an image 

    ◆ Press
  - To delete images, select one Press 

    Options 

    Select Remove → Press Choose Yes → Press



Split Picture Preview

- 5 Press Y Save
- Enter name and press ■
- Select a location and press Image is saved to Data Folder as a new entry.

# **Memory Card**

911SH is compatible with microSD<sup>™</sup> Memory Card.

- Format a new microSD<sup>™</sup> Memory Card for use with handset (see P.9-21).
- To learn how to save a particular file to Memory Card, refer to that section of the manual.

Keep Memory Card out of children's reach; may cause suffocation if swallowed.

#### Note

- SoftBank is not liable for any damages resulting from accidental loss/alteration of information. Keep a copy of Phone Book entries, etc. in a separate place.
- microSD<sup>™</sup> Memory Cards do not have Write Protection Switch. There is a risk of accidental erasure or overwriting of files.
- Tip ► To reduce risk of malfunction, use only recommended microSD<sup>TM</sup> Memory Cards.

For information on compatibility with microSD<sup>™</sup> Memory Cards, access the following Website:

- From Handset
  Sharp Space Town Mobile Internet site (Japanese only)
- From PC
  http://k-tai.sharp.co.jp/peripherals/sd\_support.html
  (SHARP ケータイ daSH is available in Japanese only.)

### **Precautions**

- To reduce risk of malfunction, use only recommended microSD™ Memory Cards.
- Turn handset power off before inserting or removing a Memory Card.
- Do not place labels or stickers on Memory Card. These items may affect card performance or result in lost information.
- Use an oil-based felt pen to write on Memory Card. Using a pencil or ballpoint pen may damage the card or result in lost information.
- Never disassemble or modify a Memory Card.
- Do not expose Memory Card to strong impacts, pressure or liquids.
- Do not touch Memory Card terminals or expose them to metal objects.
- Do not expose Memory Card to direct sunlight or excessive heat (e.g. inside vehicles, etc.).
- Do not expose Memory Card to static electricity or electrical noise.
- Keep a Memory Card away from dust or high humidity.
- Do not use in the presence of corrosive gases.
- Avoid heat sources and do not dispose of in fire.
- A Memory Card is a consumable item. Card performance deteriorates with usage.

# **Inserting & Removing Memory Card**

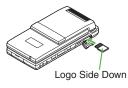
# Inserting

Turn handset power off.

Open cover



With logo side down, insert card until it clicks.



3 Close cover



# Removing

Turn handset power off.

- Open cover and gently push down on card
  - With a light push, card pops out.



- Remove card
  - Using the notch on its edge, pull card straight out.



Close cover



# Note • Do not force Memory Card into or out of handset; damage may result.

- When appears, Memory Card may not be connected properly; reinsert the card.
- Do not insert other objects into Memory Card slot; may damage handset/card.
- Never remove Memory Card or battery while files are being accessed. Damage to handset/card may result and files/data may be damaged/lost.
- Tip ► Insert a Memory Card and turn handset power on.

  Standby appears. Memory Card load times vary by card size and the amount of information saved.

### **Format Card**

When using a new microSD<sup>™</sup> Memory Card, format it on handset for use with handset before trying to save files, etc.

Main Menu

► Settings → Connectivity ( → Memory Card → Format Card

**1** Choose *Yes* and press 
Offline Mode is set.

2 Enter Handset Code and press 🔳

3 Choose Yes and press ■

#### Note >

- Before formatting a Memory Card, make sure there is no important information saved on the card. Format Card deletes all files from Memory Card.
- · Never remove Memory Card or battery while formatting.
- An improperly formatted Memory Card may not function as it should with 911SH.

### **Backup & Restore**

Back up information to Memory Card, and restore to handset in case of accidental loss/alteration of data.

- All contents are copied to Memory Card as a single file. (File name is the date of transfer.)
- The following folders/entries can be transferred at once:
  - Received Msg.
- Drafts
   Phone Book
- Sent Messages

- Templates
- Tasks
- Contact Groups■ Text Templates

- Calendar■ Bookmarks
- User Dictionary
- My Pictograms

- Content Keys
- Templates and My Pictograms are not copied as a single file.
- Unsent Messages are not transferable.
- Select an item to back up or transfer all at once.

Tip ▶ Copy handset entries as backups, share information between microSD™ Memory Card-compatible handsets, or transfer entries to a newly purchased handset.

### **Precautions**

- Backup/Restore is not available when battery is low or while handset is in use.
- Transmissions are blocked during Backup or Restore.
- When restoring data from Memory Card, select an item; when prompted, delete corresponding data on handset to proceed.
- Some items may not be transferable. Some backup files may not be usable on other SoftBank handsets or PCs, etc.
- When handset or Memory Card memory is low, entries may not transfer correctly.
- Handset stores up to 300 entries between Calendar and Tasks. If the limit is reached during a transfer, the remaining entries will not be received.
- Yahoo! Keitai, Streaming and PC Site Browser Bookmarks are backed up. When restored, Streaming Bookmarks are saved in Yahoo! Keitai Bookmarks.
- · Large Bookmarks may not restore correctly.

- Phone Book entry Picture settings may be lost depending on image; copy images separately and re-assign to entries after Phone Book is restored.
- S! Mail Notices are restored as standard messages, invalidating complete message retrieval.
- To access backed up content (excluding Templates and My Pictograms) restore it to handset.
- Use Backup and Restore for Content Keys.
  - Moving Keys to Memory Card creates a special file. Performing Backup again on the same Memory Card overwrites that file. Perform Restore beforehand.
  - While Keys are on Memory Card, files are inaccessible.
  - Restoring Keys to handset does not overwrite existing ones.
- Restoring Messaging folders cancels Secret folder settings and deletes auto sort keys.

- Observe the following when transferring data backed up on other SoftBank handsets to handset.
  - Messages may not transfer depending on the size.
  - Handset stores up to 500 messages between Drafts, Unsent Messages and Sent Messages. If the limit is reached during a transfer, the remaining messages will not be received.
- Sky Mail may transfer as S! Mail depending on the SoftBank handset used for backup.
- Observe the following when transferring data backed up on handset to other SoftBank handsets.
  - Messages in Spam Folder are saved as standard received messages.
  - SMS addressed to multiple recipients may not be saved or only the first entered recipient remains if transferred from Drafts.

# Handset to Memory Card

Main Menu 

Settings 

Connectivity (□) 

Memory Card 

Backup/Restore 

Backup

- 1 Enter Handset Code and press
- **2** Choose *Yes* and press Offline Mode is set.
- 3 Select an item and press
  - For Select All, Phone Book or Content Keys confirmation appears. Choose Yes or No ▶ Press ■
  - To cancel, press [Y] Cancel.

# Memory Card to Handset

Restoring backed up content to handset overwrites current handset content (with the exception of Content Keys).

Main Menu 

Settings 

Connectivity ( → ) 

Memory Card 

Backup/Restore 

Restore

- Enter Handset Code and press
- **2** Choose *Yes* and press Offline Mode is set.
- 3 Select an item and press
  - Some items may not be selected.
    - For Select All, select a file → Press → Choose Yes → Press ■
- 4 Select a file and press
  - If there is more than one file, check the date of transfer to select.

Example: 070214XX indicates the file was transferred on 14 February 2007. (XX: 00 - 99 or aa - zz)

- For Select All, repeat Step 4 for each item.
- To delete files on Memory Card, select one → Press ☑ Delete
   Choose Yes → Press ■
- 5 Choose Yes and press
  - To cancel, press 🛂 Cancel.
  - For Select All, confirmation appears. Choose Yes or No ⇒
    Press ■
  - Tip For Tasks, due dates that cannot be set on handset are overwritten as **No limit**.

### **Additional Functions**

Check Memory Card memory status

Main Menu ▶ Data Folder ▶ Memory Status

Select *Memory Card* ▶ Press ■

 A portion of Memory Card is reserved for storing copyright information, etc.

Open HTML files on Memory Card to access Internet sites

Available only when HTML files are saved on Memory Card.

Main Menu

Settings → Connectivity ( → Memory Card → SD Local Contents

Select a title **▶** Press ■

 HTML files for SD Local Contents are saved in PRIVATE/ MYFOLDER/Local Contents folder when viewed on PCs.

# Digital Print Order Format (DPOF)

Digital Print Order Format (DPOF) is a standard specification for requesting prints from digital cameras. Select images from Memory Card and specify the number of copies to print on DPOF-compatible printers, or at digital printing services.

- DPOF does not support images obtained via the Internet, S! Mail, etc.
- If Memory Card capacity becomes insufficient while in use, a warning message appears. Delete files and try again.
- For printing procedures, see the printer manual.

# **Selecting Images & Prints**

Main Menu

Settings ⇒ Connectivity ( → ) ⇒ Memory Card ⇒ DPOF → Number of Copies → For Each Pictures

Select a folder and press

Thumbnails appear.

- Use **!** to select an image and press **□ Count** 
  - To open images, select one ▶ Press 🔳
    - Press I to return.
- Enter a number of copies to print (00 99) and press =
  - To return, press 🚟 🖈 Press 🚟 To cancel, enter 00 ⇒ Press 🔳

# Repeat Steps 2 - 3 for other images

5 Press 🛂 Done

- **Note** DPOF settings made on other devices are unusable; delete existing settings to create new ones on handset.
  - Some settings may not be supported depending on the printer or printing services.
  - Process may take a while if print settings are made for many images.
  - If image files are deleted or renamed on PCs or other devices, print settings change. Perform Reset Settings (see right) and start over with settings.

# **Print Settings**

Apply a number to all DCF images to print the same number of copies

Default 0 Copy each

Main Menu

Settings → Connectivity ( → ) → Memory Card → DPOF → Number of Copies → For All Pictures

Enter a number (01 - 99) → Press ■

Add dates to prints

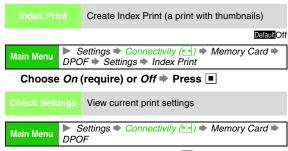
**Default**Off

Main Menu

► Settings → Connectivity ( → ) → Memory Card → DPOF → Settings → Add Date

Choose On or Off 

Press ■



Select Check Settings → Press ■

Reset DPOF settings

Main Menu

Settings → Connectivity ( → ) → Memory Card → DPOF

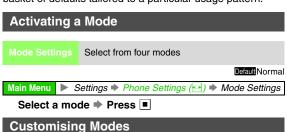
Select Reset Settings → Press ■ → Choose Yes → Press

**Additional Settings** 

10

# Mode Settings

Activate Normal, Manner, Drive or Original mode to change multiple handset settings at one time; each mode offers a basket of defaults tailored to a particular usage pattern.

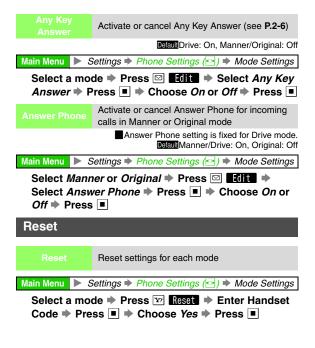


Customise Manner, Drive or Original in Mode Settings. To customise Normal, see P.10-16 "Sounds & Alerts".

**Tip** Volume settings are fixed in Manner mode. Volume, Vibration and Answer Phone settings are fixed in Drive mode.

Customise Volume, Vibration, Event Light and Status Light settings Main Menu ► Settings ► Phone Settings ( • ) ► Mode Settings

Select a mode → Press □ Folit → Select an item Press ■ Customise settings (see P.10-16 "Volume", P.10-17 "Vibration", P.10-18 "Event Light" and P.10-18 "Status Light")



# Display

# **Display Settings**

Wallpape

Use Wallpaper to show an image in Standby

**Default** Chessboard

Main Menu

► Settings → Phone Settings ( Display → Wallpaper

#### **Preset Pictures**

Select Preset Pictures → Press ■ → Select an image → Press ■

### **Data Folder Images**

Select My Pictures, Flash® or Other Documents ▶

Press ■ ▶ Select an image ▶ Press ■ ▶ Press ■

- To use files in DCIM folder, select DCIM → Press 
   Select a folder → Press 
   Select an image → Press 
   Press
- For images smaller or larger than Display, select an image
   ⇒ Press
   ⇒ Select Centred, Full Screen or Fit Image
   ⇒ Press
  - For Display size images or *Centred*, use 🗓 to zoom in/out or press 🖾 to rotate.

### Cancelling

Choose Blank ⇒ Press ■

### Restoring Custom Screen Wallpaper

■ When Wallpaper is set while Custom Screen is active, Wallpaper takes priority over Custom Screen Wallpaper. (Custom Screen remains active.)

To restore Custom Screen Wallpaper, follow these steps after opening Wallpaper menu.

Select Custom Screen → Press ■ → Press ■

Note >

- Some images may be incompatible/not appear correctly.
- When an S! Application is set as Screensaver, Wallpaper may not appear.
- Files in My Pictograms are not selectable.

Tip Ving Wallpaper shortens Battery Time.

System Graphics Use images for Power On/Off, incoming calls and Alarm windows

Default Power On/Power Off: Preset Animation Voice Call/Video Call/Circle Talk/Alarm: Pattern 1

Main Menu

► Settings → Phone Settings ( Display → System Graphics

### Power On/Power Off

Select Power On or Power Off → Press ■ → Select Preset Animation, My Pictures, DCIM, Flash® or Other Documents → Press ■

- For *My Pictures*, *Flash*<sup>®</sup> or *Other Documents*, select an image ▶ Press ▶ Press ■
- For **DCIM**, select a folder ⇒ Press ⇒ Select an image ⇒ Press → Press ■

### **Incoming Calls/Alarm**

Select Voice Call, Video Call, Circle Talk or Alarm > Press ■ Select from Pattern 1 to Pattern 3, My Pictures, DCIM, Flash®, Other Documents or Custom Screen ⇒ Press ■

- For My Pictures, Flash® or Other Documents, select an image → Press ■ → Press ■
- For **DCIM**, select a folder → Press → Select an image → Press ■ Press ■
- If a rectangle appears for images in My Pictures, DCIM or Other Documents, use 1 to specify display area and press .
- Custom Screen is selectable when compatible Custom Screen is active.

Note | Images may not appear for incoming calls/Alarm while messaging with an S! Application paused.

### **Restoring Custom Screen System Graphics**

When System Graphics are set while Custom Screen is active, System Graphics take priority over Custom Screen System Graphics. (Custom Screen remains active.) To restore to Custom Screen System Graphics for Voice Call, Video Call, Circle Talk or Alarm, follow these steps after opening the corresponding menu. Select Custom Screen → Press ■ → Press ■

- Note Ringtone and ringvideo images for Sounds & Alerts may take priority over System Graphics for incoming calls.
  - Ringtone, ringvideo and Picture images for Phone Book entries take priority over System Graphics for incoming calls with caller ID.

Change font size/weight for menus, text entry, mail messages and the Internet

Default General: Small, Editor/Messaging/Browser: Standard Font Weight: Normal

Main Menu

Settings → Phone Settings ( Display → Disp Font Settings

#### **Font Size**

Select Font Size → Press ■ → Select an item → Press ■ Select a size > Press ■

### **Font Weight**

Select Font Weight → Press ■ → Select a weight → Press

Selected font weight applies to all windows.

Some menu items, function names, etc. differ by font size.

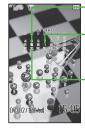
Some windows may not support Font Settings.

▶ Settings ⇒ Phone Settings (•••) ⇒ Display 🖈 Standby Display 

◆ Clock/Calendar

Select a type **▶** Press ■

### Calendar Contents



### Holiday

- Appears in red
- **Current Date**
- Highlighted

#### Scheduled Date

• Underlined (see P.12-2 "Calendar" for schedules)

Clock + 1 Month

- Note Calendar appears on Wallpaper.
  - Preset holidays are based on Japanese calendar as of November 2006. (Spring Equinox Day and Autumnal Equinox Day are gazetted on 1 February of the previous year, and thus may differ from dates scheduled on handset.)
- When an S! Application is set as Screensaver, Calendar may not appear.

Main Menu

Default Clock (M)

Settings → Phone Settings ( → ) → Display → Standby Display Show Indicators

Select Status Area or Softkey Area 

◆ Press 

◆ Choose *On* or *Off* ▶ Press ■

Show or hide the name of your service provider (SoftBank, etc.) in Standby

DefaultOff

Main Menu

Settings ⇒ Phone Settings (••) ⇒ Display ⇒ Standby Display Show Operator Name

Choose *On* (show) or *Off* ▶ Press

Select an image enhancement option

Defauli Standard

Main Menu

Settings → Phone Settings ( → ) → Display → Vivid Mode

Select Standard, Vivid, Sharpness or Dynamic > Press

**Tip** ▶

Setting applies to still images viewed in Standby and video played via Video Player/streaming.

10

**Additional Settings** 

Greeting Message

Create a short text message to appear on Display each time handset power is activated

DefaultOff

Main Menu

Settings → Phone Settings (□) → Display → Greeting Message

### **Edit Message**

Select *Edit Message* → Press ■ → Enter a message → Press ■

• Enter up to 10 characters.

#### Switch On/Off

Select Switch On/Off → Press ■ → Choose On or Off → Press ■

Dial Number Change font of numbers entered in Standby

Default Pattern 1

Main Menu 

Settings 

Phone Settings (□) 

Display 

Dial Number

Select Pattern 1, Pattern 2 or Pattern 3 → Press

# **Standby Window (Japanese Only)**

Access shortcut icons, view Live Monitor news (see P.15-15) or monitor Hot Status members (see P.19-4) in Standby; open Standby Window in Shortcut, Headline or Communication mode.

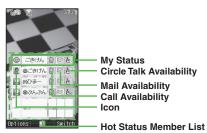
### ■ Window Description (Shortcut Mode)



### Window Description (Headline Mode)



# Window Description (Communication Mode)



- Subscription and member or content registration required to use Live Monitor (see P.15-15) or Hot Status (see P.19-4).
- Standby Window opens in Shortcut mode (see P.10-6) by default.

# Window Description (Calendar Mode)



1 Press 🗓

Standby Window opens in last used mode.

# 2 Use 💽 to select an item and press 🔳

Shortcut target, news or member status appears.

• In Calendar mode, press ■ to use Calendar.

Press ⑤ to exit.

Tip For more about icons and information in Headline/ Communication mode, see P.15-15 or P.19-4.



# **Customising Shortcut Mode**

Follow these steps after opening Standby Window in Shortcut mode (see **P.10-6**).

Assign Save up to six shortcuts

Select an icon or a blank entry → Press ☑ Options →
Select Icon Panel Display → Press ■ → Select
Assign Shortcut → Press ■ → Use ① to select a
menu item → Press ■ → Select a function, folder or
menu → Press ■ → Press ☑ Assign

Assign Bookmark

Save up to six Bookmarks

Select an icon or a blank entry → Press ☑ ①ptions → Select Icon Panel Display → Press ■ → Select Assign Bookmark → Press ■ → Use ∴ to select a Bookmark → Press ■ → Select an icon → Press ■ → Choose Yes → Press ■

Del Sele Delete shortcut/Bookmark icons

Select an icon → Press ☑ Options → Select Icon

Panel Display → Press ■ → Select Delete →

Press ■ → Choose Yes → Press ■

Assign Member

Monitor up to five Hot Status members

■ Save members to Hot Status member list (see **P.19-5**) or save Phone Book entries (see **P.4-3**) beforehand.

Select an icon or a blank entry → Press ☑ Options →
Select Icon Panel Display → Press ■ → Select
Assign Member → Press ■ → Select Member List →
Press ■ → Select a member → Press ■

To select from Phone Book, select an icon or a blank entry

→ Press ☑ ①

→ Select Icon Panel Display →

Press ■ → Select Assign Member → Press ■ → Select

Phone Book → Press ■ → Select an entry → Press ■

Move

Change member order

Select an icon → Press ☑ Options → Select Icon

Panel Display → Press ■ → Select Move →

Press ■ → Select a member to move → Press ☑

(Up) or ☑ (Down) → Press ■

Delete Member

Delete Hot Status member icons

Select an icon → Press ☑ Options → Select Icon

Panel Display → Press ■ → Select Delete →

Press ■ → Choose Yes → Press ■

My Status icon cannot be deleted.

hange Icon

Change member icons

Select an icon → Press ☑ Options → Select Icon

Panel Display → Press ■ → Select Change Icon →

Press ■ → Select an icon → Press ■

Add News Ad
Content ap

Add Live Monitor items; corresponding titles appear in News area

Press Detions Select Icon Panel Display Press Select Add News Content Press Perform from Step 1 in "Live Monitor List" on P.15-16 or in "S! Loop List" on P.15-16

Template:

Change Icon Panel view

Press P

News Spee

Change title scroll speed

Press ☑ Options → Select Icon Panel Display → Press ■ → Select News Display → Press ■ → Select News Speed → Press ■ → Select speed → Press ■

Target News

Select whether to scroll all titles or unread only

Press ☐ Options → Select Icon Panel Display →
Press ■ → Select News Display → Press ■ →
Select Target News → Press ■ → Select an option
→ Press ■

Tip To update Live Monitor items automatically, see P.15-17 "Automatic Update".

#### **Customising Headline Mode**

Follow these steps after opening Standby Window in Headline mode (see P.10-6).

Add Live Monitor items; corresponding news appears in News List

Press ☐ Options → Select News Panel Settings →

Press ■ Select Add News Content Press ■

Follow onscreen instructions.

Tip To update Live Monitor items automatically, see P.15-17 "Automatic Update".

#### **Customising Communication Mode**

Follow these steps after opening Standby Window in Communication mode (see P.10-7).

Monitor up to five Hot Status members

Save members to Hot Status member list (see P.19-5) or save Phone Book entries (see P.4-3) beforehand.

Select a row → Press ✓ Options → Select Member Panel Settings → Press ■ → Select Assign Member ▶ Press ■ ▶ Select Member List ▶ Press ■ ▶ Select a member 

Press ■

To select from Phone Book, select a row 

Press 

Options Select Member Panel Settings → Press ■ → Select Assign Member → Press ■ → Select Phone Book → Press ■ → Select an entry → Press ■

Change member order

Select a member → Press ☑ Options → Select Member Panel Settings → Press ■ → Select Move Press ■ Select a member to move Press □ (Up) or [Y] (Down) → Press 🔳

Hide members

Select a member 

Press 

Options 

Select Member Panel Settings → Press ■ → Select Delete Press ■ Choose Yes Press ■

Change Status Icon Pictogram

Select a member → Press ☑ Options → Select Member Panel Settings → Press ■ → Select Change Icon → Press ■ → Select a Pictogram → Press

#### Language Setting

Switch handset interface between Japanese and English

Default Automatic

Main Menu ► Settings → Phone Settings ( ) → 言語選択

Select Automatic, English or 日本語 → Press ■

• For Automatic, interface language switches according to language information on USIM Card.

#### **Custom Screens**

Download and install applications that load single-themed handset Wallpaper, menu windows, indicators, ringtones and more, all at the same time.

- In addition to preloaded Custom Screens, use Custom Screens downloaded via the Internet.
- See P.10-11 to use preloaded Custom Screens (Pattern 1, Pattern 2 and Pattern 3).
- カスタモご紹介(量) in handset Data Folder (Custom Screens) is a doorway to カスタモ Mobile Internet site offering Custom Screens for 911SH.
- Pattern 1 is installed by default.

#### **Downloading Custom Screens**

To download Custom Screens, open handset Data Folder (Custom Screens).

- Some Custom Screens are fee-based.
- To use fee-based Custom Screens, download Custom Screen Keys to handset (see right).
- Custom Screens and Custom Screen Keys are downloaded via the Internet. Make sure signal is strong.
- Custom Screens can also be downloaded via *ħX9E* (http://www.custamo.com/) using a PC.

Note Read information (Custom Screen Key price, expiry date, etc.) on Custom Screen download page.

Main Menu ► Data Folder → Custom Screens

## Select *Download Custom Screens* and press 🔳

Handset connects to the Internet and *DASE* appears.

■ To read introduction to カスタモ first, select カスタモご紹介
(臺) ⇒ Press ■ ⇒ Press ■ ⇒ Choose *Yes* ⇒ Press ■

#### **2** Download a Custom Screen

- Read through information on the site.
- On PCs, download Custom Screens to the following Memory Card directory. Do not change file name, extension, etc.
  - PRIVATE/MYFOLDER/My Items/Custom Screens

#### ■ Purchasing Custom Screen Keys

Main Menu Data Folder

#### 1 Select Custom Screens and press

Available Custom Screens appear.

• Fee-based Custom Screen Indicators:

Key Found → Key Not Found ✓

- å appears for the current Custom Screen.

- 2 Select a Custom Screen for which to download the Key and press ☑ Options
  - Select one with
- 3 Select Activate and press
  - When 100 Content Keys are already downloaded, delete Keys before downloading new ones.
- ✓ Press < Actvte</p>

Handset connects to the Internet and download page appears.

- Custom Screen Key download page contains the following information:
  - Custom Screen Key price
  - Payment method
  - Terms of service
  - Link to customer enquiry service
- To cancel, press 🛂 Cancel .
- 5 Read through terms of service and download Custom Screen Key following online instructions
- 6 After download, press ☑ OK Data Folder (Custom Screens) returns.





Select a Custom Screen → Press ☑ Options → Select Web Access → Press ■

#### **Custom Screen Setup**

Custom Screen setup may take some time. (Pressing does not cancel setup.)

Preset Custom Screens

- 1 Select Pattern 1, Pattern 2 or Pattern 3 and press ■
- 2 Select Icon Menu, Icon Menu(Explain), Vertical or Vertical(Full) and press ■

#### Custom Screens in Data Folder

Main Menu Data Folder

## Select Custom Screens and press

Available Custom Screens appear.

(Fee-based Custom Screen Indicators: see P.10-10)

To switch between handset and Memory Card, press 🖾 Options Select Change to Phone or Change to Memory Card ⇒ Press

## Select a Custom Screen and press

- Custom Screens with ps cannot be set.
- properties, change file names or copy/move to other folders (see P.9-6, P.9-8, P.9-9).

# 🙎 Press 🔳

Custom Screen is set and Data Folder (Custom Screens) returns.

- Note > Some Custom Screens may not contain files for Wallpaper, System Graphics, ringtones or ringvideos; default settings apply for these functions.
  - · Custom Screen setup may fail when battery is low or depending on content.
- Tip Once installed, Custom Screen remains active even after Memory Card is removed or replaced with another.

#### **Familiar Usability**

Download and install applications that load user interface themes based on previous SoftBank or other handsets. Download and install like Custom Screens (see P.10-10).

Familiar Usability does not completely remake 911SH.

#### **Downloading Familiar Usability**

Download Familiar Usability applications via the Internet.

Main Menu ► Data Folder → Custom Screens

## Select Download Familiar Usability and press

Handset connects to the Internet and Familiar Usability download site appears.

Follow onscreen instructions

#### **Familiar Usability Setup**

Download Familiar Usability application beforehand.

Main Menu ► Data Folder → Custom Screens

Select a Familiar Usability application and press 🔳

# Cancelling Familiar Usability ■ Press ■ → Press ☑ (メニュー) → Select 解除 → Press ■ Cancelling Familiar Usability Temporarily ■ Press ■ → Press ☑ (メニュー) → Select デ゙フォルトメニュー → Press ■

 Note 

 Activating Familiar Usability restores default Wallpaper, System Graphics, tones, etc. and cancels Simple Menu; cancelling Familiar Usability also returns these settings to their defaults.

> Familiar Usability does not support Font Settings (see P.10-4) or Language Setting (see P.10-9).

#### **Light Settings**

Backlight

Select Display and Keypad Backlight illumination time or Display Brightness

Default Time Out: 15 seconds, Brightness: Level 2 (Auto)

Main Menu

► Settings → Phone Settings ( → Display → Backlight

#### **Backlight Illumination Time**

Select *Time Out* → Press ■ → Select time → Press ■

To disable Backlight, choose *Off* in Time Out list → Press ■ Display Brightness

Select *Brightness* → Press ■ → Use ① to adjust level → Press ■

- To activate or cancel Automatic Sensor, press ☐ in Brightness window to check or uncheck Automatic Sensor.
  - Automatic Sensor is not selectable at Level 1.

Note When Automatic Sensor is active, handset Light Sensor detects ambient light level to adjust Display Brightness automatically. Brightness may take a moment to adjust immediately after opening handset or sudden changes in ambient light. Do not place labels or stickers over Light Sensor.

**Tip** ► Keypad light Brightness is fixed.

Display Savin

Select a period of inactivity after which Display turns off

Default 2 minutes

Main Menu

➤ Settings → Phone Settings ( → Display → Display Saving

#### Select a period Press ■

Fip Even when Display Saving is set to *Always On*, Display turns off automatically after five minutes of Call Time. To turn it back on, press a key other than .

## **External Display Settings**

Duration

Select active time for External Display

Default 15 seconds

Main Menu

► Settings → Phone Settings ( → Display → External Display → Duration

Select time **▶** Press ■

To disable External Display, choose Off → Press ■

LCD Contras

Adjust External Display Contrast from nine levels

Default Level 5

Main Menu

► Settings → Phone Settings ( Display → Display → LCD Contrast

Use 🚺 to adjust level ▶ Press 🔳

Display
Date & Time

Change External Display Clock view

Default Large Clock

Main Menu

➤ Settings → Phone Settings ( → Display → External Display → Display Date&Time

Select a type ▶ Press ■

 With handset closed, press • to toggle Clock view. (Display Date & Time setting is not affected.)

Caller Display

Show or hide caller's number or name on External Display

Default On

Main Menu

► Settings → Phone Settings ( → Display → External Display → Caller Display

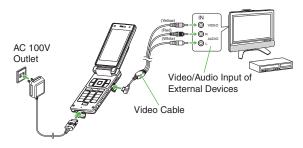
Choose On (show) or Off → Press ■

## **Viewing Images on External Devices**

Use optional Video Cable to connect handset to a TV, VCR, etc. to view images or exportable S! Applications saved on handset/Memory Card.

- Exportable Sources (some images and sounds will not play on external devices):
- S! Applications
   Images in Data Folder
- Video Player Video Call
- When Video Player, S! Applications or Video Call images are viewed on external devices, images do not appear on handset Display.
- Handset TV images are not exportable.
- Not available when handset is closed.

#### Connecting to External Devices



Observe the following when connecting TV, VCR, etc. and handset:

- Turn off the device before connecting/disconnecting Video Cable
- Connect Video Cable only to the video/audio inputs of the device and AV OUT Port of handset. Video Cable is designed exclusively for 911SH.
- Plug in firmly. To disconnect, grasp the plug and pull gently.
- Do not pull, twist or bend Video Cable to avoid damaging the cable and handset AV OUT Port.

#### **Activating Video Output**

- Connect handset to device before activating Video Output.
- Video Output is Off by default.
- While Video Output is in use, control the volume on the connected device (except for Video Calls). Turn down the volume before disconnecting from handset.

Main Menu

► Settings → Phone Settings ( → Display → Video Output → Switch On/Off

#### **1** Choose *On* and press ■

To cancel, choose Off ⇒ Press

#### 2 Open exportable images, video, etc.

- When exporting S! Application, video or Video Call images, press 
   □
   in to toggle display between device and handset.
  - Video restarts each time display is switched.
- Exiting Video Output:
  - Press (Video Calls end).
  - Alternatively, press for video.

#### **Switch Display Size**

■ Activate Video Output and follow these steps.
Select Display Size ⇒ Press ■ Select Standard
or Large ⇒ Press ■

#### **Rotate Image**

Activate Video Output and follow these steps.
 Select Rotation Setting → Press ■ Select from No Rotation to 180° → Press ■

 Pictures folder images, S! Applications and Video Call images cannot be rotated.

Note Images may be noisy or distorted depending on the device. Images may be cropped vertically when Display Size is Large.

**Tip** Battery drains faster when Video Output is in use.

# Selecting TV System

TV System is NTSC by default.

Main Menu

► Settings → Phone Settings ( D ) → Display → Video Output → TV System

#### 1 Select NTSC or PAL and press ■

Note Use NTSC in Japan. Outside Japan, select either according to available TV system.

# Sounds & Alerts

#### **Customising Handset Responses**

Volume

Set volume level for handset functions

Main Menu

Settings → Phone Settings (□) → Sounds & Alerts → Volume

Select an item → Press ■ → Use 🏵 to adjust level → Press ■

 Select from five levels. When *Increasing Volume* is set, volume increases every four seconds from Level 1 to Level 5.
 *Increasing Volume* is not available for *General Volume*. Ringtone/

Set ringtones or ringvideos for incoming communications

Main Menu

► Settings → Phone Settings ( → ) → Sounds & Alerts → Ringtone/videos

#### **Assign Tone in Preset Sounds**

Select For Voice Call, For Video Call or Circle Talk →
Press ■ → Select Preset Sounds → Press ■ →
Select a tone → Press ■

- For items other than For Voice Call, For Video Call or Circle Talk, select Assign Tone Press Select Preset Sounds Press Select a tone Press Tournes Press Pr
- To play tones, select one and press 🖾 Play.
  - Press 
    Stop to stop.

**Assign Tone in Data Folder** 

Select For Voice Call, For Video Call or Circle Talk →
Press ■ → Select Ring Songs·Tones or Music →
Press ■ → Select a file → Press ■

- For items other than For Voice Call or For Video Call, select Assign Tone → Press → Select Ring Songs-Tones or Music → Press → Select a file → Press ■
- To play files, select one and press 🛂 Play.
- Press to stop.

#### Assign Video or Flash® Ringtone

Select For Voice Call or For Video Call → Press ■ →
Select Videos or Flash® Ringtones → Press ■ →
Select a file → Press ■

- For For New Message or Delivery Report, select Assign Tone → Press → Select Videos or Flash® Ringtones → Press → Select a file → Press →
- To play files, select one and press 🗹 Play.
  - Press to stop.

#### **Duration (Not Available for Calls or Circle Talk)**

Select an item other than For Voice Call, For Video Call or Circle Talk → Press ■ → Select Duration → Press ■ Descende Press ■ Press ■

#### Restoring Custom Screen Ringtone/Ringvideo

When ringtone/ringvideo is set while Custom Screen is active, ringtone/ringvideo takes priority over Custom Screen ringtone/ringvideo. (Custom Screen remains active.) To restore Custom Screen ringtone/ringvideo, select *Custom* **Screen** instead of **Preset Sounds**, etc. and press

- Note Some files may not be usable.
  - Default ringtone/ringvideo may sound/play for Voice Calls when recording TV programs, downloading files, streaming, etc.
  - S! Application set as Screensaver that also responds to incoming communications may take priority.
  - Video files over 3 MB and 3GPP video cannot be set as rinavideo.

Handset vibrates for incoming communications

Default Off

Main Menu

► Settings → Phone Settings ( → ) → Sounds & Alerts Vibration

#### Activating/Deactivating

Select an item 

Press 

Select Switch On/Off Press ■ Select On. Link to Sound or Off > Press

• Link to Sound: Handset vibrates only when ringtone is a compatible SMAF file.

#### **Vibration Pattern**

Select an item 

Press 

Select Vibration Pattern → Press ■ → Select from Pattern 1 to Pattern 5 

◆ Press 

■

- To check vibration patterns, select one and press ☑ Check .
- Press 🖾 Stop to stop.

Disable vibration when charging.

**Event Light** 

Set Small Light illumination for incoming communications

DefaultOn (Live Monitor: Off), Light Colour: Green

Main Menu

► Settings → Phone Settings ( → Sounds & Alerts → Event Light

#### **Activating/Deactivating**

Select an item → Press ■ → Select Switch On/Off → Press ■ → Select On, Link to Sound or Off →

Press <a>
</a>

 Link to Sound: Small Light flashes only when ringtone is a compatible SMAF file.

#### **Selecting Light Colour**

Select an item → Press ■ → Select Light Colour → Press ■ → Select a colour → Press ■

\_\_\_\_\_

Set Small Light illumination for missed incoming communications

Main Menu

➤ Settings → Phone Settings ( ) → Sounds & Alerts → Status Light

#### **Activating/Deactivating**

Select an item → Press ■ → Select Switch On/Off

▶ Press ■ ♦ Choose On or Off ♦ Press ■

**Selecting Light Colour** 

Select an item → Press ■ → Select Light Colour →

Press ■ → Select a colour → Press ■

Default Settings:

	Switch On/Off	Light Colour
For Missed Call	On	Blue
For New Message	On	Green
Hot Status	Off	Light Blue
For Answer Phone	Off	White
out Missed Calls	On	Blue
Bluetooth Notif.	Off	Yellow
Delivery Report	Off	Green

### **Customising System Sounds**

**Keypad Tones** 

A tone sounds when a key is pressed

Default Touch Tone

Main Menu

► Settings → Phone Settings ( → Sounds & Alerts → System Sounds → Keypad Tones

#### **Assign Touch Tone**

Select Touch Tone → Press ■

Assign a Pattern

Select Pattern 1, Pattern 2 or Pattern 3 → Press ■

To check patterns, select one and press Play.

■ Press 🖾 Stop to stop.

Disable Keypad Tone

Choose Off 

◆ Press

**Default** Xylophone

Main Menu

► Settings → Phone Settings ( → Sounds & Alerts → System Sounds → Circle Talk

#### Select a tone ◆ Press

 Earpiece Volume applies to tones during Circle Talk. (Volume setting on P.10-16 applies to Circle Talk ringtones.)

Other Systen Sounds Select tones for errors, power on/off, handset open/close, or charging completion; set duration

Power On/Off Sound: (0.5 seconds)
Power On/Off Sound: Off (3 seconds)
Handset Open: Sound Effect 14 (1 second)
Handset Close: Sound Effect 15 (1 second)
Charge Full: Off (2 seconds)

Main Menu

► Settings → Phone Settings ( → Sounds & Alerts → System Sounds

Sound Patterns in Preset Sounds

Select an item → Press ■ → Select Tone or Sound → Press ■ → Select Preset Sounds → Press ■ → Select a tone → Press ■

To play tones, select one and press Play.

■ Press Stop to stop.

Sound Patterns in Data Folder

Select an item → Press ■ → Select *Tone* or *Sound*→ Press ■ → Select *Ring Songs Tones* → Press ■

Select a file → Press

To play files, select one and press 🛂 Play.

■ Press to stop.

#### Duration

Select an item → Press ■ → Select *Duration* → Press ■ → Select/enter time → Press ■

**Disable Tone** 

Select an item → Press ■ → Select *Tone* or *Sound* → Press ■ → Choose *Off* → Press ■

W.V.Jonhono

Main Menu 

► Settings → Phone Settings ( ) → Sounds & Alerts → Surround

Activate or deactivate Speaker surround

Select On, Link to Sound or Off → Press ■

#### **Additional Sound Settings**

Ringer Output Se

Set ringer source when using Headphones, etc.

Default Earphone/Speaker

Main Menu ► Settings → Phone Settings ( → ) → Ringer Output

### Select Earphone or Earphone/Speaker ▶ Press ■

 Even if *Earphone* is selected, ringtone sounds from Speaker when Headphones are not connected.

Earpiece Volume

Setting applies when placing/answering calls

Default Level 3

Main Menu

➤ Settings → Phone Settings ( → ) → Earpiece Volume

Use **!** to adjust level **▶** Press ■

Any Ke

Activate or cancel Any Key Answer (see P.2-6)

**Default**Off

Main Menu

► Settings → Phone Settings ( → ) → Sounds & Alerts → Any Key Answer

Choose On or Off ⇒ Press ■

10

**Additional Settings** 

## Date & Time

See indicated pages for these items.

See P.12-14 See P.12-11 World Clock Alarm

Set the date and time

► Settings → Phone Settings (•••) → Date & Time Main Menu 

#### When Time Format is 24 Hour

Enter the year ▶ Enter the month ▶ Enter the day ▶ Enter the time **→** Press ■

#### When Time Format is 12 Hour

Enter the year ▶ Enter the month ▶ Enter the day ▶ Enter the time 

Use 

to select am or pm 

■ Press

- Note Entry order varies by Date Format (see right). Use the letters below the entry fields as a guide.
  - When removing the battery for replacement, etc., Clock settings remain. However, should the handset go without power for an extended period of time (approximately three days). Clock will need to be reset.

- Tip The day of the week is set automatically.
  - When Clock has not been set, --/--- appears for date and time in Call Log, etc.
  - To correct numbers, use to move cursor and re-enter digits.
  - Choose a Clock type or use Calendar for Standby (see P.10-5).

Change Time Zone or activate Daylight Saving

Default Time Zone: Tokyo, Daylight Saving: Off

Main Menu Settings → Phone Settings (•••) → Date & Time

#### **Time Zone**

Select Set Time Zone → Press ■ → Use 🕞 to select a Time Zone ▶ Press ■

If your zone is not preset, press ☑ Custom → Enter city name (up to 16 characters) → Press ■ → Use 🗓 to select + or - → Press → Enter time difference → Press →

#### **Daylight Saving**

Select Daylight Saving → Press ■ → Choose On → Press

- To cancel, select **Daylight Saving** → Press Choose Off ⇒ Press ■
- Activate Daylight Saving to advance handset local time by one hour.

Change date/time format

Default Time Format: 24 Hour, Date Format: Y/M/D

Main Menu Settings → Phone Settings ( → ) → Date & Time

#### Time Format

Select Time Format → Press ■ → Select 24 Hour or 12 Hour ⇒ Press ■

#### **Date Format**

Select Date Format → Press ■ → Select D.M.Y. M-D-Y or Y/M/D ⇒ Press ■

Calenda Format Select whether to start the week on Sunday or Monday

Default Sunday-Saturday

Main Menu

▶ Settings ⇒ Phone Settings (□) ⇒ Date & Time
⇒ Calendar Format

Select Sunday-Saturday or Monday-Sunday 

▶ Press ■

# **User Dictionary**

#### **Entries (Japanese Only)**

Save frequently used words/phrases. Assign a reading (keyword) in hiragana to each entry. In text entry windows, enter a reading and convert. Saved words/phrases appear among word suggestions.

- Save up to 100 entries.
- Save up to five words/phrases per reading.

**New Entry** 

Save words/phrases to User Dictionary

Main Menu

► Settings → Phone Settings (••) → User Dictionary → New Entry

Enter a word/phrase → Press ■ → Enter a reading (keyword) → Press ■

- Enter up to 15 characters per word/phrase and eight characters in hiragana per reading.
  - Alternatively, in other text entry windows, press ☐ OPTIONS → Select Add to Dictionary → Press ☐ → Select the first character of text → Press ☐ → Select the end point → Press ☐ → Press

Edit/Delete

Edit or delete entries

Main Menu

► Settings → Phone Settings (•••) → User Dictionary → Saved Word List

#### **Edit**

Select a word/phrase → Press ■ → Edit the word/ phrase → Press ■ → Edit reading → Press ■ → Choose Yes → Press ■

#### **Delete**

Select a work/phrase → Press ☑ Delete → Choose Yes → Press ■

#### 911SH Download Dictionary (Japanese Only)

Download specialised 911SH Download Dictionaries from Sharp Space Town Mobile Internet site (see **P.15-9**). Activate up to five dictionaries at one time to improve handset character conversion. Dictionary words appear among word suggestions.

Acquire Dictionary

Activate downloaded dictionary

Main Menu

► Settings ► Phone Settings ( → ) ► User Dictionary ► Acquire Dictionary

Select from *Dictionary 1* to *Dictionary 5* → Press ■

Select a dictionary → Press ■

- To replace dictionaries, select one and press → Select a dictionary → Press ■
- **Note** Some dictionary files may not be usable.

Cancel Cancel dictionary

Main Menu 

Settings → Phone Settings (⋈) → User Dictionary → Acquire Dictionary

Select a dictionary → Press ☑ ①tions → Select Cancel → Press ■

Info 

View dictionary information

Main Menu 

Settings → Phone Settings (⋈) → User Dictionary → Acquire Dictionary

Select a dictionary → Press ☑ ①tions → Select Info → Press ■

Press ■ to return.

# **Handset Security**

#### **Face Recognition**

Activate to automatically lock handset when it is turned on, opened in Standby, or whenever Display is refreshed after Display Saving time, etc. Match live face image with saved one to unlock. When another function is active, etc., Face Recognition window may not open right away. Cancel the function to open Face Recognition window.

Precautions for capturing portrait/scanning face:

- Make sure your face is clearly visible; facial features may be obscured by hair, coloured glasses, masks, etc.
- Face should be lit evenly and brightly (avoid backlight and strong light).

Note

- Identification accuracy is not guaranteed. SoftBank cannot be held liable for misuse or any damages associated with the use of Face Recognition.
- Handset Code is required to activate/cancel Face Recognition. Changing the code (see P.10-29) helps enhance security.
- S! FeliCa is available even when Face Recognition is active.

#### Saving User Information

Save a name and portrait as well as a question and an answer to the question. In case recognition fails, enter the answer to unlock handset.

- Save up to five users (with up to five portraits each).
- If no question or answer is saved, enter Handset Code to unlock handset.

Settings → Phone Settings ( Locks → Face Main Menu Recognition > User Registration

Enter Handset Code and press

Select from *User 1* to *User 5* and press ■

- To edit user information, select a user 🖈 Press 🔳
- To delete users, select one ▶ Press 🖾 Delete ▶ Choose Yes ⇒ Press ■
- Select *User Name:* and press
- Enter name and press
- Select Register Riddle: and press
- Enter a question and press
- Select Register Answer: and press
- 🎗 Enter the answer and press 🔳
  - Capture and save portrait if not already saved (see right).
- Q Press 🔀 Save to save

#### Saving Portraits

Save up to five portraits per user. Change location, face angle, accessory, brightness, etc. for each shot.

Saving multiple portraits increases recognition accuracy. However, security will be compromised.

- A person's portraits can be saved to multiple users; this may increase recognition accuracy.
- Look straight into lens and frame whole face with no expression; adjust face size (may not be saved if too small). Stay still until shooting is completed.
- Follow these steps after Step 8 on the left.
- Select Face Image: and press
- Select from *Image 1* to *Image 5* and press □ Capture To overwrite saved portrait, choose **Yes** → Press
  - To delete portraits, select one → Press ☑ Delete → Choose Yes ⇒ Press ■
  - Deleting all portraits cancels Face Recognition.
- Frame your face on Display and press
  - · Stay still until shooting is completed.
  - If Cannot Register. Please change the shooting condition. appears, start over from Step 2.

# 4 Press ☑ Yes

Portrait is saved.

- To save more, repeat Steps 2 4.
- To save user information, press then Y Save.

Note Do not wear a mask when capturing portraits, even for use with Low(Mask) (see P.10-25 "Security Level").

#### **Activating & Cancelling**

- · Save a user beforehand.
- Face Recognition is Off by default.

Main Menu

► Settings → Phone Settings ( Locks → Face Recognition → Switch On/Off

1 Choose On or Off and press

2 Enter Handset Code and press

Tip ► Activate to automatically lock handset when it is turned on, opened in Standby, or whenever Display is refreshed after Display Saving time, etc.

#### Scanning Face

Face Recognition window opens when handset is turned on, opened in Standby, or whenever Display is refreshed after Display Saving time, etc.

 Clean dust/smudges from lens cover of Internal Camera with a soft cloth before use.  When another function is active, etc., Face Recognition window may not open right away. Cancel the function to open Face Recognition window.

#### **1** Face the Display

- To show operational tips, select *Panda* in Conductor Setting (see P.10-25).
- Handset is unlocked when your face matches saved portrait.

#### When Face Recognition Fails

Under Pwd Key Lock. appears. Follow these steps to unlock handset.

Press ■ ▶ Enter Handset Code ▶ Press ■

- To retry Face Recognition, press Recog.
- When saved question appears, press ■, enter the answer and press ■.
  - If the answer is incorrect, *Collate failure*. appears. Press
     to re-enter the answer, or follow these steps to unlock handset.

Press 

Press 

Press 

Enter Handset Code 

Press 

Pres

- While handset is locked, press 🖭 to open contact information.
  - Save contact information first (see P.10-25 "Report").
- Handset may lock without starting Face Recognition (TV is active, etc.). To unlock, enter Handset Code and press ■.

Tip When wearing a mask, set Security Level (see right) to Low(Mask) to make your face recognisable. However, security will be compromised.

#### **Face Recognition Settings**

Conductor Show or hide operational tips during recognition

**Default**Off

# Select Off, Preview, Panda or Custom Screen ▶ Press ■

Off	Under Face Recognition. Please wait appears.
Preview	Internal Camera Viewfinder appears as a guide
Panda	Panda graphic appears with operational tips
Custom Screen	Custom Screen (see <b>P.10-10</b> ) graphic-based guidance appears

	Security Level Se		elect accuracy level	
			<b>D</b> efault Normal	
Main	Main Menu    Settings → Phone Settings ( ) → Locks → Face Recognition → Security Level			
Se	Select High, Normal, Low or Low(Mask) ⇒ Press ■			
	High		Unsaved faces are least likely recognised by mistake; your face may be hard to recognise	
	Normal		Standard recognition accuracy	
	Low		Your face is most recognisable; unsaved faces are most likely recognised by mistake	
	Low		Handset recognises faces with masks.	

Report

Save contact information to open when Face Recognition fails (see P.10-24)

Main Menu

Settings → Phone Settings ( → ) → Locks → Face

(Accuracy is equal to that of **Low**.)

Enter Handset Code → Press ■ → Enter contact information → Press ■

• Enter up to 128 characters.

Recognition 

→ Report

(Mask)

#### PIN

For more information on PIN, see P.1-6.

PIN Entry

Select whether to require PIN every time handset is turned on (with USIM Card inserted)

**Default**Off

Main Menu

► Settings → Phone Settings ( Locks → PIN Entry → Switch On/Off

Choose On or Off → Press ■ → Enter PIN1 → Press ■

#### **PIN Lock**

■ PIN1 Lock or PIN2 Lock is activated if PIN1 or PIN2 is incorrectly entered three times consecutively. To cancel PIN1 Lock or PIN2 Lock, follow these steps.

Open a function requiring PIN1 or PIN2 → Enter
Personal Unblocking Key (PUK Code) → Press ■
→ Enter new PIN1 or PIN2 → Press ■ → Re-enter
PIN1 or PIN2 → Press ■

- For information on Personal Unblocking Key (PUK Code), contact SoftBank Customer Centre, General Information (see P.20-28).
- If PUK Code is incorrectly entered ten times, USIM Card is locked. (Count continues even if handset power is turned off.)
- For procedures required to unlock USIM Card, contact SoftBank Customer Centre, General Information (see P.20-28).





Activating Lock when Handset is Closed
Select Auto ⇒ Press ■ ⇒ Enter Handset Code ⇒
Press ■

**One Time Lock** 

Select *Once* → Press ■ → Enter Handset Code → Press ■

• Password Lock is cancelled once handset is unlocked.

#### **Activating Lock when Handset is Turned On**

Select *At Power On* → Press ■ → Enter Handset Code → Press ■

#### Cancelling

Choose *Off* ⇒ Press ■ ⇒ Enter Handset Code ⇒ Press ■

Tip Password Lock remains active even if handset power is deactivated, then reactivated.

#### When Password Lock is Active

- In Standby, press ⑤ for 2+ seconds to deactivate handset power, for 1+ seconds to activate/cancel Keypad Lock, ①?? ⑤... to enter Handset Code or ⑥... to edit Handset Code entry
- During a call, press ③ to end the call, press ⑤ to show Options, to toggle Loudspeaker on/off or switch Video Call images, ☑ to mute/unmute Microphone, ② to switch between callers in Call Waiting, ⑥ ⑨ to enter Handset Code or to edit Handset Code entry.
- When a call arrives, press ☑ to show Options. Answer calls by pressing ②, or keys for Any Key Answer (see **P.2-6**), or place callers on hold by pressing ③. Press ☑ to forward incoming calls (when *No Answer* is set for Diverts).

Note Emergency calls (110, etc.) are possible even when Password Lock is active. See P.2-3 "Emergency Calls".

IP Service

Enable or disable Hot Status and Circle Talk

**Default**On

Main Menu

► Settings → Phone Settings ( Locks → IP Service Setting

# Choose *On* (enable) or *Off* → Enter Handset Code → Press ■

Phone Book Lock Protect Phone Book entries from accidental alteration and restrict access to Phone Book information

**Default**Off

Main Menu

► Settings → Phone Settings ( Locks → Phone Book Lock

# Choose On → Press ■ → Enter Handset Code → Press ■

- To cancel, choose Off → Press → Enter Handset Code → Press ■
- Enter Handset Code to temporarily cancel Phone Book Lock to access Phone Book entries.

Note When Phone Book Lock is active, the following Phone Book operations are disabled:

 Searching, saving, editing and dialling, including Speed Dial (see P.4-14).

Fixed Dialling No

Allow calls only to designated numbers

Main Menu

► Settings → Phone Settings ( ) → Locks → Restrict Modes → Fixed Dialling No.

#### **Activating/Cancelling Fixed Dialling No.**

Select Switch On/Off → Press ■ → Choose On → Press ■

- Choose Yes → Press → Enter PIN2 → Press
  - To cancel, choose Off ⇒ Press ⇒ Enter PIN2 ⇒ Press ■

#### **Designating Numbers**

Select Edit Dial List → Press ■ → Select a list → Press ■ → Enter PIN2 → Press ■ → Select an entry → Press ■ → Edit entry → Press ■ → Press ▼ Save

#### **Editing Lists**

Select Edit Dial List → Press ■ → Select a list → Press ☑ Options → Select Edit → Press ■ → Enter PIN2 → Press ■ → Select an entry → Press ■ → Edit entry → Press ■ → Press ☑ Save

#### **Deleting Lists**

Select Edit Dial List → Press ■ → Select a list → Press ☑ Options → Select Delete → Press ■ → Enter PIN2 → Press ■ → Choose Yes → Press ■

Note This function is available only for compatible USIM Cards.

 To send SMS to designated numbers, save SMS Centre Number (+819066519300) to Fixed Dialling No. list. (Do not change Centre Number unless instructed to do so.)

Packet Lock Disable packet transmissions

Default Off

Main Menu

Restrict Modes Packet Lock

Settings → Phone Settings (••) → Locks →

Choose *On* → Press ■ → Choose *Yes* → Press ■ → Enter PIN2 → Press ■

To cancel, choose *Off* → Press ■ → Enter PIN2 → Press ■

**Note** This function is available only for compatible USIM Cards.

#### **Opening Secret Entries**

Activate Show Secret Data to open Secret entries.

Show Secret Data

Activate or cancel Show Secret Data

Default Off

Main Menu

▶ Settings ⇒ Phone Settings ( Locks ⇒ Show Secret Data

Choose *On* → Press ■ → Enter Handset Code → Press ■

To cancel, choose Off ⇒ Press

Note Do not save confidential information in Phone Book/ schedule entries. Handset Code and thus Secret entries may be compromised.

#### When Show Secret Data is Off

■ Phone Book Names/Picture images do not appear for calls/ mail from numbers/addresses in Secret entries. Personal ringtones/ringvideos are disabled. Names for numbers in Secret entries do not appear in Call Log or list of received messages.

#### **Changing Handset Code**

Whenever necessary, change Handset Code

Default 9999

Main Menu

► Settings → Phone Settings ( Locks → Chng Handset Code

Enter current Handset Code → Press ■ → Enter new Handset Code → Press ■ → Re-enter new Handset Code 

◆ Press 

■

## Reset

Cancel custom settings and return handset functions to their default settings

Main Menu

Settings → Phone Settings ( → ) → Master Reset Reset Settings

Enter Handset Code → Press ■ → Choose Yes → 

- Phone Book entries are unaffected
- A confirmation appears (before entering Handset Code) in the following cases. Choose **Yes** and press to proceed.
  - S! Application is active
     Music Player is active
  - Bluetooth® is active
- Infrared is active

Note Some default settings may not be restored.

Clear all Phone Book entries. Data Folder files. etc.

Main Menu

Settings → Phone Settings ( → ) → Master Reset Reset All

Enter Handset Code → Press ■ → Choose Yes → Press ■ → Choose Yes → Press ■

- A confirmation appears (before entering Handset Code) in the following cases. Choose **Yes** and press to proceed.

  - S! Application is active Music Player is active
  - Bluetooth® is active
- Infrared is active

- Note Files and records deleted by Reset All cannot be restored. Handset Code returns to the default setting. Reset All deletes downloaded S! Applications and Lifestyle-Appli.
  - カスタモご紹介(臺) in Data Folder (Custom Screens) and S! Applications are restored.
  - Reset All is disabled if IC Card (see P.17-2) data remains. Delete IC Card data beforehand.

# Call Settings

See indicated pages for these items.

Voicemail/Divert	See P.13-4, P.13-2	Show My Number	See <b>P.13-10</b>
Call Waiting	See <b>P.13-5</b>	Call Barring	See <b>P.13-7</b>

#### **International Call**

Int'l Prefix Save frequently used international prefix

Default 0046010

Main Menu 

Settings → Call/Video Call (□) → Int'l Calling → Int'l Prefix

Enter Handset Code → Press ■ → Enter a prefix → Press ■

Country Codes Change, add or delete Country Codes

Main Menu 

Settings 

Call/Video Call (□) 

Int'l Calling 

Country Codes

#### Change

Select a country → Press ■ → Select Change → Press ■ → Enter country name → Press ■ → Enter country code → Press ■

#### Add

Select <*empty*> → Press ■ → Enter country name → Press ■ → Enter country code → Press ■

Delete

Select a country → Press ■ → Select Delete → Press ■ → Choose Yes → Press ■

#### **Auto Answer**

Set handset to answer Voice Calls automatically when using Headphones or handsfree devices.

When Auto Answer is active, Auto Answer tone sounds after ringtone (even in Manner mode).

- To avoid unintentional activation, cancel Auto Answer after use.
- Handsfree device Auto Answer tone varies by device.
- Ringtone/Auto Answer Tone Availability:

	Handset	Headphones	Handsfree Devices
Ringtone	Available*	Available	Available
Auto Answer Tone	Available	Available	N/A

\*Not available in Manner mode.

Tip To set handset to answer Video Calls automatically, see P.5-8 "Remote Monitor".

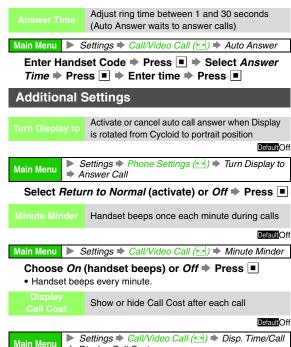
Switch On/Off Activate or cancel Auto Answer

Main Menu ► Settings ► Call/Video Call (••) ► Auto Answer

**Default**Off

Enter Handset Code ⇒ Press ■ ⇒ Select Switch

On/Off ⇒ Press ■ ⇒ Choose On or Off ⇒ Press ■



Display Call Cost Choose On (show) or Off → Press ■



Connectivity

# Bluetooth®

#### **Getting Started**

Bluetooth® is a wireless technology that allows 911SH to communicate with other 911SH within ten metres or with other compatible devices (PCs, mobile phones, handsfree devices, etc.). In this chapter, "files" refers collectively to the following: Bookmarks, Tasks, Text Templates, Phone Book and Calendar entries; Messaging and Data Folder files.

Handset Bluetooth® Specifications:

Communication System	Bluetooth® specification Ver 2.0	
Bluetooth <sup>®</sup> Profiles Supported	Headset Profile Hands-Free Profile Dial-up Networking Profile ObjectPush Profile File Transfer Profile Basic Imaging Profile	
Output	Bluetooth® Power Class 2	

# Note Bluetooth® connection may not be possible with some Bluetooth® devices.

- Handset shall be connected to certified Bluetooth<sup>®</sup> devices that meet the specification standards developed by Bluetooth SIG.
- Depending on characteristics or specifications of the certified Bluetooth<sup>®</sup> devices, connection or data transfers may fail, or operational procedures, display content and actual operations may differ from those described in this manual.
- Noise may interfere with wireless or handsfree conversations depending on the status of connected devices or signal conditions.
- For details about headset/handsfree devices, see the device manuals.

#### Precautions

- Bluetooth<sup>®</sup> connections are available with compatible devices supporting the same profile.
- Bring handsets to within ten metres. Bluetooth<sup>®</sup> connection/ transfer rate is affected by distance between handsets, obstructions, signal conditions, handset status, etc.
- Bluetooth® operates in the 2.4 GHz unlicensed frequency band. Depending on the status of other devices used in the spectrum, Bluetooth® connection may slow down/terminate, or the range may decrease.

#### Activating Bluetooth®

Activate Bluetooth® before receiving files or connecting handset to handsfree devices.

Bluetooth® is Off by default.

Main Menu Switch

► Settings → Connectivity ( → Bluetooth → Switch On/Off

#### **1** Choose *On* and press **■**

- appears.
- To cancel, choose Off → Press
  - When transmission is in progress, choose *Yes* → Press ■

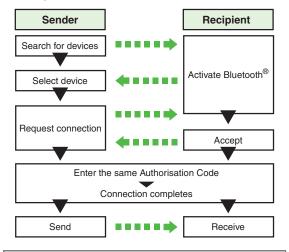
#### Note >

Handset must be in Standby to accept connection requests from other devices or to receive files; these functions are disabled even in Standby if Password Lock/ Keypad Lock is active or firmware update is in progress.

#### Bluetooth® Connection

Activate Bluetooth® (see **P.11-2**) on recipient device. Connection starts when a request is received from the other device. (Authorisation Code may be required.)

#### Example



#### **Authorisation Code**

- Authorisation Codes (4 to 16 digits) are specific for Bluetooth® connection. Pairing is possible when Authorisation Codes of both devices match.
  - Authorisation Codes are not necessary for paired devices.

#### Device Search & Pairing

Search for Bluetooth® devices for pairing.

- Authorisation Codes are not necessary for paired devices.
- Search for up to 16 devices at a time.
- Device search is disabled if 32 devices are already registered.
- Activate Bluetooth® on devices to be paired with.



#### **1** Select Search for Devices and press ■

Found devices are listed after search. (The previous search result appears, if any.)

- Device Indicators:
  - ⊒: PC

- ⊕: Wireless headset ☐: PDA
- 🖺 : Mobile phone
- \_ . .
- 🖶: Printer

- Press 🛂 Cancel to cancel.
- 2 Select a device and press 🔳 Pairing
  - When transmission is in progress, choose *Yes* ▶ Press ■
- 3 Enter the same Authorisation Code (4 to 16 digits) for handset and the other device and press ■

When pairing is complete, *Pairing is successful.* appears.

- For handsfree devices, enter specified Authorisation Code.
- Complete code entry within 30 seconds.
- 4 Press ■

#### Pairing with Handsfree Devices

- Start device search with handsfree devices for pairing. Handset receives a connection request 

  ◆ Choose Yes → Press ■ → Enter Authorisation Code → Press ■
  - Activate Bluetooth® (see P.11-2) on handset and set Visibility (see below) to Show My Phone.

#### **Opening Paired Device List**

Main Menu ► Settings ► Connectivity ( → Bluetooth

Select Paired Devices and press

List of all paired devices appears.

- To open list of handsfree devices only, press .
- To rename paired devices, select one → Press 🖾 Options → Select *Change Name* → Press ■ → Enter name (up to 16 characters) → Press ■
- To delete paired devices, select one ▶ Press 🖾 Options ▶

#### Visibility

Make handset visible to other Bluetooth® devices.

- Set Visibility to Hide My Phone to cloak handset.
- Visibility is set to **Show My Phone** by default.

Settings ⇒ Connectivity (•••) ⇒ Bluetooth ⇒ Main Menu 

Choose Show My Phone or Hide My Phone and press 🔳

#### Transferring Files via Bluetooth®

#### **Transfer Options**

One File Transfer Transfer files one at a time. Received files are saved to corresponding functions.			
All File Transfer	Transfer all files by function		
Receive Folder	Receive a folder and its contents. Folders are saved to Data Folder. (Handset does not support sending folders.)		

- Infrared and Bluetooth® transfers activate Offline Mode. Thus, transfers are disabled during calls, while receiving calls/messages, using the Internet or Media Player, or editing mail, etc. Offline Mode is cancelled after transfers.
  - · Some files may not be saved correctly.

#### Transferable Files

Function	One File	All Files	Notes
Phone Book	Available	Available	One File Transfer omits Category, Tone/Video, Vibration and Secret. Picture may be omitted; transfer image alone then reset as Picture.

Function	One File	All Files	Notes
Calendar	Available	Available <sup>1</sup>	One File Transfer resets Reminder Tone/Video to Alert 1 and omits Secret setting. Received entries with unsetable start date/time (0:00 AM on 1 January 2016 or later) cannot be saved.
Tasks	Available	Available <sup>1</sup>	One File Transfer resets Reminder Tone/Video to Alert 1 and omits Secret setting. Received entries with unsetable due date/time (0:00 AM on 1 January 2016 or later) are saved as <i>No limit</i> .
Text Templates	Available <sup>2</sup>	Available	
Bookmarks	Available	Available <sup>3</sup>	
Received Msg.	N/A <sup>4</sup>	Available <sup>5</sup>	
Sent Messages	N/A <sup>4</sup>	Available	
Drafts	N/A <sup>4</sup>	Available <sup>6</sup>	
Templates	Available	Available <sup>7</sup>	Copy protected files are not transferable.
Data Folder	Available	Available <sup>7</sup>	Copy protected files are not transferable. Send files from DCIM folder one at a time; received DCIM folder files are saved to Pictures folder.

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>1</sup>In All File Transfers, Calendar and Tasks are sent together from Appointments/Tasks.

- Note Handset stores up to 300 entries between Calendar and Tasks. If the limit is reached during a transfer, the remaining entries will not be received.
  - Transfer most Memory Card Data Folder files one at a time. Send DCIM folder files one by one; received DCIM files are automatically saved in Pictures folder.
  - · Unsent Messages are not transferable.
  - Messages may not be received depending on the size.
  - Large Bookmarks may not be received correctly.
  - Handset stores up to 500 messages between Drafts. Unsent Messages and Sent Messages. If the limit is reached during a transfer, the remaining messages will not be received
  - · Sky Mail may be received as S! Mail on handset depending on the sender SoftBank handset.
  - Receiving Messaging folders cancels Secret folder settings and deletes auto sort keys.

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>2</sup>Only receiving files is supported.

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>3</sup>All File Transfers send all Yahoo! Keitai, Streaming and PC Site Browser Bookmarks; Streaming Bookmarks are saved in Yahoo! Keitai Bookmarks.

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>4</sup>Received files are saved to Other Documents folder as unknown files and cannot be used as messages.

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>5</sup>All File Transfers save Spam Folder messages to the incoming message folder on recipient SoftBank handsets (except 911SH) and S! Mail Notices as standard messages, invalidating complete message retrieval.

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>6</sup>In All File Transfers, SMS addressed to multiple recipients may not be saved on recipient SoftBank handsets (except 911SH), or only the first entered recipient remains.

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>7</sup>Receive folders one at a time into handset Data Folder.

#### One File Transfer

#### Sendina

Send one file from Phone Book, Calendar, Tasks, Bookmarks, Templates or Data Folder (see P.11-4 "Transferable Files").

- Select a file and press 
  ☐ Options
- Select Send, Send Entry or Send My Card and press 🔳
- Select Via Bluetooth and press
  - When there is no entry in Paired Devices, device search starts
  - To send files to unpaired devices, select *More Devices* Press 

    Press
- Select a device and press
  - When transmission is in progress, choose *Yes* ▶ Press ■
- Prepare recipient device
- Choose Yes and press

Offline Mode is set and transfer starts

When requested, enter Authorisation Code ▶ Press 🔳

#### Receiving

Settings ⇒ Connectivity ( → ) ⇒ Bluetooth ⇒ Main Menu Switch On/Off

Choose *On* and press ■ Bluetooth® is activated.

- When connection is requested, Calling not available during operation, OK? appears
  - To accept connection request from unpaired devices, choose Yes → Press ■ → Enter Authorisation Code → Press ■
- Choose *Yes* and press ■

Offline Mode is set.

- ▲ Transfer starts and confirmation appears
  - Press [37] Cancel to cancel.
  - Press 🔂 to end.
- Choose *Yes* and press to save
  - To cancel transfer, choose **No** → Press → Choose **Yes** → Press
  - For Data Folder files, select **Phone** or **Memory Card** Press

#### **All File Transfer**

#### Sending

Main Menu ► Settings → Connectivity (•••) → Bluetooth

#### 1 Select Send All and press ■

- When there is no entry in Paired Devices, device search starts.
- To send files to unpaired devices, select *More Devices* ⇒ Press Press Press Refresh ⇒ Device search starts
- 2 Select a device and press
  - When transmission is in progress, choose Yes Press
- 3 Choose Yes and press
  - Offline Mode is set.
- 4 Enter Handset Code and press 🔳
- 5 Prepare recipient device
- 6 Select an item and press

Transfer starts.

- When requested, enter Authorisation Code ⇒ Press ■
- For Phone Book, choose Yes or No ⇒ Press

#### Receiving

1 Choose *On* and press

Bluetooth® is activated.

- 2 When connection is requested, Calling not available during operation, OK? appears
  - To accept connection request from unpaired devices, choose

    Yes → Press → Enter Authorisation Code → Press →
- $oldsymbol{3}$  Choose *Yes* and press lacksquare

Offline Mode is set.

- 4 Transfer starts and confirmation appears
  - Press 🛂 Cancel to cancel.
  - Press 🕤 to end.

# **5** Adding Files

■ Select As New Items and press

When transfer completes, handset returns to Standby.

- Press 🗹 Cancel to cancel.
- Press 📵 to end.

#### **Overwriting Existing Files**

- Select Delete All & Save and press ■
- 2 Choose Yes and press ■
- Enter Handset Code and press

When transfer completes, handset returns to Standby.

- When Phone Book is overwritten, My Details except handset phone number is overwritten as well.
- Press 🗹 Cancel to cancel.
- Press 🗟 to end.

#### R

#### **Receiving Folders**

Receive folders from compatible devices and save to handset Data Folder.

- Handset does not support sending folders.
- Handset receives folders when it can newly create a folder, or the same folder name exists in the same layer as that of sender's.
- For sender's procedures, see the device manual.
- **1** Choose *On* and press 

  Bluetooth® is activated
- 2 When connection is requested, Calling not available during operation, OK? appears
  - To accept connection request from unpaired devices, choose
    Yes → Press → Enter Authorisation Code → Press ■
- 3 Choose Yes and press ■

Offline Mode is set and transfer starts. When finished, handset returns to Standby.

- Press [37] Cancel to cancel.
- Press ि to end.

#### **Connecting Handsfree Devices**

Pair with handsfree devices beforehand (see P.11-3).

Main Menu 

▶ Settings → Connectivity (□) → Bluetooth → Paired Devices

🖊 Press 🕒

List of paired handsfree devices appears.

#### **9** Select a device and press ■

The device is connected and ✓ (checked) appears.

- When transmission is in progress, choose *Yes* → Press ■
- To disconnect, select a device ⇒ Press 🔳
- To rename paired devices, select one → Press ☑ OPTIONS → Select Change Name → Press → Enter name → Press ■

#### **Sound Output**

Switch sound output between handset and handsfree devices.

While talking on the phone, press ☐ Options →
Select Transfer Audio → Press ☐ → Select To
Phone or To Bluetooth → Press ☐

- Select To Phone to talk on handset.
- If To Bluetooth is selected, list of paired handsfree devices appears.

Note • While talking on handsfree devices, adjust volume on the device. Place calls from handsfree devices while handset is in Standby. Tip ► • Devices marked with ✓ reconnect to handset when placing or receiving calls. • ☐ indicates that the device is not selected. When ☐ is set to the connected device, a confirmation appears. Bluetooth® Settings Specify a Bluetooth® name for handset Default 911SH Settings → Connectivity ( → ) → Bluetooth → Main Menu My Device Settings ▶ Device Name Enter name 

◆ Press • Enter up to 16 characters. (Pictograms are not available.) Set idle time after which Bluetooth® is cancelled. Default No Timeout Settings → Connectivity ( → ) → Bluetooth → Main Menu My Device Settings → Bluetooth Timeout

Select time 

Press ■

To cancel, select **No Timeout** → Press

Handsfree Selting Select whether to talk handsfree when placing calls from handset

Main Menu Settings Connectivity ( → ) → Bluetooth → My Device Settings → Handsfree Setting

Select Handsfree Mode or Private Mode → Press ■

• When placing calls from handsfree devices, only handsfree conversation is available regardless of setting.

My Device Details Open Bluetooth -related handset properties

Main Menu Settings Connectivity ( → ) → Bluetooth

Select My Device Details → Press ■

## Infrared

#### **Getting Started**

Infrared is a wireless technology that allows 911SH to communicate with other 911SH or with other compatible devices (PCs, mobile phones, etc.). In this chapter, "files" refers collectively to the following: Bookmarks, Tasks, Text Templates, Phone Book and Calendar entries; Messaging and Data Folder files.

- 911SH comply with IrMC 1.1, but some files may not be exchanged.
- Infrared transfers are disabled while sending/receiving mail or using the Internet.
- Transfers in direct sunlight, under fluorescent lighting or near infrared equipment may fail.

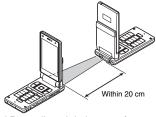
Tip ► When transfer fails, *Device not found. Reconnect?* appears. Take the precautions below then choose *Yes* and press ■ to try again.

#### **Authorisation Code**

Authorisation Codes (four digits) are specific for infrared transfers. All File Transfers are possible when Authorisation Codes of both devices match.

#### Precautions

 Align Infrared Ports within 20 centimetres with no obstructions between handsets



- Keep Infrared Ports aligned during transfer.
- Dust/oil may impair file transfers; clean Infrared Ports with a soft cloth beforehand.

#### **Transferring Files via Infrared**

#### **Transfer Options**

One File Transfer	Transfer files one at a time. Received files are saved to corresponding functions.	
All File Transfer	Transfer all files by function	
Receive Folder	Receive a folder and its contents. Folders are saved to Data Folder. (Handset does not support sending folders.)	
High-Speed Infrared (see P.11-12)	Transfer JPEG files one at a time from Data Folder (Pictures or DCIM). Received files are saved to Pictures folder.	

- Note > Transfers are disabled while using the Internet or Media Player, while editing mail or files, etc.
  - Some files may not be saved in whole or part.
  - Only compatible devices receive files transferred via high-speed infrared.

#### Transferable Files

Function	One File	All Files	Notes
Phone Book	Available	Available	One File Transfer omits Category, Tone/Video, Vibration and Secret. Picture may be omitted; transfer image alone then reset as Picture.
Calendar	Available	Available <sup>1</sup>	One File Transfer resets Reminder Tone/Video to Alert 1 and omits Secret setting. Received entries with unsetable start date/time (0:00 AM on 1 January 2016 or later) cannot be saved.
Tasks	Available	Available <sup>1</sup>	One File Transfer resets Reminder Tone/Video to Alert 1 and omits Secret setting. Received entries with unsetable due date/time (0:00 AM on 1 January 2016 or later) are saved as <i>No limit</i> .

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>1</sup>In All File Transfers, Calendar and Tasks are sent together from Appointments/Tasks.

Function	One File	All Files	Notes
Text Templates	Available <sup>2</sup>	Available	
Bookmarks	Available	Available <sup>3</sup>	
Received Msg.	N/A <sup>4</sup>	Available <sup>5</sup>	
Sent Messages	N/A <sup>4</sup>	Available	
Drafts	N/A <sup>4</sup>	Available <sup>6</sup>	
Templates	Available	Available <sup>7</sup>	Copy protected files are not transferable.
Data Folder	Available	Available <sup>7</sup>	Copy protected files are not transferable. Send files from DCIM folder one at a time; received DCIM folder files are saved to Pictures folder.

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>2</sup>Only receiving files is supported.

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>3</sup>All File Transfers send all Yahoo! Keitai, Streaming and PC Site Browser Bookmarks; Streaming Bookmarks are saved in Yahoo! Keitai Bookmarks

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>4</sup>Received files are saved to Other Documents folder as unknown files and cannot be used as messages.

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>5</sup>All File Transfers save Spam Folder messages to the incoming message folder on recipient SoftBank handsets (except 911SH) and S! Mail Notices as standard messages, invalidating complete message retrieval.

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>6</sup>In All File Transfers, SMS addressed to multiple recipients may not be saved on recipient SoftBank handsets (except 911SH), or only the first entered recipient remains.

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>7</sup>Receive folders one at a time into handset Data Folder.

- Note Handset stores up to 300 entries between Calendar and Tasks. If the limit is reached during a transfer, the remaining entries will not be received.
  - Transfer most Memory Card Data Folder files one at a time. Send DCIM folder files one by one; received DCIM files are automatically saved in Pictures folder.
  - Unsent Messages are not transferable.
  - Messages may not be received depending on the size.
  - · Large Bookmarks may not be received correctly.
  - Handset stores up to 500 messages between Drafts, Unsent Messages and Sent Messages. If the limit is reached during a transfer, the remaining messages will not be received.
  - Sky Mail may be received as S! Mail on handset depending on the sender SoftBank handset.
  - · Receiving Messaging folders cancels Secret folder settings and deletes auto sort keys.

#### One File Transfer

#### Sending

Send one file from Phone Book, Calendar, Tasks, Bookmarks. Templates or Data Folder (see P.11-11 "Transferable Files").

- Select a file and press □ Options
- Select Send, Send Entry or Send My Card and press 🔳
- 3 Select Via Infrared and press

## Prepare recipient device

## **5** Choose *Yes* and press

Offline Mode is set and transfer starts. When finished, file list returns.

#### Transferring Images via High-Speed Infrared

- Follow these steps to send images to compatible devices. Press ■ Select Data Folder > Press ■ > Select Pictures or DCIM → Press ■ → Select a file ▶ Press [Y] (Long Press)
  - Only JPEG images are supported.
  - Transfers are one-way: start regardless of recipient device status and end even if files are not received.
  - For recipient's procedures, see "Receiving" below.

#### Receiving



Choose On (3 min.) and press ■

Infrared is activated and handset returns to Standby.

- · Acquire infrared transmission within three minutes.
- When connection is requested, Calling not available during operation, OK? appears
  - High-speed infrared transfers activate Offline Mode.
- Choose Yes and press Offline Mode is set

#### Transfer starts and confirmation appears

- Press Y Cancel to cancel.
- Press 🔂 to end.

#### **5** Choose *Yes* and press ■ to save

- To cancel transfer, choose **No** → Press → Choose **Yes** → Press
- For Data Folder files, select **Phone** or **Memory Card** Press
  - Files are automatically saved to handset or Memory Card depending on available memory.

- Note Handset must be in Standby to receive files; this function is disabled even in Standby if Password Lock/ Keypad Lock is active or firmware update is in progress.
  - High-speed infrared transfer supports JPEG files only. Send up to 1.8 MB per transfer to 911SH.

#### **All File Transfer**

Sending

Settings 

Connectivity ( Image: Infrared Image: Property of the connectivity ( Image: Image

- Select *Send All* and press ■
- Choose Yes and press Offline Mode is set
- Enter Handset Code and press
- Select an item and press
- **5** Prepare recipient device

#### Enter Authorisation Code and press

Transfer starts. When finished, Send All menu returns. For Phone Book, choose Yes or No 🗭 Press 🔳

#### Receiving

► Settings → Connectivity ( → ) → Infrared → Switch Main Menu On/Off

Choose On (3 min.) and press

Infrared is activated and handset returns to Standby.

- · Acquire infrared transmission within three minutes.
- When connection is requested, Calling not available during operation, OK? appears
- Choose *Yes* and press Offline Mode is set
- Enter Authorisation Code and press
  - Enter the same Authorisation Code as sender's.
- Transfer starts and confirmation appears
  - Press Y Cancel to cancel.
  - Press o to end.

#### **Adding Files**

1 Select *As New Items* and press ■

When transfer completes, handset returns to Standby.

- Press [37] Cancel to cancel.
- Press 🔂 to end.

11

## Overwriting Existing Files

- Select Delete All & Save and press ■
- Choose Yes and press ■
- 3 Enter Handset Code and press ■

When transfer completes, handset returns to Standby.

- When Phone Book is overwritten, My Details except handset phone number is overwritten as well.
- Press 🛂 Cancel to cancel.
- Press 🕤 to end.

## **Receiving Folders**

Receive folders from compatible devices and save to handset Data Folder.

- Handset does not support sending folders.
- Handset receives folders when it can newly create a folder, or the same folder name exists in the same layer as that of sender's.
- For sender's procedures, see the device manual.

1 Choose On (3 min.) and press

Infrared is activated and handset returns to Standby.

- · Acquire infrared transmission within three minutes.
- 2 When connection is requested, Calling not available during operation, OK? appears

## 3 Choose Yes and press ■

Offline Mode is set and transfer starts. When finished, hand set returns to Standby.

- If the same folder name exists, received files are saved there.
- Press 🛂 Cancel to cancel.
- Press 🔂 to end.

# Mass Storage

Activate Mass Storage and connect handset to a PC via USB Cable to access Memory Card from the PC without removing the card from handset.

- Activating Mass Storage activates Offline Mode.
- Mass Storage is not available when battery is low, when an S! Application is paused or while Music Player is active.

Main Menu ► Settings ► Connectivity (••)

- 1 Select Mass Storage and press Calling not available during operation, OK? appears.
- 2 Choose Yes and press
- **3** Connect handset to a PC via USB Cable
  - If it is already connected, remove it then reconnect it.

## To exit, press 🔀 Cancel

## **5** Choose *Yes* and press

 Safely remove handset (recognised as removable hardware device) on the PC, then disconnect USB Cable.

# Network Settings

Check Network Information

Main Menu

Settings 

Network Settings ( → )

Select *Network Info* **▶** Press ■

Retrieve Network Information manually

Main Menu ► Settings → Network Settings (•••)

Select Retrieve NW Info → Press ■ → Choose Yes ▶ Press

ocation Info

Set URL of map information provider

Main Menu

► Settings → Network Settings ( Location Info **⇒** URL Settina

Select URL 

Press ■

- To view complete URLs, select one ▶ Press 🖾 Options ▶ Select *Display* → Press
- To edit URLs, select one ▶ Press 🖾 Options ▶ Select Edit Press ■ Description Press ■ Press ■
  - Default URL cannot be edited.
- To delete URLs, select one ▶ Press ☑ Options ▶ Select ■ Default URL cannot be deleted.
- To add URLs, select <**empty> ⇒** Press ⇒ Enter URL ⇒ Press

Select whether to send Location Information automatically upon request

**Default**On

Main Menu

► Settings → Network Settings ( Location Info Datum On/Off

Choose On (send) or Off → Enter Handset Code → Press

Set Location Information confirmation parameters

Default Always Confirm

Main Menu

► Settings → Network Settings ( Location Info Location Property

Select Always Confirm, Send or Do Not Send ▶ Press ■ ▶ Enter Handset Code ▶ Press ■

# Tools

## Calendar

## **Opening Calendar**

- Open Calendar in Month View, 2Month View or Week View.
- Calendar appears in Month View by default.

Main Menu ► Tools → Tools 1 (🕒)

## **1** Select *Calendar* and press ■

Calendar of the current month opens.

- If Clock is unset, use to select a Time Zone Press time Enter date/ time Press
- To open Help (Key Assignments), press 

  Options 
  Select Help 

  Press 

  ■
- Press to return.



Calendar Window (Month View)

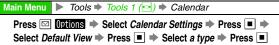
#### Key Assignments

Key	Month/2Month View	Week View
<del>X</del> 60/32/49	Open the previous month <sup>1</sup>	Open the previous week
#%#	Open the next month <sup>1</sup>	Open the next week
0 % ±	Help	
2 /h/	Stamp <sup>2</sup> —	
4 E	Set Colour (By Date)	
5 ts	Go to (Today)	
6 lg	Find	
8 **	Go to (Enter Date)	
	Select the previous/next week <sup>1</sup> Select the previous/next time block	
e□e	Select date	

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>1</sup>In 2Month View, view changes by two months.

Default View Set to open Calendar in Month View, 2Month View or Week View

Default Month View



Set Colour Set Calendar date colour

Default Sunday (and holiday): Red, Saturday: Blue, Others: Black

Main Menu ► Tools → Tools 1 ( ) → Calendar

#### By Days of the Week

Press ☑ Options → Select Calendar Settings →
Press ■ → Select Set Colour → Press ■ → Select
By Week → Press ■ → Select a day → Press ■ →
Select a colour → Press ■

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>2</sup>Available in Month View.

#### **Bv Date**

Select a day → Press ☑ Options → Select Calendar

Settings → Press ■ → Select Set Colour → Press ■ →

Select By Date → Press ■ → Select a colour → Press ■

- To use the colour set for the day of the week, select **No**
- Setting → Press ■
  To reset, press Options → Select Calendar Settings → Press → Select Set Colour → Press → Select Reset Colour → Press → Press → Select Reset

Set Holida

Remove/restore preset holidays or save additional holidays

Main Menu ► Tools → Tools 1 ( ••• ) → Calendar

#### Removing/Restoring Holidays

Choose *Yes* → Press ■

Press 

Options 
Select Calendar Settings 
Press 
Use 
Use 
Use 
Use 
Very to Select Set My Holidays 
Select a holiday 
Press 
Use 
Very to Select Set My Holidays 
Select a holiday 
Press 
Use 
Very to Select Set My Holidays 
Very to Select Use 
Very to Select 
Very to

To check or uncheck all, press ☑ Options → Select Check

All or Uncheck All → Press ■

#### **Saving Additional Holidays**

Press Detions Select Calendar Settings Press Select Set Holiday Press Select Set My Holidays Select <empty> Press Select Set Press Select Set Press Press Select Set Press Select Set Press Select Set Press Select Set Press Select Select Set Press Select Select Set Press Select Sele

### **Editing Additional Holidays**

Tip ▶ • Preset holidays cannot be deleted or edited.

• Save up to ten additional holidays.

Stamp

Create new entry quickly by entering a stamp

Available in Month View.

Main Menu ► Tools → Tools 1 ( ••• ) → Calendar

Select a date → Press 2 ♣ Select a stamp → Press ■

**Tip** ► To edit the entry, see **P.12-7**.

Alarm Settings Select Alarm Volume, Vibration and Manner Settings

Default Alarm Volume: Level 3, Vibration: Off, Manner Settings: Do not Ring

Main Menu ► Tools → Tools 1 ( ••• ) → Calendar

### Alarm Volume

Press 

Options 
Select Alarm Settings 
Press 

Press 
Use 
to adjust level 
Press 

Press

## Vibration

Press ☑ Options → Select Alarm Settings → Press ■ → Select Vibration: → Press ■ → Select On, Link to Sound or Off → Press ■

#### **Manner Settings**

Press ☑ Options ➤ Select Alarm Settings ➤ Press ■
 Select Manner Settings: ➤ Press ■ ➤ Select
Ring or Do not Ring ➤ Press ■
 For Ring, choose Yes ➤ Press ■

## **Saving Entries**

Organise daily, weekly, monthly and yearly schedule. Save up to 300 entries between Calendar and Tasks (see P.12-8).

Tools 

Tools 1 (□) 

Calendar Main Menu

Select a day and press ■

Select < Add New Entry > and press

Enter subject and press

• Enter up to 32 characters. Subject is mandatory.

Enter start date/time and press

• For all-day entries, enter date and press 
☐ (press again to cancel), then press and skip ahead to Step 7.

Select *End:* and press ■

Enter end date/time and press

Select *Category:* and press ■

Select a category and press

• To proceed without setting Reminder, skip ahead to Step 13. For all-day entries, set Repeat (see P.12-6) and skip ahead to Step 13.

Select Reminder: and press

10 Select Reminder Time: and press

Select from At Start Time to 1 hour before and press 🔳

For custom Reminder Time, select Other > Press 🔳 > Enter date/time 

◆ Press 

■

To set tone/video and duration, see P.12-5.

Press Y

OK does not appear, press

Repeat: see **P.12-6** 

13 Select Location: and press

Enter location and press

. Enter up to 16 characters.

Select *Description:* and press

Enter schedule details and press |

. Enter up to 128 characters.

Secret: see P.12-6

Press Y Save

The entry is saved.

Note > When entries are transferred to other devices, date/time or other information may appear different depending on the recipient device.

箇 (Reminder set) or 団 (Reminder unset) appears on Tip 🕨 scheduled day. (Indicator disappears after scheduled time.)





#### At Reminder Time

Reminder is activated, sounding/vibrating, etc. according to related settings.

Image appears if System Graphics is set (see **P.10-3**). However, video and SMAF file images take priority over System Graphics.



Tip ▶ • If Reminder Time arrives during a call or while recording video, Reminder will not be announced. End the call or exit mobile camera to reactivate Reminder. • Active Reminder stops for incoming calls. Information window opens after the call ends.

#### **Calendar Options**

Follow these steps after Step 12 on P.12-4. After each setting, New Entry window returns. Complete other settings.

Set a tone/video to sound/play at Reminder Time

Default Alert 1

#### **Preset Sounds**

Select Reminder: 

→ Press 

→ Select Assign Tone/ Video: → Press ■ → Select Preset Sounds → Press ■ Select a tone → Press ■ Press ☑ To play tones, select one and press □ Play. ■ Press ☑ Stop to stop.

#### **Data Folder Files**

Select Reminder: ▶ Press ■ ▶ Select Assign Tone/ Video: ▶ Press ■ ▶ Select Ring Songs-Tones, Music. Videos or Flash®Ringtones → Press ■ → Select a file → Press ■ → Press 🗹 ■ 0K To play files, select one and press 🛂 Play ■ Press to stop.

Set how long Reminder operates

Default 10 seconds

Select Reminder: ▶ Press ■ ▶ Select Duration: ▶

Press ■ Select time > Press ■ Press 🖼 DK

For custom Duration, select *Other* → Press ■ → Enter time → Press ■ → Press 🖼 🕠

Repeat Assign schedule type (once only, daily, weekly, monthly or yearly) for each event

DefaultOnce Only

Default Off

#### **Once Only Schedule**

Select Repeat: → Press ■ → Select Once Only → Press ■

#### **Repetitive Schedule**

Select Repeat: → Press ■ → Select from Day to Every Year → Press ■ → Enter repeat time (00 - 99 times) → Press ■

- Start date and time are reflected in the items. For *Month*, if the day is 29, 30 or 31, entries are saved for the valid months only.
- Repeat time is not available for *Every Year*; the schedule is repeated until deleted.
- Set Repeat time to 00 to repeat until deleted.

Secre

Restrict access to entries

Select Secret: → Press ■ → Choose On or Off → Press ■

 Activate Show Secret Data (see P.10-28) to open/edit Secret entries

## **Opening Entries**

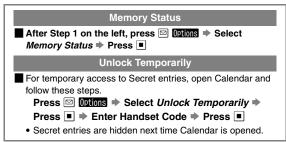
Main Menu ► Tools → Tools 1 ( ) → Calendar

**1** Select a date and press ■

- Alternatively, to specify date, press ☐ Options → Select Go to → Press → Select Enter Date → Press → Enter date → Press ■
- Alternatively, to open current date, press ☑ ① tions ➤ Select Go to ➤ Press ➤ Select Today ➤ Press ■

## 2 Select an entry and press

- To send the entry via S! Mail, press ☑ Options → Select Send → Press → Select As Message → Press → Complete and send message (Perform from Step 3 on P.14-8.)
- **3** Press <sup>□LEAR</sup> to return



## Searching Entries by Subject

Main Menu ► Tools → Tools 1 ( •• ) → Calendar

Press ☑ Options

**9** Select Find and press ■

3 Enter search text and press

• Enter up to 32 characters.

■ Select an entry and press

## **Editing Entries**

Main Menu ► Tools ► Tools 1 ( • ) ► Calendar

Select a date and press ■

Select an entry and press □ Options

Select *Edit* and press

Select an item and press

• For details, see procedure for saving entries.

5 When finished editing, press 🗹 Save

## **Deleting Entries**

Delete one entry or all entries of the day

Main Menu ► Tools → Tools 1 (••) → Calendar

#### One Entry

Select a date → Press ■ → Select an entry → Press 

Options 

Select Delete 

Press 

→ Select This Appointment → Press ■ → Choose Yes ▶ Press

#### All Entries of the Day

Select a date → Press □ Options → Select Delete → Press ■ Select All This Day > Press ■ > Choose *Yes* ▶ Press ■

In Week View, delete all entries in the week or up to the end of the previous week Main Menu ► Tools → Tools 1 ( ) → Calendar Week Select a week → Press □ Options → Select Delete → Press □ Select All This Week → Press ■ → Choose Yes → Press ■ Up to the End of Previous Week Select a week → Press □ Options → Select Delete → Press □ Select Up to Last Week → Press ■ Choose Yes → Press ■ In Month View, delete all entries in the month or up to the end of the previous month Main Menu ► Tools → Tools 1 ( ••• ) → Calendar Month Select a month → Press □ Options → Select Delete → Press ■ Select All This Month → Press ■ → Choose Yes → Press ■ Up to the End of Previous Month Select a month → Press □ Options → Select Delete → Press □ Select Up to Last Month ⇒ Press ■ ⇒ Choose Yes ⇒ Press ■

Delete all entries in two months on Display Main Menu ► Tools → Tools 1 ( •• ) → Calendar

Select two months → Press 🖾 Options → Select Delete → Press ■ → Select All This 2Months → 

Delete all entries

Main Menu ► Tools → Tools 1 ( ) → Calendar

Press ☐ Options → Select Delete → Press ☐ → Select All Appointments → Press ■ → Enter Handset Code Press ■ Choose Yes Press ■

#### **Deleting Repetitive Entries**

A confirmation appears except for All Appointments. To delete, follow these steps.

Choose Yes ▶ Press ■

■ To retain repetitive entries, choose *No* → Press ■

## **Tasks**

Save event with deadlines.

- Check completed tasks (see P.12-10).
- Save up to 300 entries between Tasks and Calendar (see P.12-4).

## **Saving Entries**

Main Menu ► Tools → Tools 1 ( → ) → Tasks

- 1 Select <Add New Entry> and press ■
- 2 Enter subject and press
  - Enter up to 32 characters. Subject is mandatory.
- 3 Enter due date/time and press
  - To set no limit, press ☐ (press again to cancel), then press ☐ and skip ahead to Step 8.
  - To proceed without setting Reminder, skip ahead to Step 8.
- 4 Select Reminder: and press

- 5 Select Reminder Time: and press
- 6 Select from At Due Time to 1 hour before and press
  - For custom Reminder Time, select *Other* → Press → Enter date/time → Press ■
  - To set tone/video and duration, see P.12-9.
- 7 Press 🛂 🔲 🗰
- 8 Select Description: and press
- $oldsymbol{g}$  Enter task details and press llet
  - Enter up to 128 characters.
  - Secret: see P.12-9
- Press 🗹 Save
  The entry is saved.



New Entry Window

## At Reminder Time

Reminder is activated, sounding/vibrating, etc. according to related settings.

Image appears if System Graphics is set (see P.10-3).

However, video and SMAF file images take priority over System Graphics.

Default Off



- Tip ▶ If Reminder Time arrives during a call or while recording video, Reminder will not be announced. End the call or exit mobile camera to reactivate Reminder.
  - Active Reminder stops for incoming calls. Information window opens after the call ends.

## **Task Options**

Follow these steps after Step 7 on P.12-8. After each setting, New Entry window returns. Complete other settings.

Set a tone/video to sound/play at Reminder Time

Default Alert 1

#### **Preset Sounds**

Select Reminder: 

→ Press 

→ Select Assign Tone/ Video: → Press ■ → Select Preset Sounds → Press ■ Select a tone → Press ■ → Press ☑ To play tones, select one and press ☐ Play. ■ Press 🖾 Stop to stop.

#### **Data Folder Files**

Select Reminder: → Press ■ → Select Assign Tone/ Video: ▶ Press ■ ▶ Select Ring Songs-Tones, Music. Videos or Flash®Ringtones → Press ■ → Select a file → Press ■ → Press 🛂 🔳 To play files, select one and press [57] Play ■ Press to stop. Set how long Reminder operates Default 10 seconds Select Reminder: → Press ■ → Select Duration: → Press ■ Select time > Press ■ Press 🖼 DK For custom Duration, select *Other* → Press 🔳 → Enter time → Press ■ → Press 🛂 🗷

Restrict access to entries

Select Secret: → Press ■ → Choose On or Off → Press

• Activate Show Secret Data (see P.10-28) to open/edit Secret entries.

#### **Alarm Settings**

Select Alarm Volume setting.

In Task list, select an entry → Press ☑ Options → Select

Alarm Settings → Press ■ → Select Alarm Volume: →

Press ■ → Use ☑ to adjust level → Press ■

Select Vibration setting.

In Task list, select an entry → Press ☑ Options → Select

Alarm Settings → Press ■ → Select Vibration: →

Press ■ → Select On. Link to Sound or Off → Press ■

Press - Select On, Link to Sound or On - Press -

■ Select Manner mode ringer setting.

In Task list, select an entry → Press ☑ Options → Select

Alarm Settings → Press ■ → Select Manner Settings:

□ Press ■ → Select Ping or Point Ping → Press ■

→ Press ■ → Select Ring or Do not Ring → Press ■

■ For *Ring*, choose *Yes* → Press ■

## **Opening Entries**

Main Menu ► Tools → Tools 1 ( )

## 1 Select Tasks and press

- To open completed (checked) entries, use to select (Completed Tasks).
- To open uncompleted (unchecked) entries, use to select ☐ (Incomplete Tasks).

## **9** Select an entry and press ■

To send the entry via S! Mail, press ☑ Options

Select Send → Press ■ Select As

Message → Press ■ Complete and send
message (Perform from Step 3 on P.14-8.)



## Press RACKER to return

#### **Completed Tasks**

■ To mark completed, follow these steps after Step 1 on the left.
Select an unchecked entry (□) → Press ■
Press ■

■ To cancel checks, select a checked entry (☑) ⇒ Press
 ■ Press

#### **Unlock Temporarily**

■ For temporary access to Secret entries, follow these steps.

After Step 1 on the left, press ☑ Options → Select

Unlock Temporarily → Press ■ Enter Handset

Code → Press ■

• Secret entries are hidden next time Task list is opened.

#### Memory Status

■ After Step 1 on the left, press 🖾 Options 🔷 Select Memory Status 🗣 Press 🔳

## **Searching Entries by Subject**

Main Menu ► Tools → Tools 1 ( → ) → Tasks

**1** Press □ Options

**9** Select Find and press ■

3 Enter search text and press

• Enter up to 32 characters.

■ Select an entry and press

### **Editing Entries**

Main Menu Tools → Tools 1 ( → ) → Tasks

Select an entry and press ☑ Options

Select *Edit* and press ■

Select an item and press

• For details, see procedure for saving entries.

When finished editing, press [Y/] Save

## **Deleting Entries**

Delete one entry

Main Menu Tools → Tools 1 ( → ) → Tasks

Select an entry → Press □ Options → Select Delete

Press ■ Select This Task → Press ■ →

Choose Yes ▶ Press ■

Delete all tasks or all completed tasks

Main Menu Tools 

Tools 1 (→) 

Tasks

#### **All Tasks**

Press ☐ Options → Select Delete → Press ☐ →

Select All Tasks → Press ■ → Enter Handset Code

Press ■ Choose Yes Press ■

#### **All Completed Tasks**

Press ☑ Options → Select Delete → Press ■ → Select All Comp. Tasks → Press ■ → Choose Yes ▶ Press

## **Setting Alarm**

Set Alarm to sound at a specific time each day or on specific days of the week. Save up to 5 Alarm settings.

Main Menu ► Tools → Tools 1 ( Alarms

Select --: -- and press

Enter time and press Alarm Options: see P.12-13

Select *Repeat:* and press

Daily

1 Select Every Day and press

Specified Day of the Week

1 Select Selected Days and press 🔳

Alarm Settings

Assign Tone/Video:

Time:

Snooze: Alarm Volume:

Vibration:

Duration: 10 sec

To select all, press ☑ Options → Select Check All → Press ■ Skip ahead to Step 4

2 Select a day of the week and press

• To cancel, highlight the selected day and press .

Repeat Step 2 to select more

4 Press [Y] OK when finished

One Time Alarm

Select Once Only and press ■

Press Y' Save

Alarm is set.

• For more settings, start over from Step 1 on P.12-11.

Press 📵 to exit

Handset returns to Standby and & appears.

#### For Manner Mode

Select Manner mode ringer setting.

After Step 1 on P.12-11, select For Manner Mode ▶ Press ■ → Select Ring or Do not Ring → Press ■

■ For *Ring*, choose *Yes* → Press ■

#### At Alarm Time

Alarm is activated, sounding/vibrating, etc. according to related settings.

Image appears if System Graphics is set (see **P.10-3**). However, video and SMAF file images take priority over System Graphics.

#### **Stopping Alarm**

Press Y Stop , o or ......

• Alarm activates only when handset is on at Alarm Time.

#### Snooze

- When Snooze (see P.12-13) is set, Alarm repeats at the set interval
  - Accept incoming calls. End the call to reactivate Snooze.
  - If other Alarm Time arrives while Snoozing, the other Alarm is activated only after Snooze is cancelled.
- To cancel Snooze, follow these steps while Alarm is activated or Snoozing.

Press ☑ Stop , ⓒ or → Choose Yes → Press ■

 Snooze is cancelled automatically 60 minutes after initial Alarm Time

- Tip If Alarm Time arrives during a call or while recording video, no tone will sound. End the call or exit mobile camera to reactivate Alarm.
  - In Manner mode, volume depends on For Manner Mode setting (Do not Ring by default).
  - · Active Alarm stops for incoming calls. When Snooze is unset, Information window opens after the call ends.

Follow these steps after Step 2 on **P.12-11**. After each setting, Alarm settings window returns. Complete other settings.

Assign Tone/Video

Set a tone/video to sound/play at Alarm Time

Default Alert 1

#### **Preset Sounds**

Select Assign Tone/Video: → Press ■ → Select Preset
Sounds → Press ■ → Select a tone → Press ■

- To play tones, select one and press Play.
  - Press ☑ Stop to stop.

#### **Data Folder Files**

Select Assign Tone/Video: → Press ■ → Select Ring Songs·Tones, Music, Videos or Flash® Ringtones →

Press ■ → Select a file → Press ■

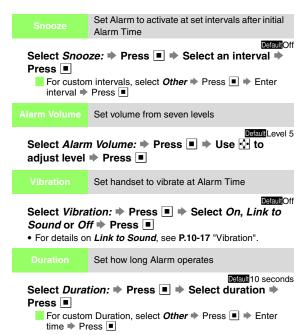
- To play files, select one and press 🗹 Play.
  - Press to stop.

Screen

Set Custom Screen tone/video to sound/play at Alarm Time

Select Assign Tone/Video: → Press ■ → Select Custom Screen → Press ■

- To play files, select Custom Screen and press 
   Play
   Press 
   Stop
   to stop.
- Custom Screen is selectable when compatible Custom Screen is active.



# Cancelling & Reactivating Alarm Cancel Alarm and retain the settings Main Menu ► Tools → Tools 1 ( → ) → Alarms Select an entry → Press □ Options → Select Switch Off ⇒ Press ■ å disappears. • Reactivate Alarm to use the same settings. Reactivate Alarm with the same settings, or change current settings Main Menu ► Tools → Tools 1 ( → ) → Alarms Select an entry → Press □ Options → Select Switch On ⇒ Press ■ To change settings, select an entry → Press ■ → Edit settings ■ For details, see procedure for saving entries. **Deleting Alarm** Delete Alarm settings one by one Main Menu ► Tools → Tools 1 ( → ) → Alarms Select an entry → Press □ Options → Select Reset Alarm → Press ■ → Choose Yes → Press ■ Delete all Alarm settings Main Menu ► Tools ► Tools 1 ( Alarms Select an entry → Press ☐ Options → Select Clear All ▶ Press ■ ▶ Enter Handset Code ▶ Press ■ ▶

## World Clock

Display local date/time (see **P.10-20**) and the date/time of another area in the world.

- Select from preset Time Zones or specify a new one; enter area name and time difference between new and local areas.
- To set World Clock to appear in Standby, see P.10-5 "Clock/ Calendar".
- Time Zone is set to *Tokyo* by default.

## Setting Time Zone & Daylight Saving

Activate Daylight Saving to advance the selected area's time by one hour.

Main Menu ► Tools ► Tools 1 ( ••• ) ► World Clock

1 Press

Time Zone

■ Select Set Time Zone and press ■

2 Use • to specify an area and press ■

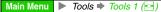
To add Time Zone, press ☑ (Custom) → Enter city name (up to 16 characters) → Press ■ → Use ፲ to select + or - → Press ← Enter time difference → Press ■

#### Daylight Saving

- 1 Select Daylight Saving and press
- Choose On and press
  - To cancel, choose Off ⇒ Press

Choose Yes ▶ Press ■

## **Opening World Clock**



Select World Clock and press



Tip ▶ • To change local Time Zone, see P.10-20.

• To set World Clock to appear in Standby, select World Clock (L), World Clock (S), World Clk+1mo. or World Clk+2mos. for Clock/Calendar (see P.10-5).

## Calculator

Use Calculator for basic arithmetic (up to 12 digits) and percentage calculation, or currency conversion (Money Converter).

Main Menu ► Tools → Tools 1 ( )

# Select Calculator and press

Calculator opens.

- Alternatively, enter digits in Standby and press Est to open Calculator.
- Use Keypad to enter digits, and the keys in the table below for calculation.
- To copy the result, press ☑ Options → Select *Copy* → Press ■



+ (Add)	•	CM (Clear Memory)	<b>™</b> <sup>@</sup>
- (Subtract)	•	RM (Recall Memory)	Û
x (Multiply)	Ů	M+ (Add Memory)	Y? 1
÷ (Divide)	·	. (Decimal)	<del>X</del> 65/3249
= (Equal)		+/- (Switch)	#50
C·CE (Clear)	GLEAR ES	% (Percent)	⊠2

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>1</sup>While **0** appears, press to return to Tools 1 menu.

## 2 Press 1 to exit

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>2</sup>Press 

Options and select %.

#### **Money Converter**

To change exchange rate, open Calculator and follow these steps.

Press ☐ Options → Select Money Converter → Press ■ Select Exchange Rate Press ■ Press Select *Domestic* or *Foreign* → Press ■ → Enter rate **▶** Press ■

- Exchange rate is 1 for both conversions by default.
- To convert foreign currencies, follow these steps. Enter amount of money and press ☑ Options ▶ Select *Money Converter* → Press → Select *to* Domestic or to Foreign → Press ■
  - Conversion is based on the preset exchange rate.

- Tip Entered numbers, results and numbers saved in Memory are not affected by incoming calls. End the call to return.
  - Clear Memory before starting Memory calculations.
  - Numbers saved in Memory remain even if Calculator is closed, but are cleared when handset power is turned off.

## Voice Recorder

Use Microphone to record short voice memos and save files on handset or Memory Card; record and save longer recordings on Memory Card.

Modes:

		Recording Time	Storage Media
	For Message		Handset or Memory Card <sup>1</sup>
٠	Extended Voice	Up to 99 hours 59 minutes 59 seconds	Memory Card <sup>2</sup>

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>1</sup>Specify storage media before recording, or set handset to ask each time; when set to ask, always record with Memory Card inserted. <sup>2</sup>Insert Memory Card to record in Extended Voice mode.

## **Preparation**

- When battery is low, Voice Recorder does not activate. If battery runs low while recording in Extended Voice mode, Battery low. Please connect to charger! appears and Voice Recorder shuts off.
- Conversations during calls cannot be recorded.
- If incompatible microphone is connected, recording may fail.

<sup>•</sup> For Message is set by default.

## Recording

Main Menu ► Tools → Tools 2 (🔄)

# **1** Select *Voice Recorder* and press ■

- To switch mode, press ☑ Options ⇒ Select Record Time ⇒ Press ⇒ Select For Message or Extended Voice ⇒ Press ■
- To switch storage media, see P.12-18.
- **2** Press Recording starts.

## **3** For Message

- 1 Press 
  to stop
  - Recording stops automatically when maximum recording time is reached.
  - To play the recording, select Playback → Press
    - Press to pause.
    - Press to return.
  - To start over without saving, press → Repeat from Step 2
    To send via S! Mail, select *Save and Send* → Press →
    - Complete and send message (Perform from Step 3 on P.14-8.)
  - When confirmation for save location appears, select a location ⇒ Press ■

#### Select Save and press ■

Recording is saved to handset or Memory Card.

When confirmation for save location appears, select a location ⇒ Press ■

#### Extended Voice

■ Press ■ to stop

Recording is saved to Memory Card.



00:00:00/00:03:08

- Note >
- · Avoid shocks to handset; may cause noise or skipping.
  - Recording window may take longer to open as more Voice files are saved on Memory Card.
- Tip Alarm is disabled while recording, and starts after Voice Recorder stops/closes.
  - Attach saved Voice file or record voice directly from Mail Composition windows (see P.14-11).

### **Playback**

Play sounds from Speaker, or use Headphones.

Main Menu ► Tools → Tools 2 ( Voice Recorder

- 1 Press ☑ Options
- **2** Select *Ring Songs•Tones* and press
  - To switch between handset and Memory Card, press ☑ ①ptions ⇒ Select Change to Phone or Change to Memory Card ⇒ Press ■
  - \mathbf 3 Select a file and press 🔳

Playback starts.

Press (up) or (down) to adjust



## 

## **Recording Setting**

Save Recording To

Select storage media for For Message

Default Phone Memory

Main Menu ► Tools ► Tools 2 ( • ) ► Voice Recorder

Press 

Options 
Select Save Recording To 
Press 
Select Phone Memory, Memory Card or 
Ask Each Time 
Press 

Options 
Select Save Recording To 
Press 
Select Phone Memory, Memory Card or 
Ask Each Time 
Press 

Options 
Select Save Recording To 
Press 
Select Save Recording To 
Press 
Select Phone Memory, Memory Card or 

Ask Each Time 
Press 
Select Phone Memory, Memory Card or 

Ask Each Time 
Press 
Select Phone Memory 
Press 
Press 
Select Phone Memory 
Press 
Press

• Set to Ask Each Time to select media after every recording.

## **Document Viewer**

Open documents via Data Folder, Internet, S! Mail, Bluetooth® or Infrared.

• Supported File Formats:

	PDF (.pdf)		Microsoft Excel (.xls)
500	Microsoft Word (.doc)	9	Microsoft PowerPoint (.ppt)

- Some files may take time to open or may not appear correctly.
   (Complicated designs, special characters in file names, password-protected, language other than Japanese or English used, etc.)
- On PCs, save documents to this Memory Card directory:
  - PRIVATE/MYFOLDER/MY Items/OTHER DOCUMENTS
- Open documents of up to 1 MB each. (Some documents may not open depending on content.)

#### Data Folder Files

Main Menu ► Tools → Tools 2 ( Document Viewer

1 Select a file and press

Internet Files

1 Open a page, select a file and press

**Tip** Download files of up to 300 KB via Yahoo! Keitai or up to 500 KB via PC Site Browser.

#### Attachments

1 In a Messaging folder, select a message and press

2 Select a file and press 🔳

#### **Key Assignments**

	Whole Page	Zoom to view the whole page
¥7	Vertical/Horizontal	Rotate page 90 degrees counterclockwise (press again to return)
Ď	Up	Scroll up
·	Down	Scroll down
•□	Left	Scroll left
_•	Right	Scroll right
1 %	Upper Left	View upper left portion of page
2 ABC	Full Screen	View document in full screen
3 def	Upper Right	View upper right portion of page
4 <sup>t</sup> GHI	Zoom Out	Zoom out
5 JKL	Centre	View page centre
6 <sub>MNO</sub>	Zoom In	Zoom in
7pgrs	Lower Left	View lower left portion of page
8 **	Select Page	Jump to specified page ■ Enter page number ▶ Press ■
9 <sub>wxrz</sub>	Lower Right	View lower right portion of page
0 to %	Help	View a summary of key assignments
#40	Next Page	Open the next page
<del>X</del> ± 10,000	Previous Page	Open the previous page
<b>C</b>	Fit Page	Zoom to fit width

## Barcode

Scan printed barcodes with mobile camera or download/ exchange QR Codes via the Internet, S! Mail, etc.

- Scan UPC (JAN) or QR Codes. Handset automatically detects code type and reads data.
- In Continuous mode, scan up to 50 UPC (JAN) or 16 QR Codes at one time. In some cases, continuous scans may be disrupted depending on barcode data or data size.
- · Zoom is not available.

- Note Scan may fail if the barcode is dirty or unclear.
  - · Scan barcodes under adequate light.
  - Capture one barcode at a time; otherwise scan may fail.

- Tip A UPC (Universal Product Code) or JAN (Japanese Article Number) is a series of varying width vertical lines (bars) and spaces. Bars and spaces together are elements, combinations of which represent different numbers. Handset cannot read other one-dimensional barcodes (ITF Code, Code39, Codabar/NW-7, etc.).
  - A QR (Quick Response) Code is a matrix symbology consisting of an array of nominally square cells, which allows omni-directional reading of up to 4,296 alphanumerics and byte data, as well as kanji and kana.

Main Menu ► Tools → Tools 3 ( ) → Barcode → Scan Barcode

## 1 Frame barcode in the centre of Display

- Slide Portrait/Macro Selector to Macro (\$\mathbb{L}\$).
- Hold handset approximately 10 cm away from barcode.
- Press 🚟 to toggle Mobile Light on/off.
- Use ed to adjust brightness.
- To activate or cancel Continuous mode, press ☑ ①ptions → Select Continuous Scan → Press Choose On or Off → Press ■
- To open Help (Key Assignments), press 📆:
- Press to return.



Mobile camera scans the barcode.

- If recognition takes time, move handset slowly and adjust the distance from barcode.
- Press ☑ Cancel to stop scan → Start over from Step 1

# 3 Barcode recognition tone sounds and scan results appear

- Using Scan Results: see P.12-21 12-22
- To start over, press ♠ Choose **Yes**Press Repeat from Step 1





#### **Continuous Mode**

- After scanning, Scan completed. Scan new? appears.
- To scan next code, choose Yes → Press → Frame the code on Display → Press ■
- To cancel, choose No ⇒ Press ⇒ Scan results appear

#### Split Data

- After scanning, *Split data. Scan next symbol?* appears.
  - To scan next code, choose Yes → Press → Frame the code on Display → Press ■
  - To cancel, choose No → Press → Choose Yes → Press ■
- Scan results do not appear until all split data is scanned.
- The scanning status appears on the first line of Display. For example. indicates that 1 of 4 codes has been scanned.

## Using Scan Results

Place Calls <sup>1</sup>	Select a number starting with <i>TEL:</i> <sup>2</sup> → Press ■  The number appears → Press □
Send Mail <sup>3</sup>	Select a mail address including @ → Press ■ → Complete and send message (Perform from Step 5 on P.14-8.)
Quote & Send Mail	Press ☑ Options → Select Send Message → Press ■ → Press ■ → Select S! Mail or SMS⁴ → Press ■ → Complete and send message (Perform from Step 3 on P.14-7 or on P.14-8.) ■ To use a part of text, press ☑ Out ■ in Send Message window → Select the first character of text → Press ■ → Select the end point → Press ■
Save to Phone Book <sup>1, 3</sup>	Select a number starting with <i>TEL</i> : <sup>2</sup> or mail address including @ → Press ☑ □tions → Select <i>Save to Ph.Book</i> → Press ■ → Select <i>As New Entry</i> → Press ■ → Perform from Step 2 on P.4-4
Access Internet Sites <sup>5</sup>	Select a URL starting with <i>http://</i> or <i>rtsp://</i> ⇒ Press ■ ⇒ Handset connects to the Internet
Save to Data Folder (Images & Melodies)	Select an image or melody file → Press ☑ Options → Select <i>To Data Folder</i> → Press ■
Saving	Press ☑ Options → Select Save → Press ■ • Save up to 10 items. • To open saved items, see P.12-22 "Scanned Results".
Use for System Graphics	Select an image → Press ☑ Options → Select As System → Press ■ → Select an item → Press ■ → Press ■

Text	Text	Press ☑ Options → Select Copy → Press ■     Select the first character of text → Press ■     Select the end point → Press ■
	URL <sup>5</sup>	Select a URL starting with <i>http://</i> or <i>rtsp://</i> → Press ☑ Options → Select <i>Copy URL</i> → Press ■
Copy Text	Mail Address <sup>3</sup>	Select a mail address including @ → Press ☑ Options → Select Copy Address → Press ■
	Phone Number <sup>1</sup>	Select a number starting with <i>TEL:</i> <sup>2</sup> → Press ☑ ①tions → Select <i>Copy Telephone</i> → Press ■
Wallpaper		Select an image → Press ☑ ①  As Wallpaper → Press ■ → Press ■  For images smaller or larger than Display, select Centred, Full Screen or Fit Image  Press ■ → Press ■ (For Display size images or Centred, use 🗓 to zoom in/out or press ☑ to rotate.)
Open Images or Play Melodies		Select an image or melody file ▶ Press ■
Open Properties		Select an image or melody file → Press ☐  Options → Select Details → Press ☐

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>1</sup>Available when text is in *TEL:* ¥ format.

★represents one or more alphanumerics.

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>2</sup>Text strings of 10 to 32 digits starting with 0 are recognised as phone numbers.

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>3</sup>Available when text is in *¥@¥* format.

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>4</sup>S! Mail Composition window opens automatically if text exceeds the SMS character limit.

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>5</sup>Available when text is in *http://\** or *rtsp://\** format.

#### **MEMORY:** or **MAILTO**:

■ When MEMORY: or MAILTO: appears in scan results, press ■ to enter the items underlined with a dotted line automatically in Phone Book Details or SMS/S! Mail messages. However, text after an invalid character is not underlined and is not copied.

Scanning during

Scan barcodes during text entry and insert scan results into current cursor position

In a text entry window, press ☑ Options → Select Scan → Press ■ → Select Scan Code → Press ■

→ Frame barcode in the centre of Display →

Press ■ Press ■

To use a part of text, press ☑ Cut → Select the first character of text → Press ■ → Select the end point → Press ■

**Note** Barcodes/text cannot be scanned when:

■ Entering text during a call ■ S! Application is active

Open Barcode

Read saved barcode images in Data Folder

Main Menu ► Tools → Tools 3 (🔄) → Barcode → Data Folder

## Select a barcode image ◆ Press ■

- For split data, choose **Yes** → Press
  - To cancel, choose *No* → Press → Choose *Yes* → Press ■
- When scanning fails, press Select next barcode image manually Press ■

Note Resized QR Codes may be invalid.

• When invalid, This data may be incorrect. appears.

scanned Results

Open files saved in Scanned Results

Main Menu

► Tools → Tools 3 ( ) → Barcode → Scanned Results

Select a file 

Press ■

- To open properties, select a file → Press ☑ Options → Select Details → Press
  - Press to return.
- To delete files, select one → Press ☑ Options → Select

  Delete → Press → Choose Yes → Press ■
- Opened results cannot be re-saved.
- Some files such as large images may not open.

## Create QR Codes

Create QR Codes from entered text, Phone Book, Pictures, Ring Songs-Tones, Text Templates or Other Documents.

- Save up to the equivalent of 513 digits, 311 alphanumerics or 131 kanji per QR Code.
- Large items are divided into maximum of 16 QR Codes.
- Created QR Codes are saved to Data Folder (Pictures). To open them, see P.9-5.

Encode name, reading, phone numbers, mail addresses, address and note

► Tools → Tools 3 ( → ) → Barcode → Create QR **Main Menu** Code Phone Book

Select an entry ▶ Press ■ ▶ QR Code appears ▶ Press

• Only name, reading, phone numbers, mail addresses, address and note are encoded.

Enter and encode text

► Tools → Tools 3 (•••) → Barcode → Create QR Main Menu Code 

→ Text Input

Enter text → Press ■ → QR Code appears → Press ■

Encode melody/image files or Text Templates in Data Folder

Main Menu

► Tools → Tools 3 ( → ) → Barcode → Create QR Code 

◆ Open Barcode

Select a folder 

Press 

Select an item 

→ Press ■ → QR Code appears → Press ■

## Switching Storage Media

While created QR Code appears, press 🖾 Options 🕩 Select Save To → Press ■ → Select Phone or Memory Card ⇒ Press ■

#### Attaching to S! Mail

While created QR Code appears, press ☑ Options ▶ Select Send As → Press ■ → Perform from Step 3 on P.14-8

#### Incoming Calls while Creating QR Code

Contents are temporarily saved. End the call to return.

## Text Scanner

Scan text (URLs, mail addresses, phone numbers or roman letters) with mobile camera.

- Scan up to 256 characters continuously.
- Scan up to 60 single-byte characters within 3 lines. Scanning over 35 characters at one time may yield poor results.
- · Some symbols may not be read.
- Text mode is set to Auto each time Text Scanner is activated. Change the mode if text is distorted in Auto (such as white text in black background).
- Zoom is not available.

- Note Text Scanner will not activate if music is playing; when **Stop music?** appears, choose **Yes** and press to proceed.
  - Text Scanner will not activate if an S! Application is active.

Main Menu ► Tools → Tools 3 ( ) → Barcode → Scan Text

## frame text on Display

- Adjust to frame text in []. Letters at the ends may be distorted.
- Slide Portrait/Macro Selector according to text size.
- Hold handset approximately 10 cm away from barcode.
- Press ## to toggle Mobile Light on/ off.
- Use to adjust brightness.
- To switch text mode, press ☐ Options
- Select Reversed Text ⇒ Press
- Select Auto, Normal or Reversed
- ▶ Press
- To open Help (Key Assignments), press 📆
- Press to return.

# 2 Press ■

Text Scanner reads the text.

- Press to stop scan → Start over from Step 1
- **3** Use ∯ to select a line and press
  - Text Scanner reads one line per scan.



Text Scanner

Scan when bar is

Focus Adjustment -

Bar (Better focus in

darker blue)

the bluest.

Options Scan

Capture

characters.

# ## Scan results appear

Handset automatically registers scan results as a URL, Email Address, Phone Number or Text; if incorrect, change mode.

- If text exceeds limit, results appear with overage truncated.
- To change mode, press ☑ Options ⇒ Select Change Mode ⇒ Press ■ ⇒ Select a type ⇒ Press ■ (Scan results and alternatives list change accordingly.)
- To edit, press ☑ Options → Select Select/Edit → Press
  - ⇒ Select the character to edit ⇒ Select an alternative from the list or enter the correction directly from Keypad
- To start over, press 

  → Choose Yes → Press 

  Repeat from Step 1

## **5** Press ■

• To use scan results, see P.12-21.

#### **Scanning More Text**

- After Step 5, press ☑ Options → Select Continue Part or Scan More → Press ■
- Continue Part

Select *Continue Part* to enter additional text. (Mode remains the same.)

Scan More

Select **Scan More** to enter text after a line break.

**Continue Part** and **Scan More** are disabled once 256 characters have been scanned.

Scan text during text entry and insert scan results into current cursor position

In a text entry window, press ☑ Options → Select Scan → Press ■ → Select Text Scanner → Press ■ ▶ Frame text in the centre of Display ▶ Press Select a line → Press ■ → Press ■

• To change mode or edit scan results, see Step 4 on P.12-24.

# Stopwatch

Record elapsed time for up to 24 hours (23 hours 59 minutes 59.9 seconds) in 0.1-second increments. Use lap time feature to segment elapsed time.

- · Save times (including the last four lap times) to handset Text Templates.
- · Stopwatch is disabled when battery is low. Stopwatch ends when battery runs low.

Main Menu Tools 

→ Tools 2 ( → ) → Stopwatch

# Press ■

Stopwatch starts.

- To record Lap times, press 🖾 LAP
- The last four Lap times are recorded. The records are deleted when Stopwatch is cancelled.

## Press ■ to stop countdown

- To save the records to Text Template, press 🖾 Options 🖈 Select **Save to Templates** → Press
  - To check saved records, open Text Templates (see P.12-27).
- Press I to resume.
- To clear the records, press □ Options → Select Reset → Press

## To exit, press then choose *Yes* and press

- **Tip** Records are deleted when Stopwatch is cancelled. Save records to Text Templates.
  - Stopwatch setting is not affected by incoming calls. End the call to return.
  - Alarm is disabled while Stopwatch window is open, but is reactivated automatically when handset returns to Standby.

## Countdown Timer

Set Countdown Timer up to 60 minutes in 1-second increments. Alarm Tone sounds and Small Light flashes when set time elapses.

Main Menu ► Tools → Tools 2 ( ••• ) → Countdown Timer

## Enter time (00:01 - 60:00) and press ■

- To edit entered time, use to move cursor and enter correct time. If is already pressed, follow the steps below.
- When times over 60 minutes (60:00) are entered, the last set time returns.
- To change time, press ☑ Edit → Enter time → Press ■

## Press =

Countdown starts

## 3 Press ■ to stop countdown

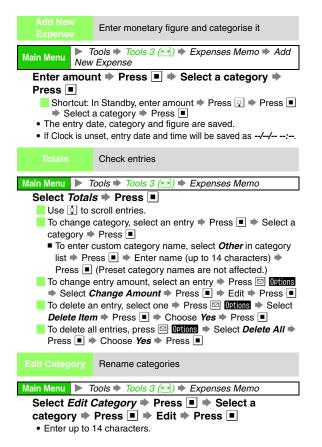
- Press to resume.
- To reset, stop countdown and press 
   Reset .
- $m{4}$  To exit, press 🕮 then choose *Yes* and press 🔳

#### **Countdown Timer End**

- Tone sounds according to General Volume setting.
  - Alarm stops automatically after 60 seconds. Press cancel to stop manually.
  - In Manner mode, Manner settings take priority.
  - When the set timer time has elapsed during a call, *Timer Expired* appears after is pressed to end the call.
- Tip Countdown is not affected by incoming calls. End the call to return.
  - Alarm is disabled while Countdown Timer window is open, but is reactivated automatically when handset returns to Standby.

# **Expenses Memo**

Use Expenses Memo to add expenses, such as travel expenses. Enter up to 30 entries (up to 29,999,999.70 yen in total, 999,999.99 yen per entry).



# Text Templates

Save frequently used phrases for use in mail message, etc. Save up to 60 entries (1,536 characters each).

## **New Entry**

► Tools → Tools 3 (••) → Text Templates → <Add Main Menu New Entry>

Enter text and press

To paste saved text into text entry windows, see P.3-15 "Using Text Templates".

## **Opening Templates**

Main Menu ► Tools → Tools 3 ( → ) → Text Templates

Select a file and press ■ Press to return.

**Editing Templates** 

Main Menu ► Tools → Tools 3 ( → ) → Text Templates

Select a file and press 
☐ Options

Select Edit and press

Edit text and press File is overwritten

## **Deleting Templates**

Delete single Text Templates.

► Tools → Tools 3 ( → ) → Text Templates → Select Main Menu a file 

→ Options (

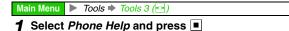
) 

→ Delete

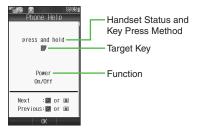
Choose Yes and press ■

# **Phone Help**

Learn when/how to use Keypad functions/shortcuts. Most Phone Help functions are inaccessible from menu items.



Phone Help window opens.



- **2** Use 🗓 to toggle guides
- **3** Press **■** to return

**Optional Services** 

## **Optional Services Overview**

- When out appears, access services from a touch-tone landline.
- For details, contact SoftBank Customer Centre, General Information (see P.20-28).

Call Forwarding	When you know you won't be able to receive calls made to handset, automatically divert incoming calls to another phone number (see right)
Voicemail	Set handset to forward all or all unanswered calls to Voicemail Centre. Access caller messages from handset in service area or from a touch-tone phone anywhere (see P.13-4).  Missed Call Notification Records of calls missed while handset is off/out-of-range and Voicemail is active.
Call Waiting*	Call Waiting alerts you to incoming calls when the line is already engaged. After the tone, place the current call on hold and answer the second, or alternate between calls (see <b>P.13-5</b> ).
Conference Call	Open a second line while the first is engaged. Switch back and forth between two lines or talk on both simultaneously. Add other parties to an existing conversation and talk on up to five lines simultaneously (see P.13-6).
Call Barring	Restrict incoming/outgoing calls depending on conditions (see <b>P.13-7</b> )
Caller ID	Show or hide your own number when placing calls (see <b>P.13-10</b> )

<sup>\*</sup>An additional contract is required.

# Call Forwarding

- Voicemail and Call Forwarding can only be set simultaneously when Call Forwarding is set to Video Calls.
- Call Forwarding and Voicemail are not available when All Outgoing Calls or All Incoming Calls in Call Barring is active.

Forwarding

Initiate Call Forwarding

Main Menu

Settings → Call/Video Call (□) → Voicemail/
Divert → Diverts

#### Direct Entry

Select a call type → Press ■ → Select Always or No

Answer → Press ■ → Select Enter Number →

Press ■ → Enter a phone number → Press ■

For No Answer, select ring time → Press ■

Include dialling code for landline numbers.

For **No Answer**, select ring time Press

#### **Phone Book**

Select a call type → Press ■ → Select Always or No

Answer → Press ■ → Select an entry → Press ■

→ Press ■

For entries with multiple numbers, select an entry → Press ■

→ Select a number → Press ■ → Press ■

#### Incoming Calls while Call Forwarding is Active

- To answer calls, press while handset is ringing/vibrating.
  - When Always is set, handset does not ring/vibrate for calls.

# Note Phone Numbers Beginning with the Following Numbers Cannot be Saved:

- 1 (Public Service Numbers: 110, 119, 118, etc.)
- 00 (International call numbers: 001, 0041, etc.)
- 0120 (Toll-free numbers)
- 0990 (Fee-based services: Dial Q2, etc.)

#### Forwarding Video Calls

Video Calls are forwarded only to Video Call-compatible devices that comply with 3G-324M.

Tip ► Adjust ring time to set the response priority when using Call Forwarding together with Answer Phone (see P.2-9).

Example: Ring time for Call Forwarding: 10 seconds Ring time for Answer Phone: 9 seconds

In this example, Answer Phone responds first. (Priority may change depending on signal conditions.)



· Cancel All also cancels Voicemail.

Status Check Call Forwarding status

Main Menu Settings → Call/Video Call (□) → Voicemail/

#### Select Status ▶ Press ■

Divert

Call Forwarding status appears.
 Press to return.

## Voicemail

- Calls are diverted to Voicemail Centre via Call Forwarding function; Voicemail and Call Forwarding can only be set simultaneously when Call Forwarding is set to Video Calls.
- Call Forwarding and Voicemail are not available when All Outgoing Calls or All Incoming Calls in Call Barring is active.
- For details, contact SoftBank Customer Centre, General Information (see P.20-28).
- Activate Missed Call Notification (see P.13-5) for records of calls missed while handset is off/out-of-range.

Voicemail

Initiate Voicemail

Main Menu

Settings → Call/Video Call ( Voicemail Voic

Divert → Voicemail → Activate

Select Always or No Answer → Press ■
For No Answer, select ring time → Press ■

#### Incoming Calls while Voicemail is Active

- To answer calls, press hile handset is ringing/vibrating.
   When Always is set, handset does not ring/vibrate for
  - When *Always* is set, handset does not ring/vibrate for calls.

Tip ► Adjust ring time to set the response priority when using Voicemail together with Answer Phone (see P.2-9).

Example:Ring time for Voicemail: 10 seconds
Ring time for Answer Phone: 9 seconds
In this example, Answer Phone responds first. (Priority may change depending on signal conditions.)

Cancel All

Cancel Voicemail

Main Menu

Settings → Call/Video Call (□) → Voicemail/

Divert

Select Cancel All → Press ■ → Choose Yes → Press ■

Cancel All also cancels Call Forwarding.

Call Voicemail Check Voicemail messages

Main Menu ▶ Phone

#### Select Call Voicemail → Press ■

- Follow the voice guidance for further operations after handset connects to Voicemail Centre.
- · Alternatively, follow these steps in Standby.
  - Press Select Settings Press Use Use to select CallVideo Call Select Voicemail/Divert Press Select Voicemail Press Select Voicemail
- Tip 

  ä appears when new messages are recorded, and disappears after they are checked from handset.

Check Voicemail status

Main Menu

► Settings → Call/Video Call ( •• ) → Voicemail/ Divert

#### Select Status ◆ Press ■

· Voicemail status appears. Press I to return.

#### **Missed Call Notification**

Activate this function for records of calls missed while handset is off/out-of-range and Voicemail is active.

Activate or cancel Missed Call Notification

Main Menu ► Settings ► Call/Video Call (•••)

Select out Missed Calls → Press ■ → Press ■

• Follow the voice guidance for further operations after handset connects to the Network.

#### Retrieving Missed Call Notification Records

- Missed Call Notification records are stored at the Centre. When handset is turned on or comes into range, Information window (see P.2-7) appears with Missed Call records.
- Information window may take some time to open.



## Call Waiting

#### An additional contract is required.

Activate or cancel Call Waiting

Main Menu ► Settings ► Call/Video Call (•••) ► Call Waiting

Choose *On* or *Off* ⇒ Press ■

Place Line 1 on hold to answer Line 2

When a tone sounds during a call, press .

• Press to switch between two lines.

#### Closing Handset while Someone is on Hold

All lines are disconnected.

Pressing ি while Someone is on Hold

Active line ends and handset re-engages the party on hold.

Line 1 Ends while Line 2 is on Hold

Short beeps sound. To re-engage the party on hold:

Press ☐ Options → Select Retrieve → Press ☐

**Optional Services** 

#### Tip • Handset does not ring or vibrate for incoming calls while a line is engaged. A tone sounds from Earpiece.

• When Voicemail or Call Forwarding is active, unanswered calls are transferred to Voicemail Centre or the forwarding number. When active service is set to Always Call Waiting is disabled.

Check Call Waiting status

Main Menu

Settings 

Call/Video Call (

Call Waiting

#### Select Status ◆ Press

• Call Waiting status appears. Press 🔳 to return.

## Conference Call

An additional contract is required.

Open another line during a call

#### Enter a phone number during a call Press

- Line 2 is open. Line 1 is placed on hold.
- Press to select a number from Phone Book or press for 1+ seconds to select from Call Log.

Switch between two open lines

During a call, press 3.

• The line switches. The other line is placed on hold.

Closing Handset while Someone is on Hold All lines are disconnected. Pressing ি while Someone is on Hold Active line ends and handset re-engages the party on hold. Line 1 Ends while Line 2 is on Hold Short beeps sound. To re-engage the party on hold: Press 

Options 

Select Retrieve 

Press 

■

Use up to five lines simultaneously

Press Doptions while switching between two lines

Select Multi Party ⇒ Press ■ ⇒ Select

Conference All 

Press ■

- To switch to private conference during Conference Call, select a number/name → Press ■ → Select Private → Press
- The other lines are placed on hold.
- To switch back to Conference Call during private conference or after opening a new line, press ☑ Options → Select Multi Party → Press ■ → Select Conference All → Press ■

**Ending Calls during Conference Call** 

All lines are disconnected.

Some Lines End during Conference Call

Other lines remain connected.

# Call Barring

Restrict incoming/outgoing Voice Calls, Video Calls or SMS messages.

Following restrictions are available:

Outgoing Calls	All Outgoing Calls	Restrict all non-emergency calls
	Bar Int'l Call	Allow only domestic calls
Incoming Calls	All Incoming Calls	Reject all calls

Alternatively, restrict calls by number/Caller ID availability.

	Black List	Reject calls from designated numbers	
Rejected	Unknown	Reject calls from numbers not saved in Phone Book	
Numbers	Withheld	Reject calls without Caller ID	
	Payphone	Reject calls from public phones	
	Unavailable	Reject calls with undisplayable Caller ID	

- Note 
   Network Password selected at initial subscription (see P.1-27) is required to change Call Barring settings.
  - If Network Password is incorrectly entered three times, Call Barring settings are locked. To resolve, Network Password and Centre Access Code must be changed. For details, contact SoftBank Customer Centre, General Information (see P.20-28).
  - All Outgoing Calls and All Incoming Calls are disabled when Call Forwarding or Voicemail is active.

If call is attempted when Call Barring is active, Call barred. appears. It may take longer to appear in some areas. Check Call Barring settings if the message does not appear.

#### **Restricting Outgoing Calls**

Set/Cancel Restriction

Set or cancel restriction of outgoing calls

Main Menu

► Settings → Call/Video Call ( Call ) → Call Barring → Outgoing Calls

#### **Each Restriction**

Select restriction → Press ■ → Choose *On* (set) or *Off*→ Press ■ → Enter Network Password → Press ■

#### **Cancelling All Restrictions**

Select Cancel All → Press ■ → Enter Network Password → Press ■

Tip ► Emergency calls (110, etc.) are possible even when outgoing calls are restricted. See P.2-3 "Emergency Calls".

Status

Check Call Barring status for outgoing calls

Main Menu

► Settings → Call/Video Call ( Call ) → Call Barring → Outgoing Calls

Select restriction → Press ■ → Select Status → Press ■

Call Barring status appears.
 Press to return.

### **Restricting Incoming Calls**

Set/Cancel Restriction

Set or cancel restriction of incoming calls

Main Menu

► Settings → Call/Video Call ( Call ) → Call Barring → Incoming Calls

#### **Setting/Cancelling**

Select All Incoming Calls → Press ■ → Choose On (set) or Off → Press ■ → Enter Network Password → Press ■

#### Cancelling

Select Cancel All → Press ■ → Enter Network Password → Press ■

Statu

Check Call Barring status for incoming calls

Main Menu

► Settings → Call/Video Call ( • Call Barring → Incoming Calls

Select All Incoming Calls → Press ■ → Select Status → Press ■

Call Barring status appears.
 Press to return.

#### Rejecting a Call

Set Reject Number

Designate phone numbers to reject

Main Menu

► Settings → Call/Video Call ( ) → Call Barring → Rejected Numbers → Black List → Set Reject Number

#### **Adding Numbers**

Select <*empty>* → Press ■ → Enter a number → Press ■

- To select from Phone Book, select <**empty>** → Press ☑ Options
  → Select **Ph.Book List** → Press → Select an entry →
  Press
  - For entries with multiple numbers, select one ▶ Press ■
  - Name appears for numbers saved in Phone Book.
- To select from Call Log, select <empty> → Press ☑ Options
   → Select From Call Log → Press → Use ☑ to select a type → Select a record → Press ■

#### **Editing Numbers**

Select an entry ▶ Press ■ ▶ Edit the number ▶ Press ■

#### **Deleting Numbers**

Select an entry → Press ☑ Options → Select Delete

Press ■ Press ■ Press ■

**Tip** ► Designate numbers to reject then set Switch On/Off to *On*.

Switch On/O

Reject calls from designated numbers

Default Off

Choose On (reject) or Off → Press ■

Unknown

Reject calls from numbers not saved in Phone Book

**Default**Off

Main Menu

Settings ⇒ Call/Video Call (⊡) ⇒ Call Barring ⇒ Rejected Numbers ⇒ Unknown

Choose On (reject) or Off → Press ■

Withheld

Reject calls without Caller ID

Default Off

Main Menu

► Settings → Call/Video Call ( C ) → Call Barring → Rejected Numbers → Withheld

Choose On (reject) or Off → Press ■

Payphone

Reject calls from public phones

Default Off

Main Menu

► Settings → Call/Video Call ( Call ) → Call Barring → Rejected Numbers → Payphone

Choose On (reject) or Off → Press ■

Unavailabl

Reject calls with undisplayable Caller ID

Default Off

Main Menu

► Settings → Call/Video Call ( Call Barring → Rejected Numbers → Unavailable

Choose On (reject) or Off ⇒ Press ■

### **Changing Network Password**

Change NW Password

Change Network Password

Main Menu

► Settings ► Call/Video Call ( Call Sarring ► Change NW Password

Enter current Network Password → Press ■ → Enter new Network Password → Press ■ → Enter new Network Password again → Press ■

#### Caller ID

Show or hide your own phone number when placing calls. Regardless of this setting, sending or blocking Caller ID can be selected for each call. Enter the following numbers/symbols before a phone number when placing a call.

Send	1 8 700 6 NNO OF *** 3 3 0 F 1 8 # 50
Block	1 % 8 % 4 % or #\$3 3 d 1 % #\$5
Show My	

Number

Send or block Caller ID

**Default**On

Main Menu

► Settings → Call/Video Call ( → Show My Number

Choose On (send) or Off → Press ■

Status

Check Caller ID status

Main Menu

► Settings → Call/Video Call ( ••• ) → Show My

Number

Select Status ▶ Press ■

- Caller ID status appears.
  - Press 
    to return.

# Messaging

Use SMS and S! Mail for messaging. Create Arrange Mail or Feeling Mail from S! Mail.

#### SMS

Exchange short text messages of up to 160 alphanumerics with SoftBank handsets.

• Send SMS to up to 20 recipients at one time.

#### S! Mail

Exchange text messages of up to 30,000 characters with e-mail compatible SoftBank handsets, other mobiles and PCs, etc. Attach image/sound files.

• Send S! Mail to up to 20 recipients at one time.

#### Arrange Mail

Select font colour, font size, background colour; insert images, background sound, and more (see P.14-12).

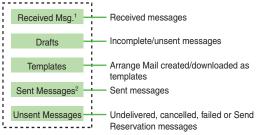
#### Feeling Mail

Ringtone. Vibration and Small Light response varies by the emotion set by sender (see P.14-15, P.14-20 - 14-21).

- Tip An additional contract is required to use S! Mail and receive e-mail from PCs. etc.
  - · Address questions about messaging to SoftBank Customer Centre, General Information (see P.20-28).

#### **Messaging Folders**

Messages are organised in folders by type.



- <sup>1</sup> Received Folder and Folder 1 Folder 7 (My Folders) appear within when Received Msg. View (see P.14-5) is set to Folder View. Spam Folder appears as well if Anti Spam Measures (see P.14-35) is active.
- <sup>2</sup>Sent Folder and Folder 1 Folder 7 (My Folders) appear within when Sent Msg. View (see P.14-5) is set to Folder View.

#### **Memory Status**

- Press → Select *Messaging* → Press → Select Memory Status → Press ■ → Select Received Msg., Sent Total, Sent Msq., Drafts or Unsent Msq. → Press
  - Press to return.
  - Save up to 4 MB or 1,000 messages in Received Msg. folder. Handset stores up to 2 MB or 500 messages between Sent Messages, Drafts and Unsent Messages.
  - A notice appears when Messaging Folder memory is low.
  - Templates memory usage is reflected in memory status of Other Documents in Data Folder (see P.9-2).
  - USIM Card SMS message count and volume do not appear.

#### **Window Description**

Received Msg.

🖳 Kitayama Kaoru

n Okada Takao 🦱 Kitayama Kaoru

● Okada Takao Kitavama Kaoru Okada Takao

Please bring a camera and a tripod to Mr. Yamamoto and Miss Kawahashi's wedding next Sund ay. I will bring a camcorder.

Options View Check

₩edding :02/14 15:05

#### **Messaging Folder Contents**

Select a Messaging folder and press 
to open it.



. Message Status:



sms appears below SMS messages (□). Send Reservation messages are saved to Unsent Messages folder.

. Message Settings:



#### Sender or Recipient

Number, address or name appears.

#### Message Text



• To change message list view, see right.

#### **Message Contents**

Select a message and press to open it.



• To activate Display Backlight, press 0.2% - 9.6%. • Press #3 to open previous message (older one), or press to open next one (newer one).

#### **Views**

#### **Message List Views**







Two-line

Sender+Preview

Subjects+Preview





Sender

Subjects

Message List View is Sender+Preview by default. Follow these steps to switch view.

Main Menu ► Messaging → Settings → General Settings

Select *Message List View* and press

Select a view and press ■

- Tip Alternatively, open a Messaging folder and follow these steps.
  - Press 

    Options 
    Select View Settings 
    Press 
    Pres
  - Shortcut: Open a Messaging folder and press to toggle view.

#### Folder View

Set folders to appear in Received Msg. and Sent Messages folders. Organise messages into folders manually or automatically (see **P.14-31**).

Received Msg. View and Sent Msg. View are *List View* (folders are hidden) by default.

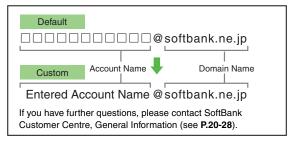
Main Menu ► Messaging ► Settings ► General Settings

- **1** Select *Received Msg. View* or *Sent Msg. View* and press
  - When the folder contains a Secret folder, enter Handset Code → Press ■
- 2 Select Folder View and press
  - 🧾 To hide folders, select *List View* 🖈 Press 🔳

Note When folders are hidden, messages in Secret folders appear in message list.

#### **Customising Handset Address**

Change alphanumerics before @ of the default handset mail address.



- Handset must connect to the Internet to customise handset address.
- Retrieve Network Information (see P.1-21) before customising handset address.
- Customising handset mail address helps reduce spam.
- Default Account Name is random alphanumerics.

Main Menu ► Messaging ► Settings

1 Select Address Setting and press ■

- Handset connects to the Internet.

  2 Select English and press
  - Follow onscreen instructions.
  - Tip 
    Alternatively, customise handset address via Yahoo!
    Keitai Main Menu. (Click 設定・申込, then English, then
    Messaging Settings.)

# Sending Text Messages

- Create Contact Groups beforehand to send the same message to multiple recipients at one time (see P.4-12).
- Save frequently used numbers/addresses to Speed Mail List (see P.14-34).
- Use Multi Job (see P.1-26) to view other messages while creating a message.

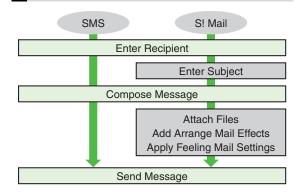
#### **Basics**

Available entry limits vary by Message Type.

	Recipient	Subject	Message	Attachments
SMS	Available*	N/A	Available	N/A
S! Mail	Available	Available	Available	Available

\*SoftBank handset numbers only.

#### **Mail Composition Overview**



#### **Character Entry Limits**

Character entry limit varies by Message Type.

SMS	160 single-byte alphanumerics	
S! Mail	Approximately 30,000 single-byte alphanumerics	

- For SMS, only single-byte alphanumeric entry is available when Char-code (see P.14-37) is GSM 7bit.
- Send up to 300 KB including message text via S! Mail. Message text character limit differs by attachment size or number of recipients.
- Approximate mail size appears in Mail Composition window (see P.14-7).

#### **Creating & Sending SMS Mail**

- 1 Press ■, select *Messaging* and press
  - Alternatively, press I in Standby.
- 2 Select Create New SMS and press ■

Mail Composition window opens.

- 3 Select recipient field and press
  - Entering Recipients: see P.14-10
- 4 Enter recipients
  - To enter a recipient, perform Step 4 on **P.14-8**.
    - Enter Address is not available for SMS.



SMS Mail Composition Window

# **5** Select message text field and press • then enter a message

Alternatively, enter the first character; message text entry window opens automatically.

- Entering Characters: see P.3-5
- 6 Press
  - To edit the message, see Step 8 on P.14-9.
  - To delete the message, see Step 8 on P.14-9.
  - To preview 3D Pictogram, see Step 8 on P.14-9.
  - Delivery Options: see P.14-16
  - Send Reservation: see P.14-18
  - Saving to Drafts: see P.14-18
- 7 Press 🛂 Send

#### Converting SMS Mail to S! Mail

- In SMS Mail Composition window, press ☑ Options ⇒ Select Change to S! Mail ⇒ Press Choose Yes ⇒ Press
  - When entered message text exceeds SMS character limit, a confirmation appears. Choose Yes and press to convert SMS to S! Mail and continue entering text.

#### **Creating & Sending S! Mail**

- **1** Press ■, select *Messaging* and press
  - Alternatively, press 🖾 in Standby.
- 2 Select Create Message and press

Mail Composition window opens.

 Shortcut: In Standby, press ☐ for 1+ seconds



S! Mail Composition Window

#### Select recipient field and press 🔳

Select Recipient window opens.

Entering Recipients: see P.14-10

#### Phone Book

- Select Phone Book and press 🔳
- 2 Select a recipient and press 🔳
  - To search Phone Book, perform Steps 2 - 3 in "Dialling from Phone Book" on P.4-8.
  - When multiple items are saved, select one ▶ Press ■

#### Contact Groups (see P.4-12)

- 1 Select *Select Group* and press ■
- 2 Select a Group and press
  - To add recipients, select recipient field ⇒ Press ⇒ Select *Add Recipient* → Press ■ → Repeat Step 4

#### Sent Mail Records

- Select a recipient and press
  - Sent mail records are names, phone numbers or mail addresses with the corresponding indicators ( ! etc.).

#### Speed Mail List (see P.14-34)

- 2 Select Speed Mail List and press
- Select a recipient and press



Select Recipient Window

#### Direct Entry

- Select Enter Number or Enter Address and press
- 2 Enter recipient's SoftBank handset number or mail address and press
- Select subject field and press

Subject entry window opens. Alternatively, enter the first character to open subject entry window.

- To edit recipients, see P.14-10 "Entering Recipients".
- 6 Enter subject and press
  - Enter up to 512 single-byte alphanumerics.
- Select **■** Text and press **■** then enter a message
  - Entering Characters: see P.3-5
    - After entering My Pictogram from My Pict History, Arrange Mail Composition window (see P.14-12) opens automatically.
    - To enter cross-carrier Pictograms, press □ Options → Select Pict Settings → Press ■ → Select For Docomo. For au. For SoftBank or Common → Press ■ → Select a Pictogram 

      ◆ Press 

      ■
      - Available Pictograms vary by Pict Settings mode.
      - Mode selection applies to the current message only.
      - Changing Pict Settings does not affect entered Pictograms.
    - Creating Arrange Mail: see P.14-12
    - To enter Signature, press 

      Options 
      Select Advanced 

      To enter Signature, press 

      Options 

      Select Advanced 

      → Press ■ Select Signature Press ■
    - Activate Auto Insert (see P.14-36) to enter Signature automatically.

### 🙎 Press 🔳

- To edit the message, select message text field → Press → Edit → Press ■
- To delete the message, select message text field → Press ☑ Options
- ⇒ Select *Remove Text* ⇒ Press ■
- To preview 3D Pictogram, select message text field → Press ☑ Options
  - Select 3D Pictogram → Press ■
  - Preview how the message appears on 3D Pictogram-compatible recipient handsets.
  - Delivery Options: see P.14-16
- Creating Feeling Mail: see P.14-15
- Send Reservation: see P.14-18
- Saving to Drafts: see P.14-18

#### **9** Attach files

Attaching Files: see P.14-10

#### 10 Press 🛂 Send

- Message is sent even if handset is closed.
  - To cancel, press 🛂 Cancel .
  - Message is not sent if cancelled quick enough.

#### **Incoming Calls while Creating Message**

Content is saved temporarily. End the call to return.



#### **Sending from Phone Book Entries**

- Open a Phone Book entry and follow these steps.
  - Phone Numbers
     Select a number → Press → Select Create
     Message → Press → Select S! Mail or SMS →
     Press → Perform from Step 5 on P.14-8 or on P.14-7
  - Mail Addresses
     Select a mail address → Press → Perform from
     Step 5 on P.14-8

#### When Recipient Handset is Off or Out-of-Range

- Messages are stored in Server Mail Box, and delivered when recipient handset detects signal.
  - Messages are deleted if not received by the specified Expiry Time.

#### **Delivery Failure**

- Information window opens (

  □ appears) for delivery failure.
  To send unsent messages, select Sending failure
  - ▶ Press ▶ Select a message ▶ Press ■
- Activate Auto Resend (see P.14-35) to reattempt to send unsent messages automatically up to two times.
  - If messages are not sent after two Automatic Resend attempts, follow the above steps to send manually.
  - Automatic Resend may send the same message twice.

#### **Entering Recipients**

To add recipients, open Mail Composition window (see P.14-7) and follow these steps.

Select recipient field → Press ■ → Select Add

Recipient → Press ■ → Perform from Step 4 on P.14-8

- Press to return.
- Enter up to 20 recipients in total.
- To switch recipient status between To, Cc (carbon copy) and Bcc (blind carbon copy), open S! Mail Composition window and follow these steps.

Select recipient field → Press ■ → Select a recipient → Press ☑ Options → Select Change to To, Change to Cc or Change to Bcc → Press ■

- Other recipients cannot see numbers/addresses set to Bcc.

  To change (adit, open Mail Composition window (see B14.7))
- To change/edit, open Mail Composition window (see P.14-7) and follow these steps.

Select recipient field → Press ■ → Select a recipient → Press ■ → Edit → Press ■

- Press to return.
- To delete, open Mail Composition window (see P.14-7) and follow these steps.

Select recipient field → Press ■ → Select a recipient → Press ☑ Options → Select Delete → Press ■

- To delete all, select *Delete All* instead of *Delete* ⇒ Press ⇒ Choose *Yes* ⇒ Press ■
- Press to return.

Note When a mail address is entered, do not use single-byte katakana or Pictograms in message text and subject.

They may not appear properly on recipient devices.

#### **Attaching Files**

Attach images, sound files, vFiles (Phone Book/schedule entries), etc. to S! Mail messages.

- Attach up to 20 files or 300 KB including message text.
- Confirm compatibility with recipient handsets (file format, services, etc.) before sending files.
- Follow these steps after Step 8 on P.14-9; after Mail Composition window returns, complete and send message.

#### 1 Select SAttach

**9** Select Attach File and press ■

Alternatively, press ☑ Options → Select Attach File → Press ■

#### 3 Image Files

- Select Picture and press ■
- Select a folder and press
  - To capture an image, select *Take Picture* → Press
    - Press to shoot ⇒ Press (Omit the next step.)
    - When confirmation for save location appears, select a location → Press
- Select a file and press
  - For large JPEG images, select attachment size ⇒ Press ■
  - To change image size, select attached image ▶
    Press ☑ ②

    Press ▼ Select Resize Picture ▶ Press ■

    Select a size ▶ Press ■
  - Resize Picture is not available when Multi Job is active or when a non-JPEG (.jpg) image is selected.

#### Sound Files

- Select Sound and press ■
- 2 Select a folder and press
  - To record sound, select *Record Voice* → Press 🔳 → Press ■ to start recording → Press ■ to stop → Select *Accept* → Press ■ → Select *To Phone* Memory or To Memory Card ⇒ Press • (Omit the next step.)
- 3 Select a file and press ■

#### Video Files

- Select *Video* and press
- 2 Select Saved Videos and press
  - To record video, select *Record Video* → Press 🔳 → Press ■ to start recording → Press ■ to stop → Select *Accept* → Press ■ → Select *To Phone* Memory or To Memory Card ⇒ Press • (Omit the next step.)
- 3 Select a file and press ■

#### Flash®/Flash® Ringtone Files (see P.9-7)

- 1 Select Flash® or Flash® Ringtone and press
- 2 Select a file and press

#### **Phone Book Entries**

- Select Attach Contact and press
- 2 Select an entry and press

#### Schedule Entries

- **1** Select *Attach Appointment* and press ■
- 2 Select a date with schedule and press
- Select an entry and press ■

#### **Templates**

- Select Templates and press ■
- 2 Select a file and press

#### **Books**

- Select Books and press ■
- 2 Select a file and press

#### **Custom Screens**

- Select Custom Screens and press
- 2 Select a file and press

#### Other Files

- Select Other Documents and press
- 2 Select a file and press

#### **Deleting Attachments**

- In S! Mail Composition window, select a file 🖈 Press 

  Options 

  Select Remove Item 

  Press 

  Press 

  ■
  - Adding Attachments
- In S! Mail Composition window, select 

  ☐ Attach → Select Attach File → Press ■ → Perform from Step 3 on P.14-10

#### **Creating Arrange Mail**

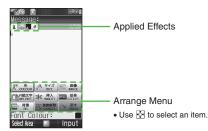
Select font colour, font size, background colour; insert images, background sound, and more.

- Insert one sound or Flash® file per Arrange Mail.
- Enter up to 40 types of My Pictograms per Arrange Mail.
- Follow these steps in Step 7 on P.14-8: after S! Mail Composition window returns, complete and send message.

### Press ☑ Options

## Select *Arrange* and press

Arrange Mail Composition window opens. Shortcut: Press [ for 1+ seconds



Arrange Mail Composition Window

#### Changing Font Colour

- Select Font Colour: and press ■
- 2 Select a colour and press
- S Enter text
  - To open Arrange menu, press \( \subseteq \).
  - To change colour of entered text, press 🖾 Select Area 🖈 Select the start point → Press ■ → Select the end point → Press Select Font Colour: → Press Press ⇒ Select a colour ⇒ Press ■
  - To change colour of all entered text, press 🖾 Select Area Press ☐ All Select Font Colour: Press ■ Select a colour Press ■

#### Changing Font Size

- Select Font Size: and press
- 2 Select a size and press
- Enter text
  - To open Arrange menu, press \( \subseteq \).
  - To change font size of entered text, press 🖾 🛭 🗫 Select the start point → Press ■ → Select the end point → Press ■ → Select Font Size: → Press ■ → Select a size 

    ◆ Press
  - To change font size of all entered text, press ☑ SelectArea Press ☐ All Press ☐ Select Font Size: Press ☐
    - Select a size ⇒ Press ■

#### Inserting Images

- Select *Insert Picture* and press
- 2 Select *Pictures* or *DCIM* and press ■
- 3 Select a file and press
  - To capture an image, select *Insert Picture* → Press
    - → Select Take Picture → Press → Press to shoot ▶ Press ■
- Use to select target location and press
  - . Omit this step if there is no text.

#### Inserting My Pictograms (see P.9-7)

- 1 Select *Insert My Pictogram* and press Data Folder (My Pictograms) opens.
- 2 Select a file and press
- 3 Press
  - Alternatively, while entering message text, press \*\*\*\*\*\* until *History* appears → Press # to open My Pict History → Select a file → Press ■
    - After entering My Pictogram, Arrange Mail Composition window opens automatically.
    - To select My Pictograms from file list, press # in My Pict History.

#### Inserting Background Sound

- Select *Insert* and press
- 2 Select *Insert BGM Sound* and press ■
- Select Ring Songs-Tones or Music and press 🔳
- 4 Select a file and press
  - To record sound, select *Insert* → Press → Select Insert BGM Sound → Press ■ → Select Record Voice → Press Press to start recording → Press ■ to stop → Select *Accept* → Press ■ → Select To Phone Memory or To Memory Card ▶ Press (Omit the next step.)
  - To delete inserted sound, select Insert ⇒ Press ⇒ Select *Delete BGM Sound* → Press ■ → Choose Yes ⇒ Press ■

#### Inserting Flash® (see P.9-7) File

- Select *Insert* and press
- 2 Select *Insert Flash* and press Data Folder (Flash®) opens.
- 3 Select a file and press
  - To preview inserted Flash®, press ഈ Input ▶ Press ☐ Options → Select *Preview* → Press ☐
  - To delete inserted file, press ∑ Input → Move cursor before the Flash® file icon → Press

#### Inserting Horizontal Lines

- Select *Insert* and press
- 2 Select *Insert Line* and press
  - Press to return.

#### Flashing Text

- Select Effect and press ■
- Select Blink and press ■
- Select Blink On and press
- 4 Enter text
  - To flash entered text, press Select the start point → Press → Select the end point → Press → Select Effect → Press → Select Blink On → Press → Select Blink On → Press → Select Blink → Press → Select the end point → Press → Select the end point → Press → Select Effect → Press → Select Blink → Press → Select Effect → Press → Select Blink → Select Blink → Press → Select Blink → Press → Select Blink → Select Blink → Press → Select Blink → Select Bl

#### **Scrolling Text**

- 1 Select Effect and press ■
- Select Scrolling and press ■

Select Blink Off ⇒ Press ■

- Select Right to Left or Swing and press
- 4 Enter text
  - To scroll entered text, press 
    Select the start point → Press → Select the end point → Press → Select Effect → Press → Select Scrolling → Press → Select Right to Left or Swing → Press →
  - To cancel, press ☑ Mattle → Select the start point → Press → Select the end point → Press → Select Effect → Press → Select Scrolling → Press → Select Scroll Off → Press ■

#### Aligning Text

- Select Effect and press ■
- 2 Select Alignment and press
- Select Alignment Left, Alignment Centre or Alignment Right and press ■
- 4 Enter text
  - To align entered text, press ☑ Select the start point → Press → Select the end point → Press → Select Effect → Press → Select Alignment → Press → Select Alignment Left, Alignment Centre or Alignment Right → Press ■

#### **Changing Background Colour**

- Select Background Colour: and press
- Select a colour and press ■

#### Cancelling All

- Select Normal and press ■
- Choose Yes and press
  - All Arrange Mail settings are cancelled and S! Mail Composition window returns.

#### **Cancelling Last Action**

- In Arrange Mail Composition window, select Undo ⇒ Press ■
  - Does not apply to Background sound insertion/deletion.

#### **Creating Templates**

- In S! Mail Composition window, press ☑ Options →
  Select Save as Template → Press → Enter name →
  Press → Select Save here... → Press
  - Entered recipients, subject and attachments are deleted.
  - Templates can also be downloaded via the Internet, etc.

#### **Creating Arrange Mail from Templates**

In Standby

Press ■ → Select *Messaging* → Press ■ → Select *Templates* → Press ■ → Select one → Press ■

- To check Templates, select one in Templates list and press ☑ Options → Select Preview → Press ■
- To switch Template name display, select one in Templates list and press ☑ ①▼tions → Select *Item Displayed* → Press → Select *File Name* or *Title* → Press ■
- To organise Templates, see P.9-8 "Managing Files & Folders".
- In S! Mail Composition Window

Press ☑ Options → Select Launch Template →
Press ■ → Select one → Press ■

#### Creating Feeling Mail

Apply Feeling Mail setting to S! Mail; corresponding Pictogram appears to the left of subject, and recipient handset responds according to Link to Feeling settings (see **P.14-20**).

- Send Feeling Mail to compatible SoftBank handsets only.
- Feeling Mail Pictograms appear as standard Pictograms in subjects on incompatible recipient handsets.
- Response to Feeling Mail depends on recipients' Link to Feeling settings (see P.14-20).
- Follow these steps in Step 8 on P.14-9; after Mail Composition window returns, complete and send message.
- 1 Press ☑ Options
- 2 Select Feeling Settings and press 🔳
- **3** Select *Happy/Glad*, *OK/Good*, *Sad/Sorry*, *NG/Bad* or *Imp./Notice* and press ■
- **4** Select a Pictogram and press S! Mail Composition window returns.

#### **Delivery Options**

- Options are effective only when sent to compatible handsets.
- Settings are valid for one message.
- Follow these steps after Step 6 on P.14-7 (for SMS) or Step 8 on P.14-9 (for S! Mail): press to return to Mail Composition window then complete and send message.

#### SMS/S! Mail Delivery Option

Set to receive Delivery Report (see P.14-20)

Available when messaging to SoftBank handset numbers.

Press 

Options 

Select Messaging Settings 

Note: The second of the Press ■ Select Delivery Report Press ■ Press Choose *On* or *Off* ⇒ Press ■

#### **SMS Delivery Option**

Set a time limit to store sent messages in Server Mail Box

Default Maximum

Press 

Options 

Select Messaging Settings 

Note: The second of the Press ■ Select Expiry Time Press ■ Select a limit **▶** Press ■

#### S! Mail Delivery Options

Designate a different mail address for receiving replies

Available when reply-to address is saved.

Press 

Options 

Select Messaging Settings 

→

Press ■ Select Reply To Settings Press ■ Press Choose *On* or *Off* ▶ Press ■

To set reply-to address, see P.14-38 "Reply To Settings".

Set message priority

Default Normal

Press ☐ Options → Select Messaging Settings → Press ■ Select Priority Press ■ Select priority **▶** Press ■

Priority setting does not affect delivery speed.

Select whether to delete Server Mail after forwarding it

Available when forwarding Server Mail (Remote Forward). Default Not Delete

Press ■ Select Remote Fwd. Action Press ■

Select Not Delete or Del. After Forward ⇒ Press ■

Set the message to be deleted from recipient handsets once read

Available when messaging to SoftBank handset numbers.

**Default**Off

Press ☐ Options → Select Messaging Settings →

Press ■ Select Set Auto Delete Press ■ >

Choose *On* or *Off* ⇒ Press ■

```
Set to show a reply request
```

Available when messaging to SoftBank handset numbers.

Press 

Options 

Select Messaging Settings 

→ Press ■ Select Reply Request Press ■ Press

Choose On or Off 

◆ Press

Set to show a do not forward request

Available when messaging to SoftBank handset numbers.

Press 

☐ Options 
☐ Select Messaging Settings 
☐

Press ■ Select Forward NG Press ■ Press Choose On or Off 

Press ■

Set to show a do not delete request

Available when messaging to SoftBank handset numbers.

Press 

☐ Options 
☐ Select Messaging Settings 
☐ Press ■ Select *Delete NG* → Press ■ → Choose On or Off → Press ■

Set up a question: recipients need to answer it correctly to open the message

Available when messaging to SoftBank handset numbers. Default Off

#### **Setting Up Quiz**

Press 

Options 

Select Messaging Settings 

Note: The second of the Press ■ Select Quiz Press ■ Select Switch On/Off → Press ■ → Choose On → Press ■ → Select Question → Press ■ → Enter a question → Press ■ Select *Answer* Press ■ Enter the answer → Press □ → Press □ Done

- Entered guestion and answer are deleted when Quiz is set to Off.
  - Default question (When is my birthday?) returns.

#### **Editing Question/Answer**

Press 

☐ Options 
☐ Select Messaging Settings 
☐ Press ■ → Select Quiz → Press ■ → Select Edit Question → Press ■ → Select Question → Press ■ ▶ Enter a question Press Select Answer Press ■ ▶ Enter the answer ▶ Press ■ ▶ Press ☑ Done

Show a comment and open/play an attached file automatically before message text is opened on recipient handsets

Available when messaging to SoftBank handset numbers. Follow these steps after Step 9 on P.14-9.

#### **Activating/Cancelling**

Select a file → Press □ Options → Select Set Auto Play File → Press ■ → Select Switch On/Off → Press ■ → Choose *On* or *Off* → Press ■

• Comment is deleted when Set Auto Play File is cancelled. **Entering a Comment** 

Select a file → Press □ Options → Select Set Auto Play File → Press ■ → Select Enter Message → Press ■ ▶ Enter text ▶ Press ■

- · Apply to one file per message.
- Not available for Arrange Mail.
- Set Auto Play File appears only for compatible files.

Set Auto Delete, Reply Request, Forward NG, Delete Note > NG, Quiz and Set Auto Play File cannot be applied at the same time: select one per message.

#### **Send Reservation**

Send messages at the designated date/time in the future.

- Messages are saved to Unsent Messages folder.
- Save up to ten Send Reservation messages.
- Information window opens for successful delivery.
- Follow these steps after Step 6 on P.14-7 (for SMS) or Step 8 on P.14-9 (for S! Mail).
- **1** Press □ Options
- 2 Select Send Reservation and press
- 3 Select Date & Time and press
  - To send messages ten seconds after signal returns, select
    Within the Network → Press Choose Yes → Press
  - 4 Enter date/time
    - Select date/time within a week.
- **5** Choose *Yes* and press
  - When Auto Resend (see P.14-35) is Off, failed Send Reservation messages (due to out-of-range or power-off) will not be resent.

#### **Using Drafts**

## Saving to Drafts

When memory is full, delete messages (see **P.14-29**) before creating new ones.

Follow these steps after Step 6 on **P.14-7** (for SMS) or Step 8 on **P.14-9** (for S! Mail).

- **1** Press ☑ Options
- 2 Select Save to Drafts and press

Message is saved to Drafts folder.

Note Recipient status (To/Cc/Bcc) or the order in which attachments appear may change when saving S! Mail messages.

#### Sending from Drafts

Main Menu Messaging

#### 1 Select *Drafts* and press ■

Saved messages appear.

- To open properties, select a message → Press ☑ Options → Select Message Details → Press ■
- Press to return.
- To delete draft messages, select one → Press ☑ Options → Select Delete → Press → Choose Yes → Press ■
- 2 Select a message and press

Mail Composition window (see P.14-7) opens with some fields filled in.

#### Z Edit/send the message

- For details, see procedures for creating SMS (see P.14-7) or S! Mail (see P.14-7 - 14-9).
- Sent messages are deleted from Drafts.
- To save edited message to Drafts again, press 🖾 Options 🖈 Select Save to Drafts → Press ■ → Select Save as New or Save (overwrite) → Press ■

## Incoming Text Messages

#### **Opening New Messages**

- **Delivery Notice appears and** Information window opens (

  appears) for new mail
  - · If closed, open handset for new information to see Delivery Notice appear and Information window open.
  - Incoming Messages: see P.6-6



Received Msg. folder opens.

- Alternatively, press while Delivery Notice appears.
- When folders appear (see P.14-5 "Folder View"), select one → Press ■





#### Select a message and press

Message window opens.

- 3D animation plays for compatible messages (see P.14-24 "3D Pictogram"). To cancel 3D Pictogram, see P.14-25 "Display Effect".
- To retrieve complete S! Mail messages, see P.14-21.
- Using Messages: see P.14-23



- Tip ► When no Delivery Notice or Information window appears, open from Received Msg. folder (see P.14-23 "Checking Messages").
  - Handset does not respond to messages with Low Priority.

#### **Retrieving Server Mail Box Messages Manually**

Press ☑ → Select Retrieve New Msg. → Press ■

#### Messages with Reply Request

- When closing a message containing Reply Request, a confirmation appears.
  - To reply, choose **Yes** and press .
  - Confirmation does not appear for replied messages.

#### Messages with Quiz

- A question appears when opening a message locked with Quiz. To open, press , enter the answer and press .
  - Message cannot be opened until the correct answer is entered.
  - Subject and message text do not appear in message list.

#### **Auto Plav**

- If Set Auto Play File is set to an attached file, a comment appears and the file opens/plays automatically upon opening the message.
  - Some files may not open/play.

#### **Delivery Report**

■ When messages are sent with Delivery Report (see P.14-35)
On, handset receives a Delivery Report from Server Mail
Box. To open Delivery Report, follow these steps in
Information window (see P.14-19).

Select *Delivery Report* → Press ■ → Select a message with unconfirmed Delivery Report → Press ■ → Press ☞ Report

- When Report list appears, press to open first report
   Press ➡ Select next report ➡ Press ■

#### **New Mail Out of Standby**

- A double beep sounds and a notice such as **New Message from (Sender's name)** appears.
  - To change/hide notice or mute double beep, see P.14-36 "Message Notice".
- Information window opens when handset returns to Standby.

#### When Handset Address is Changed

New handset address confirmation from SoftBank arrives. To update My Details automatically, follow these steps.

Select the message → Press ■ → Choose *Yes* → Press ■

My Details cannot be updated when three mail addresses are already saved.

#### Receiving Feeling Mail

Ringtone, Vibration and Small Light respond according to emotion set by sender and Information window opens.

- Ringtone, Small Light and Vibration settings in Phone Book take priority.
- Feeling Mail settings are disabled when:
  - Sender is saved in Phone Book as Secret entry
- The message was filtered as spam
- The message was sorted to a Secret folder
- Customising Handset Response

Default Settings:

	Happy/ Glad	OK/ Good	Sad/ Sorry	NG/ Bad	Importance/ Notice
Idle Screen Info.	On				
Light On/Off	On				
Light Colour	Violet	White	Blue	Red	Yellow
Vibration Pattern	Link to Sound				
Ringtone On/Off	On				
Ringtone	Sound Effect 6	Sound Effect 7	Sound Effect 8	Sound Effect 9	Sound Effect 10
Duration	5 seconds				



Show or hide subject, sender and graphics above Information window for received Feeling Mail

▶ Messaging ⇒ Settings ⇒ General Settings ⇒ Main Menu Link to Feelina 

Idle Screen Info.

Choose On (show) or Off → Press

Set Small Light illumination for incoming Feeling Mail

▶ Messaging ⇒ Settings ⇒ General Settings ⇒ Main Menu 

#### **Activating/Deactivating**

Select Switch On/Off → Press ■ → Choose On or Off ⇒ Press ■

#### **Selecting Light Colour**

Select Light Colour → Press ■ → Select Happy/ Glad, OK/Good, Sad/Sorry, NG/Bad or Importance/ Notice → Press Select a colour → Press

Set handset vibration for incoming Feeling Mail

▶ Messaging ⇒ Settings ⇒ General Settings ⇒ **Main Menu** Link to Feeling → Vibration Pattern

Select On, Link to Sound or Off → Press

Select sound/video for incoming Feeling Mail: set duration

▶ Messaging ⇒ Settings ⇒ General Settings ⇒ Main Menu 

#### **Activating/Deactivating**

Select Switch On/Off → Press ■ → Choose On or Off ⇒ Press ■

#### **Assign Tone/Video**

Select Assign Tone → Press ■ → Select Happy/ Glad, OK/Good, Sad/Sorry, NG/Bad or Importance/ Notice 

→ Press 

→ Select Preset Sounds. Ring Songs-Tones, Music, Videos or Flash®Ringtones ▶ Press ■ Select a tone or file Press ■

#### Duration

Select *Duration* → Press ■ → Enter time → Press ■

#### **Retrieving Complete S! Mail Messages**

Centre sends initial portion of S! Mail message when:

- The message was sent to multiple recipients
- Files are attached to the message

(S! Mail Notice) appears for S! Mail messages in Received Msg. folder when the remaining portion is in Server Mail Box.

- Tip To retrieve complete S! Mail via Mail List, see P.14-22.
  - To always retrieve complete S! Mail automatically, set Message DL to Always Download (see P.14-38).

Messaging

Main Menu Messaging

1 Select Received Msg. and press

When folders appear, select one ▶ Press ■

🙎 Select a message with 🗟 and press 🔳

3 Press 🖭 More

Download starts.

• After download, complete message appears.

To cancel download, press 🗹 Cancel.

Note Messages larger than 300 KB may be partially deleted depending on Server status.

#### **Retrieving Mail List**

Retrieve a list of messages stored in Server Mail Box (Server Mail).

Main Menu Messaging

Select Server Mail Box and press

To open retrieved Mail List, select Mail List → Press ■

To retrieve all Server Mail, select Retrieve All Mails ⇒ Press ■ (Omit the next steps.)

To delete all Server Mail, select **Delete All Mails** → Press ■

▶ Enter Handset Code ⇒ Press ■ ⇒ Select Except New Msg. or Delete All ⇒ Press ■ (Omit the next steps.)

2 Select Mail List and press 🔳

**3** Press **□** Options

4 Select Retrieve Mail List and press

• When Mail List has already been retrieved, it is refreshed.

To cancel retrieval, press [27] Cancel .

Using Mail List: see below

After retrieval, Mail List appears.

#### Server Status

To check Server status, follow these steps after Step 1 on the left.

Select Mailbox Volume → Press ■

■ Press to return.

■ To update Server Mail Volume, press ■.

#### **Using Mail List**

Get Retrieve complete S! Mail messages

#### Select a message ◆ Press ■

To retrieve all Server Mail, press ☑ Options → Select Retrieve All → Press ■

 Retrieved messages are deleted from Mail List and saved to Received Msg. folder.

• To select multiple messages to retrieve, see P.14-25.

Forward Server Mail directly to other SoftBank handsets. PCs. etc.

Select a message ▶ Press ☑ Options ▶ Select Remote Forward → Press ■ → Select recipient field Press ■ Description Press P.14-8) **▶** Press 🛂 Send

Delete Server Mail

Select a message → Press □ Options → Select Delete → Press ■ → Choose Yes → Press ■

To delete all Server Mail, press ☑ Options → Select Delete All → Press ■ → Enter Handset Code → Press ■ → Choose *Yes* → Press ■

Open Server Mail properties

Select a message → Press □ Options → Select Message Details 

◆ Press 

■

Press 🔳 to return.

# Using Messages

#### **Checking Messages**

To open Received Msg. folder while using another function, press for 1+ seconds.

■ While watching TV. Received Msg. folder opens in the lower half of Display.

Main Menu Messaging

#### Select Received Msg., Drafts, Sent Messages or Unsent Messages and press ■

Messages appear.

While Information window appears, select *Message* Press

When folders appear, select one ▶ Press 🔳

To open properties (not available for unsent messages). select a message → Press □ Options → Select Message **Details** → Press ■

■ Press 🖟 to scroll down.

■ Press ■ to return.

To open sender/recipient details, select a received or sent message → Press ☐ Options → Select View Mail Address ▶ Press ■ Select sender or recipient ▶ Press ■

■ To return, press 🐃 🕨 Press 🚾 🖈 Press 🚾

■ Open sender/recipient details and press 🖾 Options to copy number/address, save to Phone Book or set as an auto sort kev (see P.14-32).

# Messaging

#### 2 Select a message and press 🔳

- When an image is attached, press to open it. Images may not appear if file size is too large.
- When a question appears, press and enter the correct answer to open the message.
  - Message cannot be opened until the correct answer is entered.
- Mail Composition window (see P.14-7) opens after opening messages in Drafts or Templates.
- Use ! to scroll.
- To jump to the top or bottom of the message, press ☑ Options

  ⇒ Select Scroll Jump ⇒ Press ⇒ Select Jump to Top
  or Jump to Bottom ⇒ Press ■

Note > Attached text file contents may not appear correctly.

#### **Changing Encoding**

In Step 1 on P.14-23, select Received Msg. and press ■, then perform Step 2 above and follow these steps.

Press ☑ Options → Select Char-code → Press ■ → Select an option → Press ■

#### Slide Playback

- A slide consists of message text with image/sound or video.

  After Step 2 above, press ☑ Options → Select Slide

  Play → Press
  - Press to stop.

#### **Editing Sent/Unsent Messages**

■ In Step 1 on P.14-23, select Sent Messages or Unsent Messages and press ■ then follow these steps.

Select a message → Press ☑ Options → Select Edit & Send or Edit → Press ■ → Press 및 → Perform from Step 5 on P.14-7 or on P.14-8

#### **Copying Message Contents**

- After Step 2 on the left, press 🖾 Options 🖈 Select Copy
- → Press → Select Address, Subject or Message Text
- Press
  - For Message Text or Subject, use to select the first character of text → Press Use to select the end point → Press
  - Paste text in other windows (see P.3-13 "Copy/Cut & Paste"). Copied Arrange Mail messages pastes as text; My Pictograms, images, etc. paste as single-byte spaces.
  - Select a folder other than Drafts, Unsent Messages or Templates.

#### Saving SMS to USIM Card

- In Step 1 on P.14-23, select Received Msg. or Sent Messages and press ■ then follow these steps.
  - Select an SMS message → Press ☑ Options →
    Select Advanced → Press → Select SIM Sync →
    Press ■
  - The number of savable messages varies by USIM Card.
  - SIM Sync appears only for compatible USIM Cards.

#### 3D Pictogram

To animate Pictograms, Emoticons and compatible words such as おはよう、食事 and 新幹線 included in the first 150 characters of message text, in 3D, follow these steps after Step 1 on P.14-23.

#### ¶ Select a message and press ■

- Press ☑ Options Select 3D Pictogram and press Press 27 Stop to stop animation. • Press 
  to pause/resume. 3D Pictogram Settings Enable or disable 3D Pictogram upon opening received messages Default Only Unread Messaging → Settings → General Settings → 3D Main Menu Pictogram → Display Effect Select Always, Only Unread or Disable ⇒ Press ■ Change background colour and animation speed Default Background Colour: Random, Display Speed: Standard ▶ Messaging ⇒ Settings ⇒ General Settings ⇒ 3D Main Menu Pictoaram **Background Colour** Select Background Colour → Press ■ → Select a colour or Random 

  ◆ Press 

  ■

**Display Speed** Select Display Speed → Press ■ → Select speed → Press =

#### Selecting Multiple Messages

Select multiple messages to protect, delete, change the status of or move all selected items simultaneously.

Main Menu Messaging

Select a folder and press

■ When folders appear within, select one 🏓 Press 🔳

- Select a message and press [Y/] Check
  - ☑ appears.
  - To uncheck, select a message with ☑ ▶ Press 🗹 Uncheck
- Repeat Step 2 as required
  - To uncheck all, press ☑ Options → Select Unselect All → Press
- Switch to Read/Unread

Change received message status to read or unread.

Main Menu Messaging

- Select Received Msg. and press
  - When folders appear, select one → Press ■
- Switching Status of a Message
  - 1 Select a message and press □ Options
  - Switching Status of Selected Messages 1 Select messages (perform from Step 2
    - above) and press □ Options
    - Skip ahead to Step 4.
  - Select Advanced and press
- Select Switch to Unread or Switch to Read and press =

#### **Replying to Messages**

Main Menu Messaging

Select Received Msg. and press

When folders appear, select one ▶ Press 🔳

Select a message and press

To reply to sender only without quoting text, press 🖭 Reply

- Skip ahead to Step 5
- Mail Composition window opens.

3 Press ☑ Options

A Replying to SoftBank Handset

■ Select Reply or Reply All and press

2 Select S! Mail, S! Mail (History), SMS or SMS (History) and press

- For S! Mail or S! Mail (History), S! Mail Composition window opens.
- For SMS or SMS (History), SMS Mail Composition window opens.

Replying to E-mail

Select Reply or Reply All and press ■

2 Select S! Mail or S! Mail (History) and press 🔳

S! Mail Composition window opens.

**5** Complete and send message (perform from Step 5 on P.14-7 or on P.14-8)

- Tip Select *Reply All* to send the same message to the sender and up to 19 recipients (To/Cc) of the original message at one time. Reply All may not appear for some messages.
  - For Reply All, your handset may be included in recipients.
  - Select SMS (History) or S! Mail (History) to quote the original message text when replying.

#### **Forwarding Messages**

Main Menu Messaging

Select Received Msg. and press

When folders appear, select one ▶ Press 🔳

Select a message and press ■

Press ☑ Options

Select Forward and press

- For S! Mail messages, S! Mail Composition window opens.
- To forward SMS messages, select S! Mail or SMS and press . Mail Composition window opens.
- 5 Select recipient field and press Select Recipient window opens.

Enter recipients and press

To enter a recipient, perform Step 4 on P.14-8.

#### 7 Press 🗹 Send

 Files attached to the original message are automatically attached to forwarded messages.

#### Forwarding Forward NG Messages

Sender prohibit to forward. Forward this message? appears.

To forward, choose *Yes* ▶ Press ■

#### Forwarding Server Mail

Follow these steps after Step 1 on P.14-26.

Select an S! Mail Notice (♣) → Press ☑ ☑ ☑ IDIOIS → Select Forward → Press ■ → Select Notifi.

Forward or Remote Forward → Press ■ → Perform from Step 5 in "Forwarding Messages" on P.14-26

- Some messages may not be forwardable.
- Notifi. Forward forwards S! Mail Notice subject and message text only.

#### **Cancelling Sent Messages**

Send cancellation request to delete sent messages saved in recipient's received message folder. Subjects of cancellation requests are prefaced with **Del**:.

- Available for S! Mail messages sent to compatible SoftBank handsets.
- Sent messages may not be deleted if message text is short.
- Protected sent messages cannot be deleted.

Main Menu Messaging

**1** Select Sent Messages and press ■

When folders appear, select one ▶ Press ■

- 2 Select a message and press ☑ Options
  - When selected sent message is addressed to multiple recipients, cancellation request is sent to all the recipients.
- 3 Select Set Sent Cancel and press ■
- **4** Choose Yes and press ■

Handset receives a Delivery Report.

#### **Linked Info**

#### Saving to Phone Book

Save a linked phone number/mail address from within message text or sender's/recipient's number/address to Phone Book. In message text, available numbers/addresses are selectable with !.

Main Menu Messaging

- Select Received Msg. or Sent Messages and press 🔳
  - When folders appear, select one → Press ■
- Select a message and press
- Saving Sender's/Recipient's Address
  - 1 Press □ Options
  - 2 Select Save Address and press ■
  - 3 Select a phone number or mail address and press

Saving Linked Info

- 1 Select a phone number or mail address and press 🔳
- 2 Select Save to Phone Book or Save Address and press
- Select As New Entry and press

Number or address is entered in corresponding Phone Book field. Complete other fields and save (see P.4-4).

- 📕 To save to an existing Phone Book entry, open one Ϸ Press 🔳
  - ▶ Press [Y] Save

#### **Using Linked Info**

Use linked numbers, addresses or URLs (http://, https://or rtsp://) within message text to place calls, send messages or access Internet sites. Available numbers/addresses/ URLs are selectable with .

Main Menu Messaging

- Select Received Msg., Sent Messages or Unsent *Messages* and press
  - When folders appear, select one → Press ■
- Select a message and press ■
- **?** Dialling Numbers
  - Select a number and press
  - 2 Select Call or Video Call and press

#### Sending Messages

- Select a SoftBank handset number or mail address and press
- 2 Select *Create Message* and press
  - For phone numbers, select S! Mail or SMS ⇒ Press Complete and send message (Perform from Step 5 on P.14-7 or on P.14-8.)
  - For mail addresses, complete and send S! Mail (perform from Step 5 on P.14-8).

#### Accessing Internet Sites

- Select a URL and press ■
- 2 Choose *Yes* and press ■

Handset connects to the Internet.

 Video/sound plays for rtsp://URLs (see P.15-13 "Streaming").

#### **Protecting Messages**

Protect important messages in Received Msg. or Sent Messages folder from unintentional deletion. Protected messages cannot be deleted.

Main Menu Messaging

Select Received Msg. or Sent Messages and press 🔳

When folders appear, select one ▶ Press 🔳

**9** Protecting a Message

1 Select a message and press 
☐ Options

• To cancel protection, select a message with .

#### Protecting Selected Messages

1 Select messages (perform from Step 2 in "Selecting Multiple Messages" on P.14-25) and press □ Options

**?** Select *Lock* and press ■

- appears for protected messages.
- To cancel protection, select *Unlock* → Press 🔳

#### **Deleting Messages**

Protected messages cannot be deleted.

Selecting Messages to Delete

Main Menu Messaging

- Select Received Msg., Drafts, Sent Messages or Unsent Messages and press ■
  - 🧾 When folders appear, select one Ϸ Press 🔳

Deleting a Message

1 Select a message and press □ Options

**Deleting Selected Messages** 

- 1 Select messages (perform from Step 2 in "Selecting Multiple Messages" on P.14-25) and press □ Options
- Select *Delete* and press
- Choose *Yes* and press ■

It may take some time to delete messages.

#### Deleting Delete NG Messages

- Sender prohibit to delete. Delete this message? appears. To delete, choose Yes ▶ Press ■
  - Confirmation does not appear for Delete All.

# 14

#### **Deleting Server Mail**

Select Received Msg. in Step 1 on P.14-29 and follow these steps.

Select an S! Mail Notice (

→ Press 

Options 

→ Select *Delete* → Press ■ → Select *Notification*, Remote Delete or Notifi. and Remote Press - + Choose *Yes* ▶ Press ■

· Some messages cannot be deleted.

#### **Delete All**

Messaging Main Menu

Select Received Msg., Drafts, Sent Messages or Unsent Messages and press ■

When folders appear, select one ▶ Press 🔳

Press ☑ Options

• To delete messages in Drafts or Unsent Messages, skip ahead to Step 4.

Select Advanced and press

Select *Delete All* and press ■

When folder contains protected messages, select **Delete All** or Except Locked Msq. → Press

5 Enter Handset Code and press

#### Saving Attachments to Data Folder

Save attached images, sounds, vFiles (Phone Book/ schedule entries, etc.) and other files to Data Folder.

Main Menu Messaging

Select Received Msg. or Sent Messages and press =

When folders appear, select one ▶ Press 🔳

Select a message and press ■

Select a file and press 
☐ Options

To open properties, select *File Details* → Press

■ Press ■ to return.

To switch display size, select *Picture Appearance* → Press ■ Select Normal or Fit for Screen > Press ■

Select Save to Data Folder and press

Enter name and press ■

• To save without changing file name, press and proceed to Step 6.

Select Save here.. and press

Message window returns.

• When memory is full, a confirmation appears. Delete files (see P.9-9) and try again.

To save to Memory Card, press ☑ Options → Select Change to Memory Card → Press ■ → Select Save here.. → Press

#### **Using Attachments**

Assign attached files as Wallpaper, ringtone or ringvideo directly from messages and save to Data Folder.

Main Menu Messaging

**1** Select *Received Msg.* or *Sent Messages* and press ■

📕 When folders appear, select one 🗪 Press 🔳

2 Select a message and press

3 Select a file and press ☑ Options

4 Wallpaper

1 Select Save as Wallpaper and press

Ringtone

Select Set as Ringtone and press ■

Ringvideo

■ Select Set as Ring Video and press

5 Enter name and press

**6** Select *Save here..* and press 🔳

Wallpaper, ringtone or ringvideo is set.

For images smaller or larger than Display, select *Centred*,

Full Screen or Fit Image → Press ■

7 Press 🔳

#### My Folders

Organise received/sent messages into My Folders. Activate Folder View beforehand (see **P.14-5**).

### Adding My Folders

Create up to 13 folders in addition to default Folder 1 - 7.

Main Menu Messaging

**1** Select *Received Msg.* or *Sent Messages* and press ■

**2** Press **□** Options

3 Select Create New Folder and press

♣ Enter name and press♣ Enter up to 20 characters.

Renaming My Folders

Main Menu Messaging

1 Select Received Msg. or Sent Messages and press

2 Select a folder (My Folder) and press ☑ Options

- Select *Rename* and press
  - To select a Secret folder, see P.14-33 "Unlock Temporarily" or "Cancel Secret".
- Enter name and press
  - Enter up to 20 characters.
- **Moving Messages**
- Protected or incoming linked messages cannot be moved.
- To move files to a Secret folder, unlock temporarily or cancel Secret beforehand.

Main Menu Messaging

- Select Received Msg. or Sent Messages and press 🔳
- Select a folder and press
  - To select a Secret folder, see P.14-33 "Unlock Temporarily" or "Cancel Secret"
- **?** Moving a Message
  - 1 Select a message and press □ Options

#### Moving Multiple Messages

- 1 Select messages (perform from Step 2 in "Selecting Multiple Messages" on P.14-25) and press 🖾 Options
  - Skip ahead to Step 5.
- Select *Advanced* and press
- Select *Move to Folder* and press
- Select a folder and press

#### **Setting Auto Sort Keys**

Set keys (sender/recipient, S! Mail subject or SMS message text string) by folder to sort received/sent messages automatically.

- Specify up to 20 keys for each folder including Spam Folder (see P.14-35 "Anti Spam Measures").
- Keys in folders with smaller numbers have higher priority.
- Settings apply to newly received or sent messages.

Main Menu Messaging

- Select Received Msg. or Sent Messages and press 🔳
- Select a folder (My Folder or Spam Folder) and press 🖾 Options
  - To select a Secret folder, see P.14-33 "Unlock Temporarily" or "Cancel Secret"
- Select My Folders and press ■
- Select a blank entry and press
  - To delete entries, select one ▶ Press 🖾 Options ▶ Select Delete or Clear All → Press ■ → Choose Yes → Press ■

## 5 Sort by Sender/Recipient

- Select Address and press
- **■** Enter sender/recipient (perform Step 4 on P.14-8)
  - To change entries, select one → Press ☑ Options → Select Replace → Press → Perform Step 4 on P.14-8

Sort by Subject (S! Mail) or Text String (SMS)

- Select Subject and press
- 2 Enter text and press
  - Enter up to 40 single-byte alphanumerics.

## Secret Folder

Hide folders to require Handset Code entry for access. Handset does not respond to messages sorted to Secret folders when Secret Folder (see **P.14-37**) in Message Notice is set to *No Response*.

#### Main Menu Messaging

- 1 Select Received Msg. or Sent Messages and press
- 2 Select a folder (My Folder) and press 🖾 Options
- 3 Select Set Secret and press
- 4 Enter Handset Code and press

#### **Unlock Temporarily**

For temporary access to Secret folders, set folders to appear and follow these steps.

After Step 1 on the left, press ☑ Options → Select

Unlock Temporarily → Press ■ → Enter Handset

Code → Press ■

 Secret folders are hidden next time Received Msg. or Sent Messages folder is opened.

#### **Cancel Secret**

■ Unlock Secret folders temporarily and follow these steps.

Select a Secret folder → Press ☑ Options → Select

Unset Secret → Press ■ → Enter Handset Code →

Press ■

## Deleting Folders

Empty folder (move or delete messages) beforehand.

Main Menu Messaging

- Select Received Msg. or Sent Messages and press
- 2 Select a folder (My Folder or Spam Folder) and press ☑ Options
- 3 Select *Delete* and press
  - Confirmation appears when auto sort keys are set to the folder. Choose Yes → Press ■
- 4 Enter Handset Code and press

## Additional Functions

## **Speed Mail List**

Save up to ten frequently used numbers/addresses here to use Speed Mail (see right). When creating messages, reference recipient addresses from Speed Mail List (see P.14-8).

Main Menu ► Messaging → Settings → Speed Mail List

Select *<empty>* and press ■

- To change entries, select one → Press → Edit number/ address → Press ■ → Choose **Yes** → Press ■
- To delete entries, select one → Press 🖾 Options → Select Delete or Clear All → Press ■ → Choose Yes → Press ■

**7** Phone Book

- Select Phone Book and press ■
- 2 Select an entry and press
  - To search Phone Book, perform Steps 2 3 in "Dialling" from Phone Book" on P.4-8

Direct Entry

- Select Enter Number or Enter Address and press 🔳
- 2 Enter recipient's SoftBank handset number or mail address and press

#### Adding to Speed Mail List while Creating Message

Follow these steps after Step 3 on P.14-7 or on P.14-8. Select Speed Mail List → Press ■ → Select <empty> → Press ■ → Choose Yes → Press ■ → Perform Step 2 on the left

#### **Speed Mail**

Create mail from Standby using numbers/addresses saved to Speed Mail List (see left).

- In Standby, press Speed Mail List entry number with Keypad (02 - 96)
- Press ☑ Mail
  - When messaging to SoftBank handsets, select S! Mail or SMS ⇒ Press ■
- Complete and send message (perform from Step 5 on P.14-7 or on P.14-8)

#### **Auto Resend**

Activate Auto Resend to send unsent messages (failed due to out-of-range, etc.) automatically when signal returns.

- Resend is attempted up to two times for each message.
- Messages are sent in the same order they were created.
- Information window opens for successful delivery.
- Auto Resend is set to On by default.



## **1** Choose *On* and press ■

- To cancel, choose *Off* 🖈 Press 🔳
- Remaining failed messages will not be sent automatically.

## **General Settings**

Sending Progress

Show or hide animation when sending mail

Default Show

Main Menu

► Messaging → Settings → General Settings → Sending Progress

Select Show or Do Not Show → Press

Delivery Report

Confirm SMS/S! Mail delivery (see P.14-20)

Available when messaging to SoftBank handset numbers.

Main Menu

▶ Messaging ⇒ Settings ⇒ General Settings ⇒ Delivery Report

### Choose On (request) or Off → Press ■

• If *On*, reports arrive for all messages to SoftBank handsets.

Anti Spam Measures Filter incoming messages from numbers or addresses not saved in Phone Book

**Default**Off

Main Menu

► Messaging → Settings → General Settings →
Anti Spam Measures

# Enter Handset Code → Press ■ → Choose *On* or *Off* → Press ■

- When Anti Spam Measures is active, unsolicited messages (spam) are filtered into Spam Folder.
- Auto sort keys (see P.14-32) are available for Spam Folder.
- Keys in folders other than Spam Folder have higher priority.
- Handset does not respond to filtered messages. (No ringtones, Information window, etc.)

Save a name, etc. to insert into message text

Default Auto Insert: Off

Main Menu

▶ Messaging ⇒ Settings ⇒ General Settings ⇒ Signature Settings

#### Edit

Select *Edit* → Press ■ → Enter/edit signature → Press ■

• Enter up to 256 single-byte alphanumerics.

#### **Auto Insert**

Select *Auto Insert* → Press ■ → Choose *On* or *Off* 

▶ Press

When signature is not saved, enter signature ▶ Press ■

- Activate Auto Insert to enter signature into message text automatically.
- · Available only for S! Mail.

Activate or cancel automatic deletion of oldest received/sent messages to save new ones

Default Received Msg.: Off, Sent Messages: On

Main Menu

▶ Messaging ⇒ Settings ⇒ General Settings ⇒ Auto Delete

#### **Received Messages**

Select Received Msg. ⇒ Press ■ ⇒ Choose On or Off ⇒ Press ■

#### **Sent Messages**

Select Sent Messages → Press ■ → Choose On or 

Change/hide notice or activate/mute alert sound (double beep) for messages received during handset use

Default View Setting: Name, Alert Sound: On

Main Menu

▶ Messaging ⇒ Settings ⇒ General Settings ⇒ Message Notice

#### View Setting

Select *View Setting* → Press ■ → Select *Name*, Address, Name & Subject or Off → Press ■

#### Alert Sound

Select Alert Sound → Press ■ → Choose On or Off ▶ Press

Secret Folder

Select whether to notify (with ringtones, etc.) of incoming messages sorted to Secret folders

Main Menu

Messaging → Settings → General Settings → Message Notice → Secret Folder

Select Notify or No Response → Press

Scroll Unit

Select from three scroll units

Main Menu

Messaging → Settings → General Settings → Secret Unit

Select Single Line, Half Page or Whole Page → Press

Press

Press

Select Single Line, Half Page or Whole Page → Press

Press

## **SMS Settings**

Expiry Time

Set a time limit to store sent messages in Server Mail Box

Default Maximum

Main Menu

► Messaging → Settings → SMS Settings → Expiry Time

Select Maximum, 30 minutes, 1 hour, 6 hours, 1 day or 1 week ▶ Press ■

 Expiry Time applies to SMS Centre Number set to Setting1(Default) in Message Centre (see right). Message
Centre

Set SMS Centre Number

Main Menu

Messaging Settings SMS Settings
Message Centre

Adding Centre Number
Select Setting2 or Setting3 Press Finter SMS
Centre Number

Select Setting1(Default), Setting2 or Setting3 Press Finter SMS
Press Finter SMS
Centre Number

Select Setting1(Default), Setting2 or Setting3 Press Finter SMS
Press Finter SMS
Press Finter SMS
Press Finter SMS

Select Setting1 (Default), Setting2 Press Finter SMS
Press Finter SMS
Press Finter SMS

Select Setting2 or Setting3 Press Finter SMS
Select Delete Press Finter SMS

Select Delete Press Finter SMS
Setting Centre Number

Select Setting2 or Setting3 → Press ☑ Options →
Select Set Default → Press ■

Selected number moves to Setting1(Default) and shifts the others down

ote Do not change Centre Number unless instructed to do so.

Char-code

Select character encoding for composing SMS messages

Default Shift JIS

Main Menu

▶ Messaging ⇒ Settings ⇒ SMS Settings ⇒ Char-code

Select Shift JIS (70 characters) or GSM 7bit (160 single-byte alphanumerics) ▶ Press ■

### S! Mail Settings

Message DL

Set complete S! Mail retrieval to auto or manual

Default DL only Tel. No.

Main Menu

► Messaging → Settings → S! Mail Settings → Message DL

Select Always Download, DL only Tel. No. or Always Defer 

Press 

□

Note Depending on the price plan, transmission fees may apply even when receiving messages addressed to SoftBank handset numbers. Change Message DL setting as needed.

Reply To Settings Designate a different mail address for receiving replies

**Default**Off

Main Menu

▶ Messaging ⇒ Settings ⇒ S! Mail Settings ⇒ Reply To Settings

**Activating/Deactivating** 

Select Switch On/Off → Choose On or Off → Press ■
Set Address

Select *Edit Address* → Press ■ → Select or enter address → Press ■

Picture Appearance Set display size for images in received messages

Default Normal

Main Menu

► Messaging → Settings → S! Mail Settings → Picture Appearance

Select Normal or Fit for Screen → Press ■

• Slides (see P.14-24) always play at Normal size.

**Auto Play File** 

Select whether to open/play attached images/ sounds automatically

Default Pictures: On. Sounds: Off

Main Menu

► Messaging → Settings → S! Mail Settings → Auto Play File

**Images** 

Select *Pictures* → Press ■ → Choose *On* (open) or *Off* → Press ■

Sounds

Select Sounds → Press ■ → Choose On (play) or Off → Press ■

- Images/sounds always open/play when playing slides (see P.14-24).
- Auto Play File settings do not apply to Arrange Mail.

Send File Settings Select whether to save newly captured images and newly recorded Voice files to Data Folder before attaching them to messages

Default Send & Save

Main Menu

▶ Messaging ⇒ Settings ⇒ S! Mail Settings ⇒ Send File Settings

Select Send & Save or Send&Not Save → Press ■

Yahoo! Keitai

## **Getting Started**

Access Yahoo! Keitai Mobile Internet and PC sites. In this manual, "Yahoo! Keitai" refers to the SoftBank Mobile Internet portal, "PC sites" to websites viewed via PC Site Browser, and "Internet" to both Yahoo! Keitai and PC sites. Retrieve Network Information (see P.1-21) before using the Internet.



#### Yahoo! Keitai Features

- Using Yahoo! Keitai: see P.15-4
- Saving Files to Data Folder: see P.15-11
- Streaming: see P.15-13
- Live Monitor: see P.15-15

#### ■PC Site Feature

Using PC Site Browser: see P.15-18

Some page content may automatically activate Internet Note > connection and thus transmission fees apply. To disconnect, press



- **Tip** An additional contract is required to use the Internet.
  - Address guestions about Yahoo! Keitai to SoftBank Customer Centre, General Information (see P.20-28).

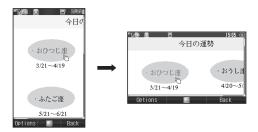
## **Internet Content**

Sample Internet page:



#### Browsing PC Sites in Cycloid Position

Rotate Display to Cycloid position for widescreen view.



- Note 
  Requested pages may not appear due to transmission conditions/Server status.
- Tip ► To activate PC Site Browser while browsing Yahoo! Keitai, see Step 1 in "Opening Yahoo! Keitai Menu" on P.15-4.

#### **Cache Memory**

- Cache Memory temporarily holds copies of retrieved pages; when full, oldest are deleted to make room for new ones.
  - Previously viewed pages may load from Cache Memory.
  - Cached items with expiry dates are deleted upon expiry.

#### SSL

Secure Sockets Layer (SSL) is an encryption protocol for secure Internet transmissions of important/sensitive information such as credit card numbers. Electronic certificates are saved on handset (see P.15-23 "Root Certificates").

#### Disclaimer

■ When a security notice appears, subscribers must decide for themselves whether or not to open the page. Opening secure pages constitutes agreement to the terms of usage. SoftBank, VeriSign Japan, Baltimore Technologies Japan, Entrust Japan, GeoTrust Japan, RSA Security and SECOM Trust Systems cannot be held liable for any damages associated with the use of SSL.

## Using Yahoo! Keitai

## Opening Yahoo! Keitai Menu

Select topics from Yahoo! Keitai Menu to access sites. Yahoo! Keitai Menu is subject to change.

Main Menu > Yahoo! Keitai

## 1 Select Yahoo! Keitai and press 🔳

Yahoo! Keitai Main Menu appears.

- Shortcut: In Standby, press 🛂
- To activate PC Site Browser, press 

  Options 
  Select
  Change to PC Browser 
  Press 

  Options 
  Select
  - A message appears. To proceed, press twice. Last opened PC site appears.
- Some sites may not appear correctly.

## Highlight a menu item

? Press

Handset connects to the Internet.

- Handset remains connected to the Internet even if it is closed.
- To disconnect, press 🚟.

## ▲ Repeat Steps 2 - 3 to open additional links

- Basic Operations: see P.15-5
- To return to Yahoo! Keitai Main Menu, press ☐ Options → Select Yahoo! Keitai → Press ☐

5 To exit, press 🗟 then choose Yes and press 🔳

**Using History** 

Open previously viewed Yahoo! Keitai pages. History stores up to 300 pages; when full, oldest are deleted to make room for new ones.

Main Menu ► Yahoo! Keitai ➡ History

1 Select an item and press

**2** To exit, press 🕤 then choose *Yes* and press 🔳

#### **Opening Properties**

Open History and follow these steps.

Select an item ▶ Press ☑ Options ▶ Select Details

- ▶ Press ■
- Press to return.

#### Sending URLs via S! Mail/SMS

Open History and follow these steps.

Select an item → Press ☑ Options → Select Send

URL → Press ■ → Select S! Mail or SMS →

Press ■ Complete and send message (Perform from Step 3 on P.14-8 or on P.14-7.)

#### **Sorting Items**

Open History and follow these steps.

Press 

Options 
Select Sort 
Press 

Select By Domain or By Date 
Press 

Press 

■

#### **Deleting History**

Open History and follow these steps.

Select an item → Press □ Options → Select Delete

- Press Choose Yes Press ■
- To delete all, press 🖾 Options 🖈 Select Delete All 🔷 Press ■ Description Fress Press Pre Yes ⇒ Press ■

## **Entering URLs Directly**

Enter URLs directly to access Yahoo! Keitai sites.

- To use History, see P.15-4.
- http:// may be omitted.

Main Menu ► Yahoo! Keitai → Enter URL

- Enter URL and press
  - PC Site Browser may activate depending on the URL.
- To exit, press <sup>↑</sup> then choose *Yes* and press **□**

#### Selecting from Previously Entered URLs

- Open URL entry window and follow these steps.
  - Press 

    Options 
    Select URL Entry Log 
    Press 

    Press 

    ■
  - Select a URL ⇒ Press
  - Up to 10 entries are saved. When full, oldest entries are deleted to make room for new ones.

## **Basic Operations**

Return to the previous page

Press [Y7] Back .

To return to the initial page, press ☑ Options → Select Forward ⇒ Press ■

Jump to page top or bottom

Press 

Options 

Select Convenient Functions 

→ Press ■ Select Jump to Top or Jump to Bottom ▶ Press

Open secure page

When *Entering highly secure area.* appears, press .

- @ appears for secure connections.
- To disable confirmations, see P.15-22 "Secure Prompt".

Authentication Access pages requiring user authentication

If requested, enter user ID or password ▶ Press ■ ▶ Press [Y/] Send

View a summary of key assignments

Press 

Options 
Select Help 
Press 

Press 

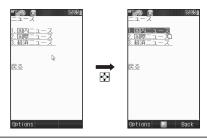
■

Press I to return.

## **Pointer Navigation**

Move pointer ( $\mathbb{\ensuremath{\Bbbk}}$ ) with Multi Selector to scroll or select items. When page content continues beyond view, move pointer to Display edges to scroll in those directions.

## Selecting Items



## **Activating/Cancelling Pointer Navigation**

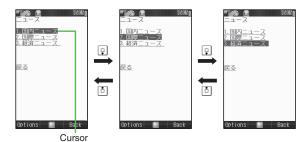
- Open a page and follow these steps.
  - Press ☑ Options → Select Settings → Press →
    Select Cursor Settings → Press → Select
    Cursor/Yahoo! Keitai or Cursor/PC Site Browser →
    Press → Choose On or Off → Press ■
  - Alternatively, press for 1+ seconds to activate/cancel pointer navigation.

#### **Changing Pointer Speed**

- Open a page and follow these steps.
  - Press ☐ Options → Select Settings → Press → Select Cursor Settings → Press → Select Speed Settings → Press → Select Slow, Normal or Fast → Press ■

### **Using Cursor**

When pointer navigation is off, use cursor. Use 🗓 to scroll items.



Use to move left and right when multiple items are listed in one row. Cursor does not appear for unselectable items.

Tip Press and hold these keys to scroll by page.

2 (Up), 4 (Left), 6 (Right), 8 (Down)

### **Scrolling Pages**

#### Non-Framed Pages

Scroll bar appears on the right or bottom when page content continues beyond view. Slider indicates current page position.

Use •• to scroll; slider moves accordingly.

### Framed Pages

Press for 1+ seconds to select other frames. Use to scroll.

Scroll Bar -



Selected Frame -



#### Viewing Single Frame

Open a framed page and follow these steps.

Press 

for 1+ seconds to select a frame 

Press 

Outions 
Select Frame In 
Press 

Press 

□

- To return, press 🖾 Options 🔷 Select Frame Out → Press 🔳
- Alternatively, press to return.

## **Tabbed Browsing**

Open up to three pages at one time using tabs. Yahoo! Keitai and PC site pages cannot be open simultaneously.



1 Press ☑ Options

## **2** Select *Open in New Tab* and press ■

Highlighted link opens in a new tab.

- From Bookmarks, Saved Pages, Enter URL and History, the selected/specified page opens in a new tab.
- To open a third page, press ☐ Options → Select Tab Menu
  → Press ☐ → Select Open in New Tab → Press ☐
- To switch between tabs, press ☑ Options → Select Tab

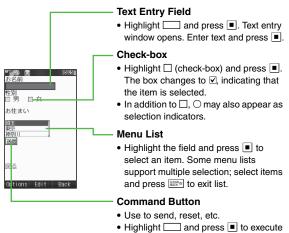
  Manu → Press ☑ → Select Switch Tab → Press ☑ →
- *Menu* → Press → Select *Switch Tab* → Press → Select a tab → Press ■
- Alternatively, press ★ for 1+ seconds then use to select a tab.
- To close the active tab, press ☑ Options → Select Tab Menu
- ▶ Press ♦ Select Close Tab ♦ Press ■
- To close all but the active tab, press ☐ ①ptions → Select Tab

  Menu → Press → Select Close All Other Tabs →

  Press ■
- Note Portions of page content may not appear in tabbed browsing; close old tabs.
  - **Tip** Some pages automatically open in a new tab.

## Text Entry & Item Selection

Enter text or select items to send information.



the indicated command.

#### **Input Memory**

- Entered text (except Security Code) is saved to Input Memory. Use saved text in other applications.
- Up to 20 entries are saved. When full, oldest entries are deleted to make room for new ones.

#### **Using Input Memory**

In a text entry window, press 

Options 
Select

Advanced 
Press 
Select Input Memory 
Press 
Select text 
Press 

Select text 
Press 

Select text 
Press 

Press 
Select text 
Press 
Select text 
Press 
Press 
Select text 
Press 
Press

## **Advanced Features**

## **Bookmarks & Saved Pages**

Bookmark sites or save page content to Saved Pages.

Item	Description	
Bookmarks	Save links to sites. Handset connects to the Internet to access the site.  Create folders to organise Bookmarks.  Save up to 100 Bookmarks between Yahoo! Keitai and Streaming Bookmarks, and up to 100 for PC sites.	
Saved Pages	Save page content; handset opens saved pages without connecting to the Internet.  Save frequently used items to Saved Pages.  Save up to 100 Bookmarks for Yahoo! Keitai and PC sites each.	

#### **Default Bookmarks**

- Sharp Space Town and カスタモ are links to Japanese Mobile Internet sites for SoftBank handsets by SHARP.
  - Visit Space Town to download Wallpaper, games, Dictionary files, etc.
  - Visit *カスタモ* to download Custom Screens (see P.10-10) for 911SH.

### Saving Bookmarks & Pages

Follow these steps after opening a page (after Step 4 on **P.15-4** or on **P.15-19**).

## **1** Press □ Options

• Bookmark or Saved Pages appears only for savable pages.

## **9** Bookmarks

- Select Bookmark and press ■
- Select Save and press ■
- 3 Enter title and press
  - Bookmarks saved while streaming are saved to Streaming Bookmarks.

#### Saved Pages

- Select Saved Pages and press ■
- 2 Select Save and press ■
- 3 Enter title and press ■

#### Saving URLs to Bookmarks

■ Enter URLs directly to save site references to Bookmarks.

Press ■ → Select Yahoo! Keitai → Press ■ →

Select Bookmarks → Press ■ → Select ™ (Yahoo!

Keitai), ② (PC Site Browser) or ⓓ (Streaming) →

Press ☑ Options → Select Add New Bookmark →

Press ■ → Enter URL → Press ■ → Enter title →

Press ■

## Opening Bookmarks & Saved Pages

Main Menu > Yahoo! Keitai

## **1** Bookmarks

# Select *Bookmarks* and press ■

- To send URLs via S! Mail/SMS, select a title → Press ☑ Options
  → Select Send → Press →
  Select As Message → Press ■
  → Select S! Mail or SMS →
  Press → Complete and send message (Perform from Step 3 on P.14-7 or on P.14-8.)
- To open properties, select a Bookmarks title → Press ☑ Options → Select Details → Press Press to return.
- ② Use to select (Yahoo! Keitai), (PC Site Browser) or (Streaming)

### Saved Pages

# ■ Select Saved Pages and press ■

- To open properties, select a title → Press ☑ Options → Select Details → Press Press to return.
- ② Use → to select ▼ (Yahoo! Keitai) or ◎ (PC Site Browser)
- 2 Select a title and press 🔳



◎ ニュース
◎ ゲーム

@ 連載小説

Saved Pages

```
Opening Bookmarks Online

■ Press □ Options → Select Bookmark → Press ■ →
Select List View → Press ■ → Select a title → Press ■
```

## **Editing Bookmarks & Saved Pages**

Open Bookmarks or Saved Pages first (perform Step 1 on P.15-10).

#### Bookmarks

Edit Edit titles or URLs

#### **Titles**

Select a title → Press ☑ Options → Select Edit →
Press ■ → Select Title: → Press ■ → Enter title →
Press ■ → Press ☑ Save

#### URLs

Select a title → Press ☑ Options → Select Edit →
Press ■ → Select URL: → Press ■ → Enter URL →
Press ■ → Press ☑ Save

Folder

Sort Bookmarks into folders

### **Creating a Folder**

Press ☑ Options → Select Create Folder → Press ■

→ Enter name → Press ■

### **Moving to Folder**

Select a title → Press ☑ Options → Select Move →
Press ■ → Press ☑ Folder → Select a folder →
Press ■ → Press ■

To move back from folders, select a title → Press ☑ Options → Select *Move* → Press ■ → Press ☑ Parent → Press ■

#### **Changing Folder Names**

Select a folder → Press ☑ Options → Select Rename
→ Press ■ → Enter name → Press ■

## ■ Saved Pages

Rename Change titles

Select a title → Press ☑ Options → Select Rename → Press ■ → Enter title → Press ■

## ■Bookmarks & Saved Pages

Move Change entry order

Select a title → Press ☑ Options → Select Move → Press ■ → Use 🕽 to select target location → Press ■

Delete

Delete entries

Select a title or folder → Press ☑ Options → Select

Delete → Press ■ → Choose Yes → Press ■

To delete all titles/folders, press ☑ Options → Select Delete

In delete all titles/folders, press ☐ Undois → Select Delete

All → Press ☐ → Enter Handset Code → Press ☐ →

Choose Yes → Press ☐

## Saving Files to Data Folder

Save images, sounds, etc. on Yahoo! Keitai to Data Folder.

Main Menu ► Yahoo! Keitai → Yahoo! Keitai → Open a page

1 Press ☑ Options

## Select *Save Items* and press ■

• If no other files are contained on the page, skip ahead to Step 4.

## 3 Select a file and press

- To open files, select *View* or *Plav* ⇒ Press 🔳
- Press to return
- To open properties, select **Details** → Press 🔳
  - Press to return.

## Select *Save* and press ■

Data Folder opens.

- To switch between handset and Memory Card, press 🖾 Options Select Change to Phone or Change to Memory Card ⇒ Press ■
- To save to a sub folder, select folder ⇒ Press ■

## **5** Press ■

File is saved to Data Folder.

- Handle File(s) menu may open with available file functions.
- When memory is full, notification appears. Delete files and try again (see P.9-9).
- If the same file name exists, select **Rename**, **Overwrite** or Cancel ⇒ Press ■

#### Clicking on File Links

Some files are saved automatically. Save location is indicated after download.

## **Using Linked Info**

Use linked numbers (TEL:), addresses or URLs (http://, https:// or rtsp://) to place calls, send messages or access the Internet.

- Available only when number, address or URL is underlined.
- Underlined words may serve as a linked number, address or URI.

Main Menu > Yahoo! Keitai

- Open a page containing a phone number, mail address or URL
- **Dialling Numbers** 
  - 1 Highlight a number and press
  - 2 Select Call or Video Call and press

## Sendina Messages

- 1 Highlight a SoftBank handset number or mail address and press
- 2 Select *Create Message* and press
  - To complete and send message, perform from Step 5 on P.14-7 or on P.14-8

#### Accessing Internet Sites

■ Highlight a URL and press
■

Handset connects to the Internet.

Video/sound plays for rtsp://URLs.

#### Saving to Phone Book

- To save as new entry, open page and follow these steps. Select a phone number or mail address 

  ◆ Press
  - Select Save to Phone Book → Press
  - Select As New Entry 

    Press ■
  - Phone Book Details (see P.4-4) appears. Complete other fields and save.
- To save as new item, open page and follow these steps. Select a phone number or mail address 

  ▶ Press 

  ■
  - Select Save to Phone Book → Press
  - Select an entry → Press → Press 环 Save

## Streaming

Enjoy audiovisual media while it downloads.

- Only compatible Yahoo! Keitai files support streaming.
- Downloaded content cannot be saved.

Main Menu Yahoo! Keitai → Yahoo! Keitai → Open a page

## Select a file and press

Streaming begins. (Plaving Music/Video: see P.8-9, P.8-12)

- To pause a stream, press 🔳.
  - Press to resume.
  - Streaming requires a continuous Internet connection. (Transmission fees apply.)

#### Incoming Calls/Mail while Streaming

- Streaming stops for incoming calls. Press 
  to answer calls. To reject calls, press ☐ Options → Select Reject → Press
  - After the call, Reconnect? appears.
- Notice appears or a double beep sounds for incoming mail (see P.14-36 "Message Notice").

- **Note** Streaming continues even after handset is closed.
  - After three minutes on pause, *Reconnect?* appears.
  - Live streaming does not support pause, fast forward, rewind or Options.

**Tip** Up to 10 previously accessed URLs are saved. When full, oldest URLs are deleted to make room for new ones.

## 15

#### **Changing Display Size**

- Press 2 to toggle Display Size for current stream.
  - Display Size toggles as follows: Full Screen (no indicators) → Full Screen (with indicators) → Normal → Enlarge
  - Display Size cannot be changed while stream is paused; press  $2^{\frac{\pi}{2}}$  to show or hide indicators.
  - Display Size may not change depending on file/stream.
- Change Display Size setting for streaming while streaming. Press ☑ Options → Select Settings → Press ■ → Select Display Size → Press ■ → Select Normal, Enlarge or Full Screen → Press ■

#### Backlight

- Adjust streaming Backlight while streaming.
  - Press ☑ Options → Select Settings → Press → Select Backlight → Press ■ → Select Always On. Always Off or Normal Settings → Press ■
  - Selecting Normal Settings applies Display Backlight setting (see P.10-13).

#### Sound Effects

- Adjust streaming Sound Effects while streaming.
  - Press 

    Options 

    Select Settings 

    Press 

    Press 

    → Select Sound Effects → Press ■ → Select Normal. Bass, Surround or Surround Bass ▶ Press ■

#### **Time Search**

Specify start point while streaming.

Press ☐ Options → Select Time Search → Press ☐ ▶ Enter time Press

Access the Internet from Media Player

Main Menu ► Media Plaver → Streaming

## Resuming the File Played Last

Select Last Played ⇒ Press ■

• File plays from where it stopped.

#### **Entering URLs**

Select Enter URL → Press ■ → Enter URL → Press

• Enter up to 1024 characters.

### **Using Bookmarks**

Select Bookmarks 

Press 

Select an entry 

Augustian Press 

Press Press

#### **Using History**

Select *History* → Press ■ → Select an entry →

Press

- To open properties, select *History* → Press → Select an entry → Press ☑ Options → Select Details → Press ■ ■ Press ■ to return.
- To edit and access URLs, select *History* → Press 🔳 → Select an entry → Press □ Options → Select Edit URL → Press ■ Dedit URL Press ■
- **Tip** ► Select **Settings** in Streaming menu and press to set Backlight, Display Size and Sound Settings.

## Live Monitor (Japanese Only)

## **Live Monitor Basics**

Register with compatible Yahoo! Keitai content to receive update notices on handset.

- Live Monitor consists of Live Monitor List and S! Loop List.
- In Standby, view breaking news in Live Monitor List (see P.10-6).

## Opening Live Monitor List & S! Loop List

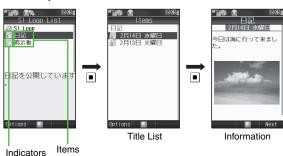
Main Menu ► Yahoo! Keitai ➡ Live Monitor

- **1** Select *Live Monitor List* or *S! Loop List* and press ■
- Live Monitor List



	Unread News Flash	Unread General news
	Read News Flash	Read General news
	News Flash auto update disabled	General news auto update disabled

#### S! Loop List



	Unread S! Loop
	Read S! Loop
A	S! Loop auto update disabled

## **Opening Information**

**Live Monitor List** 

Main Menu ► Yahoo! Keitai → Live Monitor

- 1 Select Live Monitor List and press
- 2 Select an item and press

Title list appears (see left).

**3** Select a title and press Information appears (see left).

- To access the Internet, select the title in information ⇒ Press
- Choose Yes → Press ■
- Handset connects to the Internet.

## S! Loop List

Main Menu ► Yahoo! Keitai ➡ Live Monitor

**1** Select *S! Loop List* and press ■

2 Select an item and press 🔳

Title list appears (see P.15-15).

3 Select a title and press

Information appears (see P.15-15).

To access the Internet, select the title in information → Press ■

- ◆ Choose Yes ◆ Press ■
- Handset connects to the Internet.

## **Registering with Live Monitor Items**

## **Live Monitor List**

Register with up to one News Flash item and four General news items

Main Menu ► Yahoo! Keitai → Live Monitor

1 Select Live Monitor List and press

**9** Select *Contents List* and press ■

**3** Choose *Yes* and press **■** 

Handset connects to the Internet.

4 Select an item and press 🔳

· Follow onscreen instructions.

## S! Loop List

Register with up to five S! Loop items.

Main Menu ► Yahoo! Keitai ⇒ Live Monitor

¶ Select S! Loop List and press ■

**9** Select S! Loop and press 
■

3 Choose Yes and press ■

Handset connects to the Internet.

• Refer to the S! Loop help menu for operational instructions.

## **Updating Live Monitor Items**

Main Menu ► Yahoo! Keitai ➡ Live Monitor

Select Live Monitor List or S! Loop List and press ■

**2** Updating Single Items

1 Select an item and press ☑ Options

2 Select Reload and press

Select Reload This Monitor and press

#### **Updating All Items**

1 Press ☑ Options

Select Reload and press ■

Select Reload All and press

#### **Opening Properties**

Open Live Monitor List or S! Loop List (see P.15-15) and follow these steps.

Select an item → Press ☑ Options → Select Details → Press ■

## **Automatic Update**

- Update Live Monitor items automatically after a set interval (from Automatic Update activation). Open properties (see above) to see next Automatic Update time.
- Automatic Update does not affect Live Monitor List News Flash or S! Loop List update items overnight.
- Update may fail if signal is weak/handset is out-of-range.
- To update manually, see P.15-16.
- USIM Card replacement cancels Automatic Update.
- Automatic Update is Off by default.

#### **Live Monitor List**

Main Menu 

➤ Yahoo! Keitai → Live Monitor → Settings → Automatic Update → Live Monitor

- 1 News Flash
  - Select News Flash and press
  - 2 Press
  - 3 Select an interval and press
    - To cancel, choose Off ⇒ Press ■

#### **General News**

- 1 Select General and press
- 2 Press
- Choose On and press
  - General news items are updated once a day.
     To cancel, choose *Off* → Press ■

## S! Loop List

Main Menu 

Yahoo! Keitai 

Live Monitor 

Settings 

Automatic Update 

S! Loop

- Press 🔳
- 2 Choose On and press
  - S! Loop List items are updated approximately four times a day.
  - To cancel, choose Off ⇒ Press ■

## **Deleting Live Monitor Items**

Main Menu ► Yahoo! Keitai → Live Monitor

1 Select Live Monitor List or S! Loop List and press

## **2** Deleting Single Items

1 Select an item and press ☑ Options

2 Select *Delete* and press ■

Select Delete This Monitor and press

4 Choose Yes and press

### **Deleting All Items**

1 Press ☑ Options

2 Select *Delete* and press

Select Delete All and press

4 Enter Handset Code and press

**☐** Choose *Yes* and press ■

Note Items are not deleted during auto updates.

## Using PC Site Browser

Activate PC Site Browser to view websites designed for PCs; only document files are downloadable and browsing PC sites may incur higher charges.

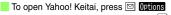
## Opening Yahoo! JAPAN

Main Menu ► Yahoo! Keitai → PC Site Browser

## **1** Select *Homepage* and press ■

A message appears. To proceed, press twice. Yahoo! JAPAN Home opens (

appears).



- ⇒ Select **Switch Browser** ⇒ Press ■
- A message appears. To proceed, press twice. Last opened Yahoo! Keitai site appears.
- Some sites may not appear correctly.



## Highlight a menu item

**3** Press ■

Handset connects to the Internet.

- Handset remains connected to the Internet even if it is closed.
- To disconnect, press 🚟.

## ⚠ Repeat Steps 2 - 3 to open additional links

- Basic Operations: see P.15-5
- Saving Bookmarks & Pages: see P.15-10
- Using Linked Info: see P.15-12
- To return to Yahoo! JAPAN Home, press 🖾 Options 🖈 Select Homepage → Press ■

**5** To exit, press 1 then choose *Yes* and press 1

### **Switching View**

Open a page and follow these steps.

Press ☐ Options → Select PC Screen → Press ☐

- To switch from PC Screen view to Small Screen view press 

  Options 

  Select Small Screen 

  Press 

  Press 

  ■
- In Small Screen view, PC sites are redesigned to fit Display.
- In PC Screen view, PC sites appear in W 800 x H 600 dots.

#### Zoom In/Out

Open a page and follow these steps.

Press 

Options 

Select Convenient Functions Press ■ Select Zoom In/Out Press ■ Press

Select a scale 

Press ■

## **Using History**

Open previously viewed pages. History stores up to 300 pages; when full, oldest are deleted to make room for new ones.

Main Menu ► Yahoo! Keitai → PC Site Browser → History

## Select an item and press

- To open properties, send URL, sort items or delete, see P.15-4
- To exit, press <sup>1</sup> then choose *Yes* and press ■

## **Entering URLs Directly**

Enter URLs directly to access sites.

- To use History, see above.
- http:// may be omitted.

Main Menu ► Yahoo! Keitai ► PC Site Browser ► Enter URL

## Enter URL and press ■

- Yahoo! Keitai page may open depending on the URL. Selecting from Previously Entered URLs: see P.15-5
- To exit, press <sup>↑</sup> then choose *Yes* and press ■

## **Additional Functions**

### **Sub Menu Settings**

Access Options menu settings from an open page.

Copy Text

Copy text

Press ☐ Options → Select Copy Text → Press ■ → Perform from Step 3 in "Copy/Cut & Paste" on P.3-14

Reload

Update page content

Press 

Options 

Select Reload 

Press 

■

 Reload simultaneously updates the corresponding content saved in Saved Pages.

Enter URL

Enter URL directly to access Internet sites

Press Dottons Select Enter URL Press Perform from Step 1 in "Entering URLs Directly" on P.15-5 or on P.15-19

Searcl

Search current page

Press 

Options 
Select Convenient Functions 
Press 
Fress 
Fres

First search result is highlighted; press to jump to next.
 To cancel, press (ance).

Press Detions Select Convenient Functions Press Select Send URL Press Select S! Mail or SMS Press Detail or SMS Press Detail

Send URLs via SI Mail/SMS

Details

Open page properties

Press Diptions Select Convenient Functions Press Select Details Press Select Page Information or Server Certificate Press Press To return.

Histor

Previously visited Internet site links

Press 

Options 
Select History 
Press 
Perform from Step 1 in "Using History" on P.15-4 or on P.15-19

Char-cod

Change encoding when text appears distorted

<u>Default</u> Automatic

Press 

Options 
Select Settings 
Press 
Select Char-code 
Press 
Select an option 
Press 

Press 

Options 
Select an option 
Press 

Options 
Press 
Options 
Press 
Options 
Press 
Options 
Press 
Options 
Press 
Options 
Press 
Options 
Optio

• Use Automatic whenever possible.

Uploadin Files Upload images or other Data Folder files to the Centre via Internet sites

Open compatible site first.

Select Browse... ▶ Press ■ ▶ Select a file ▶ Press ■ ▶ Select Send ▶ Press ■

- Example above is for reference only. Follow site instructions for specific procedure.
- Files are uploadable only via pages supporting uploads.

## **Common Settings** Change character size **Default**Standard Main Menu Yahoo! Keitai → Common Settings → Font Size Select a size ◆ Press Select from three scroll units Default Single Line Main Menu Yahoo! Keitai → Common Settings → Scroll Unit Select a unit Press ■ Select whether to download images and sounds on Internet sites automatically or to open text information only Default Show Images/Play Sounds Main Menu Yahoo! Keitai → Common Settings → Downloads

### **Images**

Select Images → Press ■ → Select Show Images or Do not Show → Press ■

#### Sounds

Select Sounds → Press ■ → Select Play Sounds or Do not Play → Press ■

 Memory Operation
 Clear cache, cookies or authentication information

 Main Menu
 ➤ Yahoo! Keitai → Common Settings → Memory Operation

## Select Delete Cache, Delete Cookies or Delete Authentic Info → Press ■ → Choose Yes → Press ■

Deleted Items:

	Cache	Temporarily saved information in Cache Memory
	Cookies	Information sent by a server for user identification
Authentic Us		User ID or password previously entered for authentication

Download to Select whether to save downloaded files on handset or Memory Card

Default Phone Preferred

## Main Menu ► Yahoo! Keitai → Common Settings → Download to

#### Select Phone Preferred or Prefer Card ⇒ Press ■

- If selected memory is low, downloaded files are not saved.
- Saving to Memory Card is prohibited depending on the file; such files are saved to handset.

Initialized Browser Restore default settings and reset Bookmarks and Saved Pages

Enter Handset Code → Press ■ → Choose *Yes* → Press ■

Reset Settings Restore default settings

Main Menu ► Yahoo! Keitai → Common Settings → Reset Settings

Enter Handset Code → Press ■ → Choose *Yes* → Press ■

#### Select whether or not to send referer **PC Site Browser Settings** information to the Server Default Send Show or hide warning message when activating PC Site Browser or when switching to Yahoo! Keitai ➤ Yahoo! Keitai → Common Settings → Security Main Menu Default On Select Send or Not Send Press ■ ► Yahoo! Keitai → PC Site Browser → PC Site Main Menu Enable or disable cookies (see P.15-21) Select PC Site Browser or Yahoo! Keitai → Press Choose On (show) or Off ⇒ Press Default Enabled ➤ Yahoo! Keitai → Common Settings → Security Main Menu Select page scale Default 100% Select Enabled, Disabled or Confirm ▶ Press ■ Yahoo! Keitai ⇒ PC Site Browser ⇒ PC Site Main Menu Select whether or not to run scripts Select a scale Press ■ Default Ask NW Access ► Yahoo! Keitai → Common Settings → Security Security Main Menu Settings ◆ Script Settings Security Settings affect both Yahoo! Keitai and PC Site Select On, Ask NW Access, Confirm or Off ▶ Browser. Press Select whether or not to send handset manufacture Show or hide confirmations before entering number automatically for authentication and exiting secure pages (see P.15-3) Default Off Default Show ➤ Yahoo! Keitai → Common Settings → Security ➤ Yahoo! Keitai → Common Settings → Security Main Menu Main Menu Settings Manufacture Number Settings ◆ Secure Prompt Choose *On* (send) or *Off* ▶ Press

Select Show or Do not Show ▶ Press ■

Open electronic certificates issued by Certificate Authorities saved on handset ➤ Yahoo! Keitai → Common Settings → Security Main Menu Settinas Select Root Certificates (preloaded certificates) Press To open certificates, select one 🖈 Press 🔳 Press I to return. Previously entered user ID or password is entered automatically for authentication Default Per Browsing ➤ Yahoo! Keitai → Common Settings → Security Main Menu Select Per Browsing, On (authenticate automatically) or Off → Press ■ • For *Per Browsing*, entered user ID or password remains for automatic authentication and is deleted upon exiting the Internet. • For **On**, entered user ID or password remains even after exiting the Internet or turning handset power off. **Tip** Saved user ID or password is applicable to Basic/Digest authentication. Some sites may employ other HTTP authentication schemes. Select whether or not to restrict Flash® downloads Default On

Settings → Flash® Restriction Choose On (restrict) or Off ⇒ Press ■

Main Menu

➤ Yahoo! Keitai → Common Settings → Security

S! Applications

## **Getting Started**

Download S! Applications, including games.

- Download and use 911SH compatible S! Applications.
- Use wide-view S! Applications in Cycloid position.
  - Tip Separate subscriptions are required for S! Applications downloaded via Yahoo! Keitai.
    - Address questions about S! Applications to SoftBank Customer Centre, General Information (see P.20-28).
    - Some preloaded S! Applications can be deleted (see P.16-6). To restore them, perform Memory All Clear (see P.16-10).

#### Lifestyle-Appli

Lifestyle-Appli, an S! Application required to use S! FeliCa, is preloaded on handset (see P.17-2). Lifestyle-Appli settings and usage patterns resemble those of other S! Applications.

#### **Network S! Applications**

- Network S! Applications require Internet connection.
  - Before using a Network S! Application, a message appears indicating that Internet connection is required. To skip this confirmation, see P.16-8.

## S! Appli Library

Open S! Appli Library to access S! Applications saved on handset or Memory Card.

Main Menu S! Appli

## ¶ Select S! Appli and press ■

- To switch between handset and Memory Card, press 🖾 Options
- ⇒ Select *Change to Phone* or *Change to Memory Card* ⇒ Press ■
- To open Java<sup>™</sup> Licence Information, select Information ⇒ Press
- Tip ► When is pressed in Standby with an S! Application paused, *Application is suspended.* appears. Select *End* and press to open S! Appli Library.

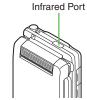
#### **Memory Status**

■ Press ■ → Select Data Folder → Press ■ → Select Memory Status → Press ■ → Select Phone Memory or Memory Card → Press ■

#### Remote Control

Use handset to control a TV, VCR, etc. (A compatible S! Application is required.)

- · Align Infrared Port (right) with infrared port of target device.
- Maximum usage distance is approximately five metres (with a fully charged battery).
- Remote control operation may not be possible depending on ambient light level, obstacles, etc.



## **S! Applications on Memory Card**

Synchronise Memory Cards used on other SoftBank handsets, PCs and other devices to update S! Appli Library. Retrieve Network Information beforehand (see P.1-21).

Main Menu ► S! Appli → Settings → Synchronisation

Choose *Yes* and press ■

Tip It may take some time to update S! Appli Library depending on the number of files saved, etc.

## **Video Output**

Connect handset to a TV, VCR, etc. with the optional Video Cable to view S! Applications on the target device.

- Use Video Output with compatible S! Applications: confirm compatibility in *Video out* in properties (see P.16-6).
- Before performing the steps below, connect Video Cable to handset and device (see P.10-14).

Main Menu ► S! Appli → S! Appli

## Select an S! Application and press

Press 🗃 🕸

S! Application appears on the device.

• Press (to toggle display between the device and handset.

- For eye safety, avoid playing S! Applications on an external device for long periods.
- · S! Applications started from Screensaver do not support Video Output.

## **Downloading S! Applications**

- Retrieve Network Information beforehand (see P.1-21).
- Some S! Applications can be downloaded to Memory Cards.
- · Make sure signal is strong.

Main Menu ► S! Appli → S! Appli → Download

1 Open an Internet site offering S! Applications

2 Select an S! Application and press 🔳

Properties appear.

When an S! Application is paused (♠ appears), choose **Yes**→ Press ■

3 Press ☑ Yes

Download starts.

- Download may take time.
- Press to cancel.
- **4** Downloaded S! Application is automatically saved and a confirmation appears
  - When you download a new version of S! Application set as Screensaver (see P.16-7), Screensaver may be cancelled.
- 5 Choose Yes and press

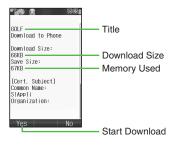
Internet connection ends and S! Appli Library opens.

- To return to the site, choose No and press .
- Starting S! Applications: see P.16-5

Some S! Applications require permission settings. Follow onscreen prompts to use the S! Application (may only be available in Japanese).

## Properties

Check S! Application properties before completing download.



## Using S! Applications

## **Starting S! Applications**

Main Menu S! Appli

Select S! Appli and press

S! Appli Library opens (see P.16-2).

Select an S! Application and press

S! Application starts (
appears).

- For operations, refer to the source Internet site, etc.
- If the S! Application cannot be used, S! Appli Library returns.

Tip S! Applications automatically pause for incoming transmissions. To set handset to ignore them, see P.16-9 "Calls & Alarms".

#### Starting Network S! Applications

- If Internet connection confirmation appears after Step 2 above: Choose Yes or No → Press ■ → S! Application starts
  - To skip confirmation, select Never Ask for Network Access (see P.16-8 "Setting Permissions").
- Some S! Applications require permission settings (see P.16-8).

## Exit, Pause & Resume

- **Exiting or Pausing S! Applications**
- Press while using an S! Application A changes to A.
- Exiting S! Application
  - 1 Select *End* and press ■

A disappears and S! Appli Library returns.

Pausing S! Application

1 Select *Suspend* and press ■

Handset returns to Standby.

- S! Application resumes from pause point.
- **Resuming S! Applications**
- While an S! Application is paused, press in Standby
  - A appears while an S! Application is paused.
- Select *Resume* and press
  - To end the S! Application, select *End* > Press
  - To open Main Menu and keep the S! Application paused, select Cancel ⇒ Press ■

## Managing S! Applications

## **Opening S! Application Properties**

Main Menu ► S! Appli → S! Appli

Select an S! Application and press ☑ Options

Select *Details* and press

Title	Title of the S! Application	
Vendor	Name of the distributor (or supplier/	
venuoi	manufacturer)	
Version	Version of the S! Application	
Description	Description Description of the S! Application	
Save Size Downloaded file size  Recorded Record game scores, etc. up to this size		
		Screensaver
Profile		
Link		
Video out	Compatibility with Video Output	
Certification	Trusted/Untrusted	
Cert. Subject	Authority of Certification (Common Name,	
Cert. Subject	Country and Organization)	
Push	Compatibility with Karaoke	
IC Support		
Karaoke Support		
Comic Support		

Press 🗓 to scroll down.

## **Moving S! Applications to Memory Card**

To move an S! Application set as Screensaver, cancel Screensaver first.

Main Menu ► S! Appli → S! Appli

Select an S! Application and press ☐ Options

Select *Move to Card* and press

When an older version of the S! Application is saved, choose Yes or No ⇒ Press ■

■ Choose **Yes** and press ■ to overwrite.

- **Note** S! Applications cannot be moved to Memory Card when the same S! Application is already saved or when Memory Card memory is low.
  - Some S! Applications cannot be moved to Memory Card.

## **Deleting S! Applications**

To delete an S! Application set as Screensaver, cancel Screensaver first.

Main Menu ► S! Appli → S! Appli

Select an S! Application and press □ Options

Select *Delete* and press

Choose *Yes* and press ■

· Handset Code may be required.

**Tip** Some preloaded S! Applications can be deleted. To restore them, perform Memory All Clear (see P.16-10).

#### Screensaver

Set an S! Application to activate when handset enters Standby.

## **Activating/Cancelling Screensaver**

Screensaver is Off by default.

S! Appli → Settings → Screensaver → Switch On/ Main Menu

## Choose *On* and press ■

To cancel, choose *Off* → Press ■

## **Setting Screensaver**

- Only one compatible S! Application can be set for Screensaver.
- Screensaver cannot be set when another S! Application is paused (A appears).
- Lifestyle-Appli and S! Applications on Memory Card cannot be set.

Main Menu S! Appli ⇒ S! Appli

Select an S! Application and press ☐ Options

## Select As Screensaver and press

• As Screensaver appears for compatible S! Applications.

#### **Activation Time**

- Enter time delay before Screensaver activates in Standby. Press ■ → Select S! Appli → Press ■ → Select Settings → Press ■ → Select Screensaver → Press ■ Select Activation Time Press ■ Press Enter time (01 - 10 seconds) → Press ■
  - Activation Time is 3 seconds by default.

- · Screensaver does not start when Headphones are connected.
- Connecting Headphones (with Memory Card inserted) cancels an active Screensaver.
- · Screensaver may not start when an external device (handsfree kit, etc.) is connected to handset.
- Screensaver which responds to incoming transmissions may cancel out selected Mode Settings profile.

# **Setting Permissions**

Customise the method of confirmation, etc. for each S! Application operation below.

Settings:

Phone Call	Place Voice Calls	
Network Access	Connect to the Internet	
Messaging	Send/receive messages	
Autorun	Execute Autorun files	
Bluetooth Conn.	Connect via Bluetooth®	
Local Connection	Connect to other devices	
Read User Data	Access Phone Book, Calendar, etc.	
Write User Data	Edit Phone Book, Calendar, etc.	
Use Multimedia	Use Media Player	
<b>Location Access</b>	Send Location Information	

- These settings are also available for S! Applications on Memory Card.
- Permission settings may not be available for some S! Applications.

Main Menu ► S! Appli → S! Appli

Select an S! Application and press 
☐ Options

Select *Permission* and press

Select an item and press

Select an option and press

• Some options may not appear.

Ask Once Confirmation appears every time the S! Application starts	
Always Ask Confirmation appears before the specific operation	
Never Ask No confirmation	
No	Reject the operation



# **S! Application Operational Settings**

Adjust the volume of S! Application sounds

Default Level 3

Main Menu ► S! Appli → Settings → Application Volume

Use 🏰 to adjust level **▶** Press 🔳

• In Manner mode, volume set in Manner settings applies.

Select a Backlight status for S! Applications

Default Normal Settings

Main Menu ► S! Appli → Settings → Backlight → Switch On/Off

#### Select Always On, Always Off or Normal Settings > Press

Always On	Backlight remains on while S! Application runs
Always Off	Backlight remains off while S! Application runs
Normal Settings	Applies Display Backlight setting (see P.10-13)

When activated, Backlight flashes while compatible S! Applications play

**Default**On

Main Menu ► S! Appli → Settings → Backlight → Blink

Choose On (activate) or Off → Press ■

Vibratio

When activated, handset vibrates while compatible S! Applications play

**Default**On

Main Menu ► S! Appli → Settings → Vibration

Choose On (activate) or Off → Press ■

• In Manner mode, vibration set in Manner settings applies.

Calls & Alarm

Select handset response to incoming calls, etc. while an S! Application is active

Default Call/Alarm/Start Priority, Message Notice

Main Menu ► S! Appli → Settings → Calls & Alarms

Select from *Voice Call* to *Start Demand* → Press ■

→ Select handset response → Press ■

Call/Message/ Alarm/ Start Priority	S! Application pauses for incoming call/mail, Alarm or S! Appli Request	
Call/Message/	A message appears for incoming calls,	
Alarm/	mail, etc. For example, 090392XXXX1	
Start Notice	appears. Press 🗈 to answer a call.	

 Regardless of setting, a message appears for S! Applications started from Screensaver. Surround Set surround effect for S! Applications

Use Headphones to enjoy surround effect.

DefaultOn

Main Menu ► S! Appli → Settings → Surround

Choose On or Off ⇒ Press ■

Reset

Set to Default

Reset S! Application settings

Main Menu ► S! Appli → Settings → Set to Default

Enter Handset Code → Press ■ → Choose *Yes* → Press ■

• The settings affected by Set to Default:

Application Volume		Level 3
Backlight	Switch On/Off	Normal Settings
	Blink	On
Vibration		On
	Voice Call	Call Priority
	Video Call	Call Priority
Calls & Alarms	Circle Talk	Call Priority
	Incoming Message	Message Notice
	Alarm	Alarm Priority
	Start Demand	Start Priority
Carcononior	Switch On/Off	Off
Screensaver	Activation Time	03 seconds
Surround		On

Restore S! Appli Library to default setting

Main Menu ► S! Appli → Settings → Memory All Clear

Enter Handset Code → Press ■ → Choose Yes → Press <a>
</a>

- Note 
   Memory All Clear deletes downloaded S! Applications and Lifestyle-Appli.
  - Memory All Clear resets Near Chat application password and thus cancels Near Chat access restriction.
  - Preloaded S! Applications are restored.

S! FeliCa (Japanese Only)

# **Basics**

S! FeliCa encompasses a range of IC Card-based services available via FeliCa-compatible SoftBank handsets. 911SH supports S! FeliCa. To use services such as e-money, e-ticketing and reward point systems, simply hold handset over a compatible reader/writer at a shop or restaurant, etc.

#### **FeliCa**

A contactless IC card technology enabling wireless data transmissions with compatible reader/writer terminals

#### IC Card

- The FeliCa chip embedded in FeliCa-compatible handsets
- Holds information required to use S! FeliCa

#### Lifestyle-Appli

- S! Applications required to use S! FeliCa
  - Edy e-money Lifestyle-Appli is preloaded on handset.
  - Edy is a prepaid e-money service run by bitWallet Inc.

Note IC Card data content varies by service and usage history. Procedures to delete IC Card data vary by Lifestyle-Appli; contact service providers for details.

# Service Usage Outline

# **Download Lifestyle-Appli**

Download Lifestyle-Appli via Internet site.

• Lifestyle-Appli is saved to Lifestyle-appli folder.



# **Complete Registration/Set Up**

Activate Lifestyle-Appli, complete registration/customise settings.

• Charge accounts, check balance or payment records, etc.



#### **Use Service**

To use S! FeliCa at shops, restaurants, and locations, place  $\bigcirc$  logo over reader/writer.

• Use e-money/e-tickets to shop/travel; earn reward points.

#### Note >

- Lifestyle-Appli registration and usage vary; contact the service provider for details.
- SoftBank is not liable for damages resulting from accidental loss/alteration of IC Card data/settings.
- Keep service passwords/customer service contact information, etc. in a separate place.

# Starting Lifestyle-Appli

To use S! FeliCa, activate a service Lifestyle-Appli and complete service registration, setup, charge, balance check, etc.

Main Menu ► Tools → Tools 3 ( Lifestyle-appli

1 Select Lifestyle-appli and press

🧾 To download a Lifestyle-Appli, select *Download* 🖈 Press 🔳

2 Select an application and press

Lifestyle-Appli starts.

To end the Lifestyle-Appli, press 🗟.

Note Lifestyle-Appli cannot be started during calls or when another S! Application is active.

Tip ► Lifestyle-Appli settings and usage patterns resemble those of other S! Applications (see P.16-6 - 16-10). However, Lifestyle-Appli cannot be set as Screensaver.

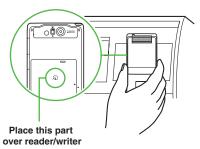
# Using S! FeliCa

Follow these steps to conduct a transaction.

Example: making an electronic payment:

- Complete registration, setup and charge in advance.
- Complete transactions without activating a Lifestyle-Appli.

**1** Place **2** logo over reader/writer



- The illustration above is for reference only.
- Confirm scan results on reader/writer display.
- If recognition is slow, move handset around slightly.

Note

- Align handset parallel to reader/writer.
- Foreign articles can block/hamper recognition.

- Tip When placed over sensor, handset may display a message, vibrate or activate mail, Internet or an S! Application for some services. To disable response, see P.17-7 "Interface Settings".
  - Reader/writer will scan FeliCa IC Card even during calls or Internet transmissions. (It may take some time.)

#### When Handset Power is Off

- Transactions possible; Lifestyle-Appli does not start automatically.
  - After installing/reinstalling battery, always turn on handset power to use S! FeliCa.

#### When Battery is Low

S! FeliCa is not available. Charge it beforehand.

# S! FeliCa Settings

# **IC Card Status**

► Tools → Tools 3 ( Lifestyle-appli → IC Card Main Menu Settinas

# Select IC Card Status and press ■

- If IC Card Lock is set, choose **Yes** Press I Penter Handset Code 

  ◆ Press
- Press to return.

# **IC Card Lock**

Use this function to restrict access to/prevent unauthorised use of S! FeliCa on handset.

IC Card Lock is Off by default.

► Tools → Tools 3 ( Lifestyle-appli → IC Card Main Menu Settings 

→ IC Card Lock

- Choose *On* and press
  - To cancel, choose *Off* → Press
- Enter Handset Code and press
- Choose Yes and press

## **Remote Lock**

Send mail with specified subject (Mail Remote Lock) or call from a specified phone (Call Remote Lock).

# **Preparation on Handset**

Mail Remote Lock Password/Address

Save a password for Mail Remote Lock, and set mail address to send IC Card Lock notice to.

► Tools → Tools 3 ( Lifestyle-appli → IC Card Main Menu Settings 

→ Remote Lock

- Enter Handset Code and press
- Select Mail Remote Lock and press
- Select *Remote Lock PW* and press ■
- Enter a password and press
  - Enter between 5 and 16 alphanumerics.
- 5 Select LockNoticeSettings and press
- 6 Select Email Lock Notice and press

- Sending Notice to Remote Lock Activator
  - Select As Reply and press
    - Press to return.

Sending Notice to Specified Address

- 1 Select *AddressTo Notice* and press ■
- 2 Select *Address to Notice* and press ■
- 3 Select Phone Book, Enter Number or Enter Address and press ■
- Select/enter mail address or SoftBank handset number and press

**Disabling Notice** 

- ☐ Choose *Off* and press
  - Press to return.
- To save settings without enabling Mail Remote Lock, press [Y7] Save
  - To enable Mail Remote Lock, perform from Step 3 in "Remote Lock Setup" on P.17-6 and choose On in Step 4.

## Call Remote Lock Number/Count for Lock

Save up to two phone numbers from which to call handset, and set Missed Call count required to activate IC Card Lock (default count is 3 times).

Enable Remote Lock activation via public phones.



- Enter Handset Code and press
- Select Call Remote Lock and press
- Select *Phone No. to Lck 1* and press
  - To enable activation via public phone, select **Set Public**
  - To disable activation via public phone, choose Off.
- Select Phone Book or Enter Number and press 🔳
- Select/enter a phone number and press
  - To save second phone number, select **Phone No. to Lck 2** Press ■ Repeat Steps 4 - 5
- Select Count for Lock and press
  - 3 times is set by default.

- Enter Missed Call count (3 10 consecutive times) required to activate IC Card Lock and press 🔳
  - To enable Call Remote Lock, perform from Step 3 in "Remote Lock Setup" below and choose On in Step 4.
- To save settings without enabling Call Remote Lock, press Y Save

# Remote Lock Setup

Activate or cancel Mail Remote Lock/Call Remote Lock. Both Remote Locks are Off by default.



- Enter Handset Code and press
- Select Mail Remote Lock or Call Remote Lock and press
- Select Switch On/Off and press
- Choose On and press
  - To cancel, choose *Off* → Press
    - Saved mail address and phone numbers remain. Reactivate Remote Lock to use the same setting.
- 5 Press Y Save

# **Activating Remote Lock**

#### Via Mail

# 1 Use S! Mail/e-mail to send password to handset

- Enter password as subject; leave other fields blank.
- To confirm IC Card Lock status, send a message via phone or PC with specified mail address (see P.17-5 "Mail Remote Lock Password/Address").

#### After Handset Receives Message

■ IC Card Lock is set and notice is sent from handset to specified mail address.

**Note** If handset cannot receive mail IC Card Lock is not set.

#### Via Phone

1 Using one of the specified phones, call handset

# 2 End the call

The call is recorded as a Missed Call on your handset.

- Within three minutes, repeat Steps 1 2 until the specified number of Missed Calls are recorded.
- Public phones can be used for this function if Set Public Phone is activated beforehand.
- Send Caller ID when placing calls from specified phone.
   (Caller ID is not required for public phones.)

#### **After Specified Number of Missed Calls**

IC Card Lock is set; a message announces Remote Lock activation.

#### Note >

- Missed Call count is reset by calls from numbers not saved for this function. If series is interrupted, start over from the beginning.
- When Call Forwarding is active, Missed Calls may not be recorded.

# **Interface Settings**

Set handset response to reader/writer commands: Choose On for S! Appli to activate S! Application, Browser to access Internet, Messaging to activate mail, Vibration to vibrate handset, and Pop-up Message to open pop-up message. Interface Settings is On for all items by default.

Main Menu

► Tools → Tools 3 ( ) → Lifestyle-appli → IC Card Settings → Interface Settings

- 1 Enter Handset Code and press
- **2** Select from *S! Appli* to *Pop-up Message* and press
- **3** Choose *On* or *Off* and press ■

# **Resetting Defaults**

Cancel custom settings and return S! FeliCa settings to their defaults.

► Tools → Tools 3 ( Lifestyle-appli → IC Card Main Menu Settings → Set to Default

**Enter Handset Code and press** 

Choose Yes and press ■

Note > • Set to Default does not delete downloaded Lifestyle-Appli.

• Reset All (see P.10-29)/Memory All Clear (see P.16-10) returns Lifestyle-Appli settings to defaults; all downloaded Lifestyle-Applications are deleted. If IC Card data remains, Reset All and Memory All Clear are disabled.

**Entertainment** 

# S! Cast (Japanese Only)

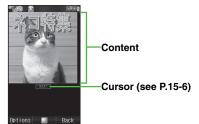
## **Basics**

Subscribe to Japanese mobile periodicals that download to handset automatically overnight.

- A separate subscription and registration are required.
- After registration. Weather Indicator (see P.18-4) appears in Standby.
- Retrieve Network Information (see P.1-21) before using S! Cast.

#### S! Cast Content

Sample S! Cast information page:



# **Service Registration & Content Subscription**

Complete service registration to use S! Cast, then subscribe to content.

Registration and subscription require Internet use (connection fees apply). Confirm signal strength beforehand.

Main Menu ► Entertainment ► CAST

# Select Join/CancelService and press

Handset connects to the Internet and service registration page opens.

Follow onscreen instructions

# **Opening Received Information**

# **Newly Arrived Information**

# **Delivery Notice appears and** Information window opens (\$\pi\$ appears) for new information

· If closed, open handset for new information to see Delivery Notice appear and Information window open.

# Select CAST and press

Information appears.

- Follow onscreen instructions
- Information handling is similar to that of Yahoo! Keitai.
  - Using Cursor: see P.15-6
  - Saving Files to Data Folder: see P.15-11
  - Using Linked Info: see P.15-12



Information

# **3** Press <sup>↑</sup> to exit



CAST Notif Setting

Toggle Notification (Information window) on/off

Default Notify

Main Menu ► Entertainment ► CAST ► CAST Notif. Setting

Select *Notify* or *No Response* → Press ■

Stored Information

Main Menu ► Entertainment → CAST

1 Latest Information

Select What's New and press ■

Back Issues

1 Select Back Number and press

2 Select date and press ■

2 Select an item and press Information appears.

3 Press 🕤 to exit

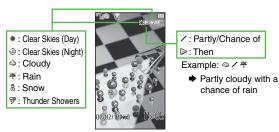
# **Using Information**

Save Sound/ Chaku-Uta®	Select <i>Save</i> → Press ■	
Change Font Size	Press  ☐ Options → Select Font Size → Press ☐ → Select a size → Press ☐	
Change Scroll Unit	Press  ☐ Options → Select Scroll Unit → Press ☐ → Select a unit → Press ☐	
Copy Text	Press ☐ Options → Select Copy Text → Press ■ → Perform from Step 3 in "Copy/ Cut & Paste" on P.3-13	
Open Properties	Press ☑	

# **Using Weather Indicator**

After S! Cast (see **P.18-2**) registration, local area weather forecast (based on Location Information) appears.

# Indicators & Updates

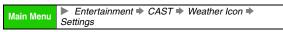


- 🗟 (chance of rain), 🕅 (fall foliage season), etc. appear at the same time
- Weather Indicator is updated when:
  - Weather Indicator update time arrives
  - Manually updated

Note When handset location changes, a new forecast appears at Weather Indicator update time. Alternatively, update Weather Indicator manually.

# **Activating/Cancelling Weather Indicator**

Show or hide Weather Indicator in Standby. **On** (show) is set by default.



- **1** Select *Standby Settings* and press
- 2 Choose On or Off and press ■

# **Activating Updates**

Activate automatic updates. On (activate) is set by default.



- Select *Icon Update* and press
- **2** Choose *On* and press
  - To cancel, choose *Off* → Press **(Omit the next step.)**
- 3 Choose Yes and press ■

Weather Indicator is updated when update time arrives.

18

Toggle Notification (Information window) on/off

Default On

Main Menu

Entertainment ⇒ CAST ⇒ Weather Icon ⇒ Settings Display Info

Choose On (show) or Off → Press ■

Update Weather Indicator manually

Main Menu

Entertainment → CAST → Weather Icon

Select Manual Update ⇒ Press ■

 Handset connects to the Internet and Weather Indicator is updated.

Note Activate *Icon Update* (see P.18-4) beforehand.

Weather Forecast (Japanese Only)

Main Menu

Entertainment 

CAST 

Weather Icon

Select Weather and press Information appears.

# **Electronic Books**

Read XMDF or Text format E-Books saved on handset/ Memory Card.

- E-Book dictionaries turn handset into an electronic dictionary.
- Adjust Text Code (see P.18-7) for E-Books in other languages.
- Handset may not support some embedded sounds/images.
- E-Book folder cannot be accessed during Synchronisation.

# **Downloading E-Books**

- Press → Select Yahoo! Keitai → Press → Select Yahoo! Keitai ⇒ Press ■ ⇒ Select メニューリスト ⇒ Press ■
  - Select 書籍・ユミック・写真集 ⇒ Press ■
  - Visit Sharp Space Town (see P.15-9) for more information on E-Books (how to purchase, etc.).

#### Support Book (Japanese Only)

Download Support Book (E-Book on 911SH operational tips) via Sharp Space Town (see P.15-9).

# **Reading Content**

Main Menu Entertainment

# 1 Select E-Book and press ■

Book contents list appears. (When you press of to close Reading window, the same page will open next time.)

- To read E-Books saved in other folders, press ☐ Options ⇒ Select Switch Folders ⇒ Press ☐ ⇒ Select a folder ⇒ Press ☐
  - Selected item appears next time E-Book is selected.
  - Access E-Books saved in Book and Book (SD) from Entertainment or Data Folder (Books).

# **9** Select an E-Book and press ■

- 0% indicates location of the current page.
- If the E-Book is password protected, enter password ⇒ Press ■ Reading window opens
- To see the title, author, etc., press ☑ Options → Select

  Details → Press ■
- Press to return.

# ? Press 🗟 to close

• The last page opened will appear next time.

Note • E-Books automatically close for low battery, five minutes of inactivity, or Memory Card removal.

- Only *zbf*, *zbs*, *zbk*, *txt* or *text* files appear in content list.
- Revised E-Books are not supported.

#### **Key Assignments**

Operations vary by text orientation as follows.

	Horizontal	Vertical
Ů	Scroll up (by line)	Backward (by page)
·	Scroll down (by line)	Forward (by page)
•□	Backward (by page)	Scroll left (by line)
□•	Forward (by page)	Scroll right (by line)

For some E-Books, use #\*\* to scroll by page.

#### **Text Operations**

■ Jump to the first or last page.

Press 

Options 
Select Jump to Top or Jump to Bottom 
Press 

■

Move to a specific location.

Press 

Options 
Select Move to Specified % 
Press 

Press 

■

▶ Enter location by percentage (00 - 99%) Press ■

Select a chapter when a table of contents is contained.

Press 

Options 
Select Contents 
Press 

Select a chapter 
Press 

Press 

■

Move back to link source or open link again.

Press 

Options 
Select Back or Next 
Press 

Press 

□

Return to E-Book list.

Press 

Options 

Select Back to List 

Press 

Press 

■

See P.18-8 to use Bookmarks

#### **Using Linked Info/Copying Text**

Use linked numbers, addresses or URLs to place calls, send messages or access Internet sites.

Select an Item → Press ■ → Choose Yes → Press ■

• Some linked information may not be usable.

Copy text (up to 20 characters).

- Dictionary index text and search results cannot be copied.
- Images and ruby annotations cannot be copied.

#### Reading Window Settings

■ Press ☑ Options → Select Settings → Press ■ → Select an Item → Press ■ → Change the setting → Press ■

Item	Description	Default
Font Size	Select <i>Tiny, Small,</i> <b>Standard, Large</b> or <b>Huge</b>	Standard
Text Orientation	Read text vertically or horizontally	Vertical Text*
Ruby	Show/hide ruby annotations	Off
Text Code	Set encoding to <b>Shift-JIS</b> , <b>Latin-1</b> or <b>Latin-9</b>	Shift-JIS
View Settings	Select <b>Detail View</b> or <b>Page View</b>	Detail View
Vibration	Activate/cancel vibration	On
Resolution	Set to Low, Normal or High	Low

\*May vary by E-Book.

• Above settings are not available for some content.

#### Mask & Jump

- Some E-Books may contain hidden text or images (masked info) or links (jump links).
  - Select masked info and press 

     to see the text or image.
     Press 

     again to hide.
  - Select a jump link and press 
    to jump to the specified page. Press to return.

#### Folders and Files in E-Book Folders

- Open E-Book list first.
  - Adding Folders
     Press ☑ Options → Select New Folder → Press ■
     Enter name → Press ■
  - Editing Folder/File Names
     Select a folder/file → Press ☑ Options → Select
     Change Name → Press Delit → Press ■
  - Deleting Folders/Files
     Select a folder/file → Press ☑ Options → Select
     Delete → Press → Choose Yes → Press ■
  - Moving Files
     Select a file → Press ☑ Options → Select Move →
     Press → Select a location → Press → Press ■

Tip ► The above operations are not available for E-Books in Data Folder (handset/Memory Card). For managing folders/files on handset, see P.9-8.

#### **Bookmark**

Add bookmarks to return to the pages easily. Use two bookmarks per E-Book (for up to five E-Books).

Press ■

If Marker is not on Display, press ☑ Options → Select Bookmark ⇒ Press ■

Select Bookmark1 or Bookmark2 and press Bookmark is added

#### **Auto Bookmark**

- When Reading window is closed. Auto Bookmark 1 is added to the last page opened. When the same E-Book is opened and closed again, Auto Bookmark 1 changes to Auto Bookmark 2
  - Each E-Book holds up to two Auto Bookmarks, the oldest of which is deleted first when a new one is added

#### Opening Bookmarked Page

In Reading window, press ☐ Options → Select Move to Bookmark → Press ■ → Select Bookmark1, Bookmark2, Auto Bookmark1 or Auto Bookmark2 > Press

# **Using E-Book Images**

Save images as Wallpaper or use information contained in images

Main Menu ► Entertainment ► E-Book ► Open E-Book

# Select an image ◆ Press

· Soft Kev Assignments:

Assign	Save images as Wallpaper For images smaller or larger than Display, select  Centred, Full Screen or Fit Image → Press ■  (For Display size images or Centred, use 🗓 to zoom in/out or press 🖾 to rotate.)	
Jump to	Select jump information to move to other pages. Use linked information to send S! Mail messages or access Internet sites (E-Book will close). See P.18-6 "Using Linked Info/Copying Text".	
Switch	Hidden text or images appear	
Play	Animation plays	

# **Using a Dictionary**

Use downloaded E-Book dictionaries to look up word definitions, etc.

Main Menu ► Entertainment → E-Book

Select a dictionary 

→ Press 

→ Select an entry field → Press ■ → Enter a word → Press ■

- Select an entry and press 
  to view its definitions.
- Key Assignments: see P.18-6

# ComicSurfing® (Japanese Only)

Activate ComicSurfing® S! Application to read comics, photo books and other CCF files saved in Data Folder (Books). To read fee-based CCF files, download Content Keys.

Main Menu Entertainment

# Select ComicSurfing and press

ComicSurfing® S! Application starts.

- Refer to the ComicSurfing® help menu for operational instructions.
- When an S! Application is paused, Application suspended. **End application?** appears. Choose **Yes** and press to start ComicSurfing®.
- Note When purchasing a new handset, move CCF files via Memory Card and retrieve Content Key to open the files. Some files may need to be re-downloaded.
- Tip ► Save CCF files to handset/Memory Card Data Folder (Books).

# **Communication**

# S! Town (Japanese Only)

S! Town is an online communication application. Select an avatar to enter this 3D virtual town, where you can participate in events and meet other users.

- Usage requires the pre-installed S! Town S! Application.
- S! Town S! Application cannot be deleted.
- Internet connection is required; may incur high charges.
- S! Town is not available if Internet access is restricted by subscription.

# **Using S! Town**

When using S! Town for the first time, agree to the terms of service then complete free user registration.

Main Menu > Communication

# Select S! Town and press

S! Town starts.

• Refer to the S! Town S! Application's help menu for operational instructions.

- Tip ► Check registration status or cancel registration via Yahoo! Keitai. For details, refer to the S! Town S! Application's help menu.
  - An upgrade notice may appear when starting S! Town. Follow onscreen instructions to upgrade.

# **S! Town Library**

Save S! Town-compatible S! Applications to S! Town Library.

- Start S! Applications from S! Town Library. (S! Town may start for some applications.)
- S! Town-compatible S! Applications are not saved in S! Town Library by default.

Main Menu > Communication

S! Town Library opens.

Select *S! Town* and press 

□ Library

Downloaded S! Town-compatible applications are automatically saved to S! Town Library.

# S! Loop (Japanese Only)

S! Loop is a communication service.

Main Menu Communication

Select S! Loop and press

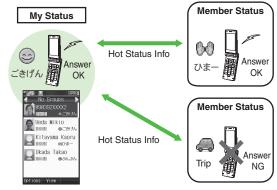
Handset connects to the Internet and S! Loop Main Menu opens.

• Refer to the S! Loop help menu for operational instructions.

# Hot Status

Exchange current usage status, mood, etc. with compatible handsets.

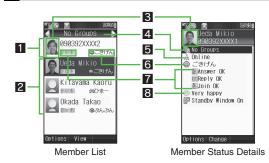
• A separate subscription is required.



• Save compatible handset numbers to member list. Hot Status information is updated automatically.

- Note Before use, set IP Service Setting (see P.10-27) to On.
  - Only available on compatible 3G handsets.

# **Window Description**



1 My Status (see P.19-8)

2 Members

3 Image

• Image set for *Picture:* in My Details or Phone Book appears.

4 Group Name

Connection Status

• Online, Offline or Unknown appears.

**6** Status

· Current status indicated by Status Icon (Pictogram) and Status Label (description) appears.

# Availability

Availability for Calls, Mail and Circle Talk appear.

**3** Comment

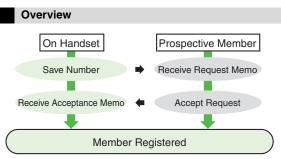
#### **Hot Status Notification**

Information window opens for the following notifications.

Request Memo	A request for permission to add your number to Hot Status member list	
Acceptance Memo	An acceptance reply to your Request Memo	
Abstention Memo	A rejection reply to your Request Memo; also arrives when no reply is sent within two hours	
Removal Memo	Your number is deleted from a member's Hot Status member list	
NW Interruption	Network failure notice; Hot Status is not available	

# **Adding Members**

Save up to 30 members to Hot Status member list.



My Status is sent and member's Hot Status information appears on handset.

Note Set Connection Setting (see P.19-9) to *Online* to add members.

# Adding from Phone Book or Direct Entry

Main Menu ► Communication ► Hot Status

Use • to select a Group and press ☐ Options

When *Register a member?* appears, choose *Yes* ⇒ Press ■ Skip ahead to Step 3

Select *Add Member* and press

? Phone Book

1 Select Registration from Phone Book and press 🔳

2 Select an entry and press

For entries with multiple numbers, select one Press

**Direct Entry** 

■ Select As New Entry and press

2 Enter a phone number and press

Choose Yes and press

Request Memo is sent to the number.

- Member is saved when Request Memo is accepted (Acceptance Memo arrives).
- Waiting and Unknown appear for pending members' availability and Status respectively.

- Note When 30 members are already saved, delete members (see P.19-10 "Deleting Members") to add new ones.
  - Abstention Memo arrives when Request Memo is sent to incompatible handsets.
  - After sending Request Memo, Bluetooth® and Infrared transfers are disabled until Acceptance or Abstention Memo arrives.

Tip Update My Status (see P.19-8) as needed before adding members.

# **Adding from Request Memo**

Save members via Request Memo.

When a request arrives, Accept the registration request from XX (handset number) ? appears. Accept or reject it.

# Accepting

# **1** Choose *Yes* and press ■

Acceptance Memo is sent and the number is saved to Hot Status member list.

#### Rejecting

# **1** Choose *No* and press ■

Abstention Memo is sent; number is not saved to Hot Status member list.

#### **Auto Reiect**

- Abstention Memo is sent automatically when:
  - · Handset fails to respond within two hours
  - Thirty members are already saved in total

- Note > Once rejected, the same number cannot be added to member list for 24 hours
  - Request Memo arrives again when the requesting party fails to receive Abstention Memo within 24 hours.

# **Opening Member Status Details**

Communication 

→ Hot Status Main Menu

- Use to select a Group, then ! to select a member
- Press ■

Member status details appear.

Window Description: see P.19-4

# My Status

# Opening My Status Details

1 In Standby, press ★ for 1+ seconds



# 1 Image/Name/Number

 Image and name appear if saved in My Details.

# Connection Status (see P.19-9)Status

 To edit Status Icon/Label, see P.19-12 "Status Setting".

#### 4 Answer Status

 Change availability for Calls, Mail and Circle Talk at once.

#### 5 Availability

 Set availability for Calls, Mail and Circle Talk separately.

#### 6 Comment

• Enter up to 15 characters.

Standby Window On/Off (see P.19-9)

# Default Settings

Item	Default
Status	⊜ ごきげん
Answer Status	All OK
Availability (Calls)	Answer OK
Availability (Mail)	Reply OK
Availability (Circle Talk)	Join OK
Comment	_

# Changing My Status

Follow these steps after opening My Status details (Step 1 on the left) to change Status, availability and Comment. For other items. see **P.19-9**.

- 1 Select any item (except Connection status and Standby Window On/Off) and press
- 2 Select an item and press
- Select status and press
  - To change more items, repeat Steps 2 3.
     For *Comment:*, enter text → Press ■

New status is sent to the members.

To exit without updating, press → Choose **No** → Press ■

Default On

#### Available Settings:

Item	Setting	
Status:	16 Status Icon/Label combinations	
Answer Status:	All OK	Calls: Answer OK Mail: Reply OK Circle Talk: Join OK
	Only Mail is OK	Calls: Answer NG Mail: Reply OK Circle Talk: Join NG
	All NG	Calls: Answer NG Mail: Check Later Circle Talk: Join NG
	User Setting	- (See <b>P.19-11</b> "Answer Status" to assign custom combination)
Calls:	Answer OK, Urgency Only or Answer NG	
Mail:	Reply OK or Check Later	
Circle Talk	Join OK, Auto Join <sup>1</sup> or Join NG <sup>2</sup>	
Comment:	Up to 15 characters	

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>1</sup>Automatically accepts Circle Talk requests.

# Additional Settings

Follow these steps after opening My Status details (Step 1 on **P.19-8**).

# Set Connection status Select current Connection status (Online or Offline) → Press □ → Select Online or Offline → Press □ • Set to Online to change Status/availability or to use Circle Talk. Standby Window Show or hide My Status in Standby Window

Select current Standby Window status (*Standby Window On* or *Off*) → Press ■ Choose *On* (show) or *Off* → Press ■

#### **Connection Status Auto Update**

- Connection status is updated to *Unknown* or *Offline* after a period of no signal detection.
- Connection status is updated to *Offline* when signal returns.

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>2</sup>Automatically rejects Circle Talk requests.

# **Editing Hot Status Member List**

Edit Group name or move members to other Groups.

**Renaming Groups** 

Main Menu ► Communication ► Hot Status

Use •• to select a Group and press ☐ Options

Select Edit Group Name and press

Enter name and press

**Moving Members** 

Main Menu ► Communication ► Hot Status

Select a member and press 
☐ Options

Select Change Group and press

Select target Group and press Member is moved

Tip Open Standby Window in Communication mode (see P.10-9) to view member Status/availability in Standby.

# **Deleting Members**

Deleting a member simultaneously deletes your number from the deleted member's Hot Status member list.

Main Menu ► Communication → Hot Status

Select a member and press

Press ☑ Options

Select Registration Release and press

Choose Yes and press

Choose *Yes* and press ■

Removal Memo is sent and the member is deleted from Hot Status member list

- Note Deleted members cannot be re-saved for 24 hours.
  - . Request Memo arrives when the member fails to receive Removal Memo within 24 hours.

#### When Abstention/Removal Memo Arrives

- Member is deleted from Hot Status member list.
- When handset fails to receive Abstention/Removal Memo within 24 hours, Request Memo is sent to the member.

# **Using Hot Status Info**

Use Hot Status to place calls, send messages, start Circle Talk or save numbers to Phone Book.

Calls, Messages & Circle Talk

Main Menu ► Communication → Hot Status

Select a member and press □ Options

Select a contact method and press

For Call and Video Call, handset dials the number.

Creating & Sending SMS/S! Mail: see P.14-7

Initiating Circle Talk: see P.19-14 - 19-15

Saving to Phone Book

Main Menu ► Communication → Hot Status

Select a member and press □ Options

Select Save to Phone Book and press

Select As New Entry or an existing entry and press =

Number is entered in Phone Book. Complete other fields and save (see P.4-4).

# **Hot Status Settings**

Select handset response to Request Memos

**Default Always Confirmed** 

Main Menu ► Communication → Hot Status

Press 

Options 

Select Settings 

Press 

Press 

→ Select Request Reply → Press ■ → Select an option **▶** Press ■

Always Confirmed	Show confirmation for all Request Memos
Unregistered Entry	Reject Request Memos from numbers not saved in Phone Book; otherwise, confirmation appears
Always Ignored	Reject all Request Memos

Assign custom availability combination to User Setting (see P.19-9)

Default Calls: Answer OK, Mail: Reply OK, Circle Talk: Join OK

Main Menu ► Communication → Hot Status

Press 

Options 

Select Settings 

Press 

→ Select Answer Status → Press ■ → Select User Setting → Press ■ → Select a type → Press ■ → Select availability 

Press ■

When finished setting for all types, press 🔯 Save .

Change Status Icon Pictogram or edit Status Label description for My Status

Main Menu ► Communication → Hot Status

Press 

Options 

Select Settings 

Press 

Press 

→ Select Status Setting → Press ■ → Select a Status Press ■ Select Status Icon > Press ■ > Select a Pictogram → Press ■ → Select Status Label → Press ■ → Enter text → Press ■

- Press Y Save to save. • Pictogram List: see P.20-16
- Enter up to four characters for Status Label.

# **Additional Functions**

**Opening Hot Status Notification List** 

Main Menu ► Communication → Hot Status

- Press ☑ Options
- Select Hot Status Notification List and press

Hot Status Notification List appears.

- To open details, select a notification → Press
  - For Request Memos, see P.19-7 "Adding from Request Memo"

# **Manual Info Update**

Normally Hot Status information is updated automatically. Follow these steps for manual update.

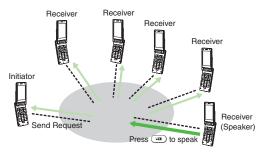
Main Menu ► Communication → Hot Status

- Press 
  ☐ Options
- Select Settings and press
- Select Status Update and press Hot Status information is updated.

# Circle Talk

Circle Talk is a Walkie-Talkie type communication service. Press one key to speak to up to ten parties simultaneously.

- Press 🗃 to take the floor and speak; other participants may only listen until the floor is released.
- · A subscription to Hot Status is required.
- Transmission/connection fees apply during Circle Talk.



- Note Before use, set IP Service Setting (see P.10-27) to On and Connection Setting (see P.19-9) to Online. (Circle Talk is disabled when Connection Setting is Offline.)
  - A new Circle Talk session cannot begin during a call.
  - Only available on compatible 3G handsets.

# Window Description



- 1 Total Number of Participants
- 2 Participants

Names appear if saved in Phone Book. Otherwise phone numbers appear.

- **B** Connection Status
- 4 Circle Talk Status

# **Initiating Circle Talk**

Follow the steps below to start Circle Talk from Standby. When *Register the circle talk member right now?* appears, see P.19-17 to create Circle Talk member list.

- 1 Enter a phone number
- 2 Press (Circle Talk Key)
  - Adding/Cancelling Participants: see P.19-16
- 3 Press Call
  - Circle Talk starts when request is accepted by a receiver.
- 4 Speak

Initiator is the first speaker when Circle Talk starts.

- Speaker's voice is heard by all other participants.
- Speak for up to 30 seconds at one time.
- Warning tone sounds five seconds before limit.
- **5** Press when finished
  - The floor is released automatically when the time is up.

# To speak again, press while *Press* bto speak appears

**Press** § when finish appears when you have the floor.

- **Busy** appears if the floor is taken by another participants; try again later.
- **7** Press 🕤 to exit

Floor counts appear and handset returns to Standby.

 Circle Talk ends automatically when there is only one participant left, including yourself.

# **Rejoining Circle Talk**

- In Standby, press ☑/☑ to open Dialled Numbers/
  Received Calls → Select the most recent Circle Talk
  record → Press ☑ Options → Select Rejoin Circle Talk →
  Press
  - An error message appears when all other participants have exited or 11 participants are already engaged.

#### Loudspeaker On/Off

- Press to toggle Loudspeaker on/off during Circle Talk.
  - To activate/cancel Loudspeaker when starting Circle Talk, see P.19-18 "Loudspeaker".

- Note Incoming Calls/Alarm during Circle Talk
  - Handset responds to incoming calls according to Calls settings (see P.19-18).
  - Alarm Times are announced after exiting Circle Talk.

## From Circle Talk Member List

Save members or Groups beforehand (see P.19-17).

- Press 😕
- Select a member or Group and press 🔳
  - Adding/Cancelling Participants: see P.19-16
- **?** Press Call



- From Hot Status Member List
- Main Menu ► Communication → Hot Status
- Use 🔁 to select a member and press 🖾
  - Adding/Cancelling Participants: see P.19-16
- 2 Press Call
- From Phone Book or Call Log
- Phone Book
  - 1 Press 📮
  - 2 Select an entry and press ■

## Call Log

- 1 Use to open Dialled Numbers or Received Calls
- Select a number and press
  - Adding/Cancelling Participants: see P.19-16
- **?** Press Call

# **Accepting a Circle Talk Request**

1 While handset is ringing/ vibrating, press ☑, ④ or ☑

Circle Talk starts.

To take the floor, see P.19-14.

**夕** Press **ⓒ** to exit

Floor counts appear and handset returns to Standby.



Note To always accept Circle Talk requests automatically, set Circle Talk availability (see P.19-8) to Auto Join. If Join NG is set, Circle Talk requests are always rejected.

# **Adding/Cancelling Participants**

**Adding Participants** 

Follow these steps before starting Circle Talk or during Circle Talk.

**1** Press ☑ Options

**2** Select *Add Member* and press ■

**3** From Hot Status Member List

Select Members List and press ■

2 Use to select a Group, then select a member

#### From Circle Talk Member List

Select C/T Members List and press ■

• Only available during Circle Talk.

2 Select a member or Group

#### From Phone Book

Select Phone Book and press ■

2 Select an entry

For entries with multiple numbers, press ■ Select one

# **Direct Entry**

1 Select Enter Phone Number and press

2 Enter a phone number

4 Press

Selected member, Group or number is added.

• To add more participants, repeat Steps 1 - 4.

## **Cancelling Participants**

Follow these steps before starting Circle Talk. Participants cannot be cancelled during Circle Talk.

Select a member and press □ Options

Select *Delete Member* and press

Choose Yes and press ■

## **Creating Circle Talk Member List**

Save members from Hot Status member list or Phone Book to create Circle Talk member list.

Save members as individuals or Groups.

• Save up to 30 entries in total (up to ten members per Group).

Press (\*\*\*)

Select Add New Entry and press

When opening Circle Talk member list for the first time. choose *Yes* → Press ■

## Saving as Individuals

Select Individual and press ■

2 Select Members List or Phone Book and press 🔳

Select an entry and press

The entry is saved as a member.

For entries with multiple numbers, select one ▶ Press ■

## Saving as Groups

Select Group and press ■

2 Press ■

3 Enter name and press ■

4 Select from No.1: to No.10: and press ■

Select Members List or Phone Book and press

6 Select an entry and press ■

For entries with multiple numbers, select one 🖈 Press 🔳

7 Repeat Steps 4 - 6 to add members

8 Press 🛂 Save

Tip To change Group names or saved members, see P.19-18 "Editing Circle Talk Member List".

## **Editing Circle Talk Member List**

Edit or delete members and Groups.

## Editing Members or Groups

1 Press 🚥

## 2 Individual Members

**1** Select a member and press ☑ Options

2 Select Edit and press

3 Press ■

Perform Steps 2 - 3 in "Saving as Individuals" on P.19-17

## **Groups**

1 Select a Group and press 
☐ Options

Select Edit and press ■

Second Perform Steps 2 - Sin "Saving as Groups" on P.19-17

## **Deleting Members or Groups**

1 Press 🛥

2 Select a member or Group and press ☑ Options

3 Select Delete and press ■

4 Choose Yes and press ■

## **Circle Talk Settings**

	Activate or cancel Loudspeaker for Circle Talk
	DefaultOn  → Press ☑ Options → Select  ker → Press ■ → Choose On or Off →
	Set response to calls received during Circle Talk
Press 🔳	Delauli Voice Call/Video Call: Call Reject  → Press □ Options → Select Calls →  → Select Voice Call or Video Call →  → Select handset response → Press ■
Call Priori	y Incoming calls interrupt Circle Talk sessions
Call Rejec	Incoming calls are ignored. (Caller hears a busy tone.)

# Near Chat (Japanese Only)

- In the event that this handset may be used by a minor, access
  to this application may be password restricted by a
  supervising adult. In this case, Handset Code access must
  also be managed to prevent the execution of Memory All Clear
  (see P.16-10) that may be used to reset the application
  password.
- For more about password restriction, see Near Chat S! Application instructions.
- Because Near Chat employs Bluetooth® technology, users
  may receive unsolicited connection requests from unknown
  sources. To reject such requests, choose *No* and press in
  Step 2 on P.19-20 "Receiving Near Chat Request".

## **Basics**

Exchange real-time text messages wirelessly with compatible Bluetooth® devices within ten metres.

- Because this application employs Bluetooth<sup>®</sup> wireless technology transmission/connection fees do not apply.
- Usage requires the pre-installed Near Chat S! Application.

Note

- Near Chat range may vary by ambient conditions.
- Near Chat S! Application cannot be deleted.

## **Using Near Chat**



Activate the following Bluetooth® settings beforehand.

Bluetooth®	See <b>P.11-2</b> (choose <i>On</i> )
Visibility	See P.11-4 (select Show My Phone)
S! Appli Request	See P.19-20 (choose On)

Note >

- Always activate Bluetooth® to use Neat Chat.
  - When Bluetooth<sup>®</sup> is active and Visibility is set to **Show** *My Phone*, handset may receive unsolicited connection
     requests from other Bluetooth<sup>®</sup> devices.
  - Set Visibility to Show My Phone and activate S! Appli Request to receive Near Chat request from other parties.

Fip Starting Near Chat activates Bluetooth® and sets Visibility to Show My Phone. Bluetooth® remains active even after ending Near Chat but Visibility returns to its previous state.

## S! Appli Request

S! Appli Request is On by default.

↑ Choose On or Off and press 
■

For *On*, if *Activate Bluetooth?* appears, choose *Yes* ⇒ Press ■

Sending Near Chat Request

Main Menu > Communication

1 Select Near chat and press

If Activate Bluetooth? appears, choose Yes ⇒ Press

**2** Send Near Chat request via the application

• Near Chat starts when the other party accepts your request.

**3** To end Near Chat, exit the application (see P.16-5)

## Receiving Near Chat Request

When a Near Chat request arrives, a tone sounds and Bluetooth® Notification appears

- After 30 seconds of inactivity, the tone sounds again, notification appears and Information window opens.
- Check request log in Latest Information (see below).



## 2 Choose Yes and press

Near Chat S! Application starts.

- For details, read the instructions on the application.
- To reject request, choose *No* → Press 🔳

3 To end Near Chat, exit the application (see P.16-5)

Latest Open details of the most recently received Near Chat request

## Select Latest Information ▶ Press ■

Press I to return.

# **Appendix**

# **Function List**

Main Menu	Sub Menu	Refer to				
	S! Town	P.19-2				
	S! Loop	P.19-3				
Communication	Hot Status	P.19-4				
	Circle Talk	P.19-13				
	Near chat	P.19-19				
	Yahoo! Keitai	P.15-4				
	Bookmarks	P.15-9				
	Saved Pages	P.15-9				
Yahoo! Keitai	Enter URL	P.15-5				
Talloo: Reital	History	P.15-4				
	Live Monitor	P.15-15				
	PC Site Browser	P.15-18				
	Common Settings	P.15-21				
	Music	P.8-10				
Media Player	Videos	P.8-13				
	Streaming	P.15-13				
	Received Msg.	P.14-23				
	Create Message	P.14-7				
	Retrieve New Msg.	P.14-19				
	Drafts	P.14-18				
	Templates	P.14-15				
Messaging	Sent Messages	P.14-23				
	Unsent Messages	P.14-23				
	Server Mail Box	P.14-22				
	Create New SMS	P.14-7				
	Settings	P.14-35				
	Memory Status	P.14-3				

Main Menu	Sub Menu	Refer to
Camera	_	P.7-2
	Pictures	P.9-2
	DCIM	P.9-2
	My Pictograms	P.9-2
	Ring Songs-Tones	P.9-2
	S! Appli	P.16-2
	Music	P.9-2
Data Folder	Videos	P.9-2
Data Folder	Lifestyle-appli	P.17-2
	Books	P.9-2
	Custom Screens	P.10-10
	Flash®	P.9-2
	Flash®Ringtones	P.9-2
	Other Documents	P.9-2
	Memory Status	P.9-2
	S! Appli	P.16-2
S! Appli	Settings	P.16-8
	Information	P.16-2
	Digital TV	P.6-8
	TV Player	P.6-16
τv	TV Link	P.6-14
1 V	TV Listing	P.6-10
	Reservation List	P.6-19
	Settings	P.6-24
	ComicSurfing	P.18-9
Entertainment	E-Book	P.18-5
	CAST	P.18-2

	Main Menu	Sub Menu	Refer to		
		Calendar	P.12-2		
		Alarms	P.12-11		
	Tools 1	Calculator	P.12-15		
		Tasks	P.12-8		
		World Clock	P.12-14		
		Voice Recorder	P.12-16		
Tools	Tools 2	Document Viewer	P.12-18		
ĕ	10015 2	Stopwatch	P.12-25		
		Countdown Timer	P.12-25		
		Lifestyle-appli	P.17-2		
		Expenses Memo	P.12-26		
	Tools 3	Text Templates	P.12-27		
		Barcode	P.12-19		
		Phone Help	P.12-28		
		Phone Book List	P.4-2		
		Add New Entry	P.4-4		
		Information	P.2-7		
		Call Log	P.2-13		
		Play Messages	P.2-10		
		Call Voicemail	P.13-4		
Pho	ne	Category Control	P.4-11		
		My Details	P.4-19		
		Speed Dial List	P.4-13		
		Contact Groups	P.4-12		
		S! Address Book	P.4-15		
		Ph.Book Settings	P.4-9		
		Manage Entries	P.4-8		

	Main Menu	Sub Menu	Refer to					
		Mode Settings	P.10-2					
		Display	P.10-3					
		Custom Screens	P.10-10					
		Sounds & Alerts	P.10-16					
		Date & Time	P.10-20					
		言語選択 (Language)	P.10-9					
	Phone Settings	User Dictionary	P.10-21					
	Filone Settings	Turn Display to	P.6-25					
		Ringer Output	P.10-19					
		Earpiece Volume	P.10-19					
		Simple Menu	P.2-19					
		Locks	P.10-22					
		Software Update	P.20-8					
		Master Reset	P.10-29					
		Bluetooth	P.11-2					
<u>0</u>	Connectivity	Infrared	P.11-10					
l ig	Connectivity	Mass Storage	P.11-14					
Settings		Memory Card	P.9-19					
S		Call Time & Cost	P.2-14					
		Answer Phone	P.2-9					
		Voicemail/Divert	P.13-2					
		Video Call	P.5-7					
		Show My Number	P.13-10					
	Call/Video Call	out Missed Calls	P.13-5					
	Jan Viaco Jan	Int'l Calling	P.10-30					
		Disp. Time/Call	P.10-31					
		Call Barring	P.13-7					
		Minute Minder	P.10-31					
		Auto Answer	P.10-30					
		Call Waiting	P.13-5					
		Offline Mode	P.2-18					
	Network	Retrieve NW Info	P.11-15					
	Settings	Location Info	P.11-15					
		Network Info	P.11-15					

# **Troubleshooting**

Problem	Possible Cause	Solution
Handset won't turn on	Was  pressed and held long enough?     Battery may need to be charged or replaced.     Battery may not be properly installed.	<ul> <li>Press and hold longer.</li> <li>Charge battery or install a charged battery.</li> <li>Install battery properly.</li> </ul>
Handset won't respond	• Is <b>Switch On/Off</b> in PIN Entry <b>On</b> ?	<ul> <li>If On, PIN1 is required. Enter PIN1 according to onscreen instructions. For more, see P.10-26.</li> </ul>
Insert USIM Card appears in Standby and handset is unresponsive	<ul> <li>USIM Card may not be properly inserted.</li> <li>The correct USIM Card may not be inserted.</li> <li>There may be debris on IC chip/terminals.</li> </ul>	<ul> <li>Make sure USIM Card is properly inserted. If the message still appears, USIM may be damaged.</li> <li>Make sure the correct USIM Card is inserted. The inserted USIM Card may not be valid.</li> <li>Clean relevant parts with a dry cloth and re-insert.</li> </ul>
Keypad won't respond	Keypad Lock may be active. ( appears)     Password Lock may be active. ( appears)	<ul> <li>Cancel Keypad Lock (see P.1-22).</li> <li>Cancel Password Lock (see P.10-26).</li> </ul>
Cannot place call from Phone Book	<ul><li>The number may be saved as Secret entry.</li><li>Phone Book Lock may be active.</li></ul>	<ul> <li>Activate Show Secret Data (see P.10-28).</li> <li>Cancel Phone Book Lock (see P.10-27).</li> </ul>
out appears in Standby and call won't connect	Handset may be outside the service area or otherwise beyond signal transmission range.	Move to a place where signal is strong and retry.

Problem	Possible Cause	Solution
Call won't connect and there's a beeping tone	Did you include the dialling code or the first O? Handset may be out-of-range. (out appears) Handset Offline Mode may be active. ( appears)	<ul> <li>Dial the number including the dialling code or 0.</li> <li>Move to a place where signal is strong and retry.</li> <li>Cancel Offline Mode (see P.2-18).</li> </ul>
Call is choppy or cut off	<ul><li>Network signal may be weak.</li><li>Battery may need to be charged or replaced.</li></ul>	<ul><li> Move to a place where signal is strong and retry.</li><li> Charge battery or install a charged battery.</li></ul>
Line is noisy during calls	Network signal may be weak or unstable.	_
Battery won't charge	AC Charger may not be properly connected to handset or Desktop Holder.  AC Charger may not be firmly plugged in to outlet.  Battery may not be properly installed.  Handset may not be properly inserted into Desktop Holder.  There may be debris on: terminals (handset, battery or Desktop Holder); connector (AC Charger); Connection Port (Desktop Holder); External Device Port.  Battery may not charge outside 5°C to 35°C.  Battery may be terminally exhausted or defective.	<ul> <li>Make sure connector is securely inserted and try again.</li> <li>Remove plug from outlet, re-insert and try again.</li> <li>Open handset, install battery properly and try again.</li> <li>Remove handset and re-insert correctly.</li> <li>Clean terminals, connector and Port with a cotton swab and try again.</li> <li>Charge within an ambient temperature of 5°C - 35°C.</li> <li>Replace battery with a new one.</li> </ul>
Battery charges quickly	<ul><li>Remaining charge shortens charging time.</li><li>Battery may be terminally exhausted or defective.</li></ul>	Replace battery with a new one.
Handset/Charger/Desk- top Holder feels warm	During charging, AC Charger or Desktop Holder normally becomes warm; handset may feel warm to the touch during extended periods of use.	Unless handset/accessories become very hot to the touch, this should be considered normal; regardless, avoid prolonged skin contact which could cause burn injuries (see P.xviii).
Battery Time seems shorter than usual	Environmental factors (temperature, charging/signal conditions), usage or settings can affect Battery Time.	<ul> <li>For more on Battery Time, usage factors and ways to extend Battery Time, see P.1-14 - 1-15.</li> </ul>

Problem	Possible Cause	Solution				
Display flickers	Display may flicker under fluorescent lights.	_				
Display went dark	Leaving handset open with no key presses for a preset period cancels Backlight (Time Out) then panel (Display Saving); this is not a malfunction.	Press any key to reactivate Display Backlight.				
Cannot watch TV	Network Information may need to be retrieved.     TV is disabled when USIM Card is not inserted or after subscription termination.	Retrieve Network Information (see P.11-15).  ——				

Tip For repairs and after-sales services, contact SoftBank Customer Centre, Customer Assistance (see P.20-28).

## **Warning Signs**

## out appears

Handset is out-of-range.

Move for a better signal.

## ■ Battery low. Please connect to charger! appears and short beeps sound

Battery is low (see P.1-16).

Charge or replace battery immediately.

## appears

Keypad Lock is active (see P.1-22).

Cancel to use Keypad. Press keys for Any Key Answer (see **P.2-6**) to answer calls.

## appears

Password Lock is active (see P.10-26).

Cancel to place calls, etc.

Press keys for Any Key Answer (see P.2-6) to answer calls.

## S! Application Display Messages

# Display Cause & Solution Application suspended. End application? Application is suspended. Application is suspended. Close application and try again.



- Download may fail due to low battery.
- Charge battery then try again.

Display	Cause & Solution
Not Enough Memory in Phone. Download to Memory Card  Download Size: XXKB Save Size: XXKB Download?	Memory is full.      Press  to download or  to cancel.
Exceeds limit. Cannot save.	100 S! Applications are already saved. (The message disappears automatically.)      Delete applications (see P.16-6) and try again.
Same version found Continue download?	The same version of selected S! Application is already saved.
	<ul> <li>Choose Yes (download) or No (cancel) and press ■.</li> </ul>
New version found Continue download?	An older version of the same S! Application is saved.
	<ul> <li>Choose <i>Yes</i> (download) or <i>No</i> (cancel) and press .</li> </ul>

Tip ► If one of these messages appears, S! Application cannot be downloaded:

- Improper data. Cannot download application.
- · Size too large. Cannot receive.

## Messaging Mishaps

## When S! Mail is not delivered as sent

Causes include the following. For details, contact SoftBank Customer Centre, General Information (see **P.20-28**).

- Recipient is not subscribed to S! Mail, Super Mail or Long Mail.
- Recipient handset is not S! Mail-compatible.
  - The maximum size of messages/attachments recipient handsets can receive varies by make and model.
- Recipient handset is not JPEG-compatible.
- Some Long Mail-compatible handsets may only be able to process PNG images; convert JPEG files to PNG (see P.9-16), then attach and send.

## When handset memory is insufficient

New messages cannot be delivered (≅ appears in red). Undeliverable mail is saved at the Centre.

- Delete messages to free memory for new ones (see P.14-29).
   When memory is available, new messages are delivered automatically.
- Delete unprotected messages automatically to receive new ones (see P.14-36).
- Even if memory is not full, handset cannot receive new messages larger than remaining memory.

# Software Update

Check for firmware updates and download as required.

## **Precautions**

Before updating software, turn power off to end all active functions/applications, then restart handset.

- Choose to begin update or schedule update.
- Handset is disabled until update is complete. Update may take up to approximately 30 minutes.
- Connection fees do not apply to updates (including checking for updates, downloading and rewriting).
- Keep handset in a place where signal is strong and stable.
- Charge battery (a appears) beforehand; a low battery may cause update to fail.
- Do not remove battery during update; update may fail.
- To reduce risk of failure, disconnect USB Cable from handset beforehand.

## **Updating Software**

Read Software Update Precautions (left) beforehand.

Main Menu ► Settings ► Phone Settings (•••) ► Software Update

## Select Software Update and press |

Confirmation appears.

- Follow onscreen instructions. ( appears during update.)
- · Update may take up to approximately 30 minutes.
- · Confirmation appears for successful update then handset restarts. Completion message appears and Information window opens ( appears).
  - While completion message appears, press 
    to acknowledge update completion and cancel Information window.



Confirmation



Update Complete

Note Update failure may disable handset. Contact SoftBank Customer Centre, Customer Assistance (see P.20-28).

Software Update

Please turn off your phone manually and contact the SoftBank customer service to solve your trouble promptly.

Update Failure

## **Update Result**

- While Information window appears, select Update Result → Press
  - Press again to exit.
- In Standby, press ➤ Select

  Settings ➤ Press ➤ Use ► to

  select Phone Settings ➤ Select

  Software Update ➤ Press ➤

  Select Update Result ➤ Press ■

   Press again to return.



Update Result

## Scheduled Update

- Confirmation appears at scheduled update time. Press ■ or wait approximately ten seconds for update to start.
  - Update will not start while handset is in use. When the current operation ends, confirmation appears. After ten minutes, scheduled update is automatically cancelled.
  - Update automatically cancels Keypad Lock.



Confirmation

### Note 🕨

- Handset Phone Book entries, media files, and other content are not affected by firmware updates, but users should always back up important information (note that some files cannot be copied). SoftBank is not liable for damages from lost information, etc.
- If handset does not return to Standby after update, turn power off, reinsert battery, then restart handset.

# **Character Code List**

Fi Ti	Three Last Digit								First Three Last Digit											First Thurs	Last Digit					First Three	Last Digit										
First Three Digits	0	1	2				6	7	8	9	Digits Digits	0	1	2		4	•		7	8	9	First Three Digits	0 1 2		4	_	6	7	8 9	First Three Digits	0 1	2			_	7	8 9
010	Ť	(Snace)	١.					:		?	047		ŀ			り						161	葵茜穐	悪													怪悔
011	!	day.	•`	0	2	:.	^			`	048	á	3	を	Ã,	-	•		_	.12	1-	162	梓圧斡	扨	宛	姐			絢彩		介会恢懷	戒	扫	·女	. ~	_ //	12 13
012	1	7	7,	//	소	1	×	0	Ξ	_				_								163	鮎或粟	給	安	庵	按	暗	案晶	190	魁	晦	械	毎月	灭界	官皆	絵芥
013	-	/	\	~	.				'	,	050		ァ	ア	1	1	ウ	ウ	ェ	エ	オ	164	鞍杏			_				191	蟹開			凱多	カタ	卜咳	害崖
014	"	"	(	)	ĺ	)	[	]	{	}	051	オ	カ	ガ	+	ギ	ク	グ	ケ	ゲ	$\Box$		_		— (	۱,			_	192	慨概	涯	碍	蓋往	訂記	5 鎧	骸浬
015	<	>	«	>	Γ		ſ	]	[	1	052	ゴ	サ	ザ			ス	ズ	セ	ゼ	ソ	164		伊				囲	夷	193	馨蛙	垣	柿	蛎釒	勾 畫	刂嚇	各廓
016	+	_	±	×	÷	=	#	<	>	≦	053	_	夕			ヂ	ッ	ツ	ヅ	テ	デ	165	威尉惟		慰	易	椅				拡撹	格	核	設	隻研		覚角
017	≧			3		0	′	"-	°C	¥	054	1	ド	ナ		ヌ	ネ	/	/\	バ	パ	166	移維緯		萎	衣磯	謂		遺匠		赫較	郭			草学	岳	楽額
018	\$						*	@	§	☆	055	F	ビ	ピ								167	井玄域	育	郁	機	_	壱	溢货		顎掛		樫		尾魚		割喝
019	*	Ó		0	$\Diamond$		_	_			056		ポ			7				ヤ		168					喖	貝	因如		恰括						
020		•	Ų	H	Δ	•	. ∨	▼	*	Т	057	I긒	∄	∄	フ	リ	ル	V	П	ワ	ワ	169	引飲淫			- 1				198	叶桃	樺	鞄		世書	蒲	釜鎌
021 022	$\rightarrow$	<b>←</b>	T	1	=		_	_	_	$\overline{}$	058	+	ㅗ	フ	/	ヴ	カ	ケ				170	院陰	浸	朗	_ H2				199 200	噛鴨		茅	를 ±	<i>- 1</i> c		φ Tι
022	_	$\supset$		0			⊏	$\Rightarrow$	$\subseteq$	=	060		^	В	_	٨	_	z		Θ		170			_ :	) -	+	<b>-</b>	<b>卢</b> 司		勘勧	巻			乙分安分		
023	_	_				_	· ⇔	. 🖵	-		061	IZ.			L N	ΔΞ		Π		Σ		171	迂雨卯	1 逆向	72	л	꾜	古口	烏羽		動 動 動				女の見		
024			/\	~	ľ	_	$\rightarrow$	•	_		062			X		Ω	0	"	-	_	'	172	明欝蔚	不能	炒	益	滞	낢	門哨		計 歓				医玻		監看
026	1	Т	$\overline{}$	a	$\nabla$	=	<u>.</u>	/	>	<b>√</b>	063	Ι'	Ψ	^	ά		v	δ	3	ζ	n	173	云運雲		מא א	, 1121	/H3	Щ	±  r=	204	<b>学管</b>				分別		
027		$\propto$			Š	_	_	-	_	٧	064	θ	,	K	λ					π		.,,	A E =		_	え -				205	東貫		盤	間見	月 艮		
028						b	Þ	†	İ	¶	065					χ			U	/ 0	Þ	173		荐	餌		堂	賏	割 湯		館丸	会	崖	器王	一点	記記	岩點
029			٠,	,	Ö	) -	•	'	*	"		ľ	Ů	Ŭ	-	/	*	-				174	曳栄永		洩	瑛	営盈	額	影與	207	層雁	超	簡	額	,,,,	4 -20	- п
											070		Α	Б	В	Γ	Д	Ε	Ë	Ж	3	175	衛詠鋭		疫	益	駅	悦	謁起	芨	_		1550	"き	_		_
031							0	1	2	3	071	И	Й	К	Л	Μ	Η	Ο	П	Ρ	С	176	閱榎厭	円	園	堰	奄	宴	延え	207				1	全位	を危	喜器
032	4	5	6	7	8						072					Ц	Ч	Ш	Щ	Ъ	Ы		掩援沿	演	炎	焔	煙	燕	猿絲	208	基奇	嬉	寄	岐え	<b>针</b>	き忌	揮机
033				Α			D			G	073	Ь	Э	Ю	Я							178	艷苑菌	遠			塩			209	旗既	期	棋	棄			
034		1	J		L		N			Q	074	١.									а				_ 7	<del>:</del>				210					气制		
035	R	S	Т	U	V			-	Z		075	б		Г	Д					И		178						於	汚뷬		紀徽				己朝		飢騎
036	١,								d		076		Л			0				Т		179	凹央奥	任	心		_	ر.	14. 22	212	鬼亀	偽		技 [		技技	擬欺
037 038		g							n		077 078			Ц	Ч	Ш	Щ	Ъ	Ы	Ь	Э	180 181	押旺	預	以	段	吉	羽				祇			宜詩		
038		q	r	S	t	u	V	W	Х	У	078	Ю	Я										鴎黄岡		荻				臆植	214	吉吃客脚						黍却
040	Z	+	ta			_	ュ	_	7	4.	080			1			1	L	_		1	102	牡乙俺	[ 正]	心	温	穏	音		215	客脚宮弓	虐急					及吸灸球
040	±	めか			がぎ		うべ	てけ		おこ	081	L	I	_		1				T	1	182			_ /	۸, -			下 (		五 究 窮	忌笈		門を糾糸			
041	6			し	じ					ンス	082	L	I	工	L	ᆫ	]	ユ	Ī	Γ	_	183	仮何伽	1 <b>/</b> #	佳	加	可	嘉	夏奶		九躬	<b>炒</b>			包含	非距	
042	Ž	った	ピゲ	5	しち	ッつ	5				083	П	ī	I	1	Τ'	1	_	_	Γ-	1	184	家寡科	眼	果	架			友 好 五		巨拒禦魚	沙亨	字字		TF 12.		划点 /黑
044	1	ئے	た	i.					ば		550	ľ		١.								185		箇			笳	荷荷	華重	,	一一一	体	橋		亲 土	E IXI	協匡
045	71	71	75	こん	, N	70	~	べ	2	13						<b>–</b> ъ	5 -			_			蝦課嘩						代出		卿叫		境	峡引	五年	計法	恐恭
046									45		160		亜	唖	娃			愛	挨	姶	逢		我牙画		芽			雅	餓省	222	挟教						
	.0	.0.	J	_		.,	_	,	•	_		_	-#-	.ш	Λ <u>Τ</u>	r J	7	×	"	<b>7</b> H	~		1~ N		, /,	234	~	.,µ	MJ~ /	,	J/\ T/	, ilej	,,,,	, <u> </u>	/\ /I	ניייני ני	- 7.

First Three	Last Digit	First Three	Last Digit Fit	irst Three	Last Digit	First Three	Last Digit
Digits	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	Digits	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	Digits	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	Digits 0 1 2 3	4 5 6 7 8 9
223	蕎鄉 鏡響 饗驚 仰凝 尭 暁	257	号合壕拷濠豪轟麹克刻	293	従戎柔汁渋獣縦重銃叔	329 煽旋穿育	<b></b>
224	業局曲極玉桐籽僅勤均 中錦斤欣欽琴禁禽筋緊 芹菌衿襟謹近金吟銀	258		294	证例述旬醇或者以现代循連結果以及有數學與與一個學學學學學學學學學學學學學學學學學學學學學學學學學學學學學學學學學學	330 繊羨朋	泉舛船薦詮賎践
225	巾錦斤欣欽琴禁禽筋緊	259	忽惚骨狛込	295	述俊峻春瞬竣舜駿准循	331 選遷銭銭	. 閃鮮前善漸然
226	芹菌衿襟謹近金吟銀	260	此頃今困坤墾婚恨懇	296	旬楯姰淳凖潤盾純巡遵	332 全禅繕腸	善 糎
226		261	日 民 根 梱 混 狠 和 民 魂	297 298	<u> </u>	332	- <del> </del>
227		261			署書薯藷諸助 叙女序徐 恕 鋤 除 傷 償	222 🕁 ** XD 7	噌塑 岨 措 曾
228	倶 句 区 狗 玖 矩 苦 躯 駆 駈 駒 具 愚 虞 喰 空 偶 寓 遇 隅	262		300	悉 蝴 陈 炀 恒 勝 匠 升 召 哨 商 唱 嘗 奨	333   曽 楚 狙 弱   334   組 蘇 訴 剛	
229	駒 呉 思 虞 艰 至 丙 禹 迪 丙 串 櫛 釧 屑 屈	263	作 X 咳 咗 左 左 宜 沙 咗 炒		一	335 倉喪壮多	出地與信息及取
230	中 岡 斯 月 加 掘 窟 呇 靴 轡 窪 能 飓 粂	264		302	送 勝匠升召哨商唱嘗奨 時間将小少尚庄床廠 彰承抄招掌捷昇昌昭晶	335 倉喪壮奏336 捜掃挿掘	6 % 不 信 世 芯 芯 6 操 早 曹 単 枪 槽
231	掘窟沓靴轡窪熊隈粂 栗繰桑鍬勲君薫訓群軍	265	災采犀砕砦祭斎細菜裁	303	松梢樟椎沼消渉湘焼焦	337 漕燥争痕	相窓糟総綜聡
232	郡	266	載際剤在材罪財冴坂阪		照症省硝礁祥称章笑粧	338 草莊葬着	藻装走送遭鎗
	~ ( <del>)</del>	267	堺榊肴咲崎埼碕鷺作削	305	紹肖菖茲萑衝裳訟証詔	339 霜騒像堆	曽僧
232	卦 袈 祁 係 傾 刑 兄 啓 圭	268	咋搾昨朔柵窄策索錯桜	306	詳象賞醬鉦鍾鐘障鞘上	340 臓蔵則	造促側則即息 速俗属賊族続
233	珪型 契 形 径 恵 慶 慧 憩 掲	269			丈 丞 乗 冗 剰 城 場 壌 嬢 常	0寸	上还作出现跃剂
234	携敬景桂渓畦稽系経継 繋罫茎荊蛍計詣警軽頚	270			情擾条杖浄状畳穣蒸譲	342 卒袖其指	前存係尊損村遜
235	携敬景桂渓畦稽系経継 繋罫茎荊蛍計詣警軽頚 鶏芸迎鯨劇戟撃激隙桁	271	鯖 捌 錆 鮫 皿 晒 三 傘 参 山	309	醸 錠 嘱 埴 節	040	ーた
236	鶏芸迎鯨劇戟擊激隙桁	272	惨撒散桟燦珊産算纂蚕	310	嚴 村殖 村殖 村 村 村 村 村 村 村 村 信 信 供 に 新 長 長 表 表 表 表 表 表 表 表 表 表 表 表 表	343 他多太为	於一些重妥惰打
237 238	傑欠決潔穴結血訣月件 倹倦健兼券剣喧圏堅嫌	273			蝕辱尻伸信侵唇娠寝審	344	总駄騨体堆対耐
239	倹 倦 健 兼 券 剣 喧 圏 堅 嫌 建 憲 懸 拳 捲	273			触辱虎伸信侵唇娠寝 唇尻新晋森榛浸深中 疹真神秦紳臣芯薪親診		怠態戴替泰滞胎 登退逮隊黛鯛代
240	建憲懸拳捲	274			珍 具 仲 条 秤 足 心 新 柷 衫 身 辛 進 針 震 人 仁 刃 塵 壬	346 腿苔袋質 347 台大笛	退速隊黛鯛代
241	検権牽犬献研硯絹県	275	使刺司史嗣四士始姉姿 子屍市師志思指支孜斯 施旨枝止死氏獅祉私糸		尋甚尽腎訊迅陣靭	347 台大第四 348 宅托択拓	是題鷹滝瀧卓啄石沢濯琢託鐸濁
242	肩見謙賢軒遣鍵険顕験 鹼元原厳幻弦減源玄現	276	施旨枝止死氏獅 祉私糸	0.0	サ 世 へ 目 が 几 件 物	349 諾茸凧虬	1 八 准 场 託 珲 闽
243	絃舷言諺限	277	紙紫肢脂至視詞詩試誌	315	9	350 四個	· 上
		278			須酢図厨逗吹垂帥推劢 炊睡粋翠衰遂酔錐錘随 烷髓崇嵩数枢趨雛据杉	351 棚谷狸餅	博静丹单嘆坦
243	平個古呼周	279	字寺慈持時童寿磁示而二年,		炊睡料翠衰遂酔錐錘随	351 棚谷狸 352 担探旦 353 綻耽胆	次港炭短端筆
244	班	280	次滋治爾璽痔磁示而	318	瑞髓崇嵩数枢趨雛据杉	353 綻耽胆る	長誕 鍛 団 壇 弾 断
245	和 有 相 有 的 后 的 后 后 的 后 后 后 后 后 后 后 后 后 后 后 后 后	281	耳自蒔辞汐鹿式識鴫竺		稆 官 頗 雀 裾	354 暖檀段男	引談 一
246	顧鼓五互伍午呉吾娯後	282	軸 宍 雫 七 叱 執 矢 嫉 室 巻	320	澄 摺 寸		<u> - ち</u>
247	御悟梧檎瑚碁語誤護醐	283	湿漆疾質実蔀篠偲柴芝		<del></del>	354	值 知 地 弛 恥
248	乞鯉交佼侯候倖光公功	284	屡蕊縞舎写射捨赦斜煮	320	世瀬畝是凄制勢姓征性成政整星晴棲	355 智池痴和	<b></b> 置致蜘遅馳築
249	効 勾 厚 口 向	285	社紗者謝車遮蛇邪借勺 尺杓灼爵酌釈錫若寂弱		勢姓征性成政整星晴棲	356 畜竹筑著	善逐 秩 窒 茶 嫡 着
250	_ 后喉坑垢好孔孝宏工	286 287	尺 杓 灼 嶎 酌 粎 玚 右 叔 驹		栖正清牲生盛精聖声製	357 中仲宙思	整逐
251 252	巧巷幸広庚康弘恒慌抗	288			西誠誓請逝醒青静斉税	358 註耐鋳馬	挂樗瀦猪苧著貯
252	了拘江、 一种工工、 一工、 一工、 一工、 一工、 一工、 一工、 一工、	289	腫趣酒首儒受呪寿授樹		脆隻席惜戚斥昔析石積		<b>装龍</b>
253	江洪浩港溝甲皇硬稿糠 紅紘絞綱耕考肯肱腔膏	290	授需囚収周 完就## 終 教 於 ## 季 ##		籍績脊責赤跡蹟碩切拙 接摂折設窃節説雪絶舌	361 幅 部 湖 附	一
255	紅紘絞綱耕考肯肱腔膏	291	宗		接 摂 折 設 窃 節 説 雪 絶 舌 蝉 仙 先 千 占 宣 専 尖 川 戦	361 暢朝潮間362 調業招景	業町 眺 聴 脹 腸 蝶 ・ 銚 長 頂 鳥 勅 捗
256	航荒行衡講貢購郊酵鉱 砿鋼閤降項香高鴻剛劫	292		328	籍 指	362 調 課 超 路 363 直 朕 沈 3	N. 姚 長 頂 馬 籾 疹 ② 賃 鎮 陳
	W 期间性 块 T 同 鸠 则 功				网共住竹水及ル木佰思	上	ク貝 呉   休

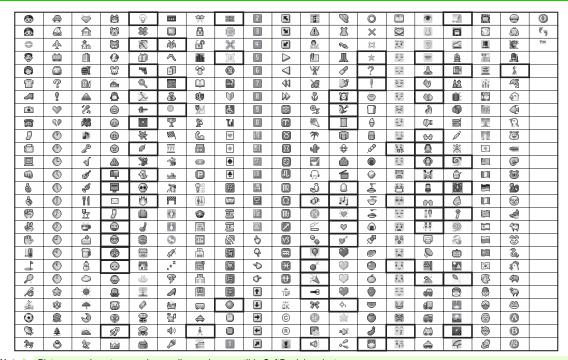
First Three	Last Digit	First Three	Last Digit	First Three	Last Digit Fi	FirstThree Last Digit
Digits	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	Digits	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	Digits	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	Digits 0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9
363 364	ーー・フーーー 津墜椎 槌追鎚痛通塚栂掴槻佃	392 393	粘乃廼之埜嚢悩濃納能 脳膿農覗蚤 	426	僻壁癖碧別瞥蔑箆偏変 片篇編辺返遍便勉娩弁 鞭	449
365 366	漬柘辻蔦綴鍔椿潰坪壷 嬬紬爪吊釣鶴 	393 394 395	世把播覇和 波派琶破婆罵芭馬俳勇 拜排敗杯盃牌背肺輩酮	426 427	保舗舗圃捕歩甫補輔 穂募墓慕戊暮母簿菩倣 俸包呆報奉宝峰峯崩庖	451 悠憂揖有柚湧涌猶猷由 452 祐裕誘遊邑郵雄融タ
366 367 368 369	亭低停偵 剃貞呈堤定帝底庭廷弟 悌抵挺提梯汀碇禎程締 艇訂諦蹄逓	396 397 398 399	拜排敗杯盃牌背肺輩配 時時 時 時 時 時 時 時 時 時 時 時 時 時 時 時 時 時 時	428 429 430 431	福 補 補 排 排 明 連 神 神 神 神 神 神 神 神 神 神 神 神 神	452
370 371 372	邸鄭釘鼎泥摘擢敵滴 的笛適鏑溺哲徹撤轍迭 鉄典填天展店添纏甜貼	400 401 402	提為 一個 一個 一個 一個 一個 一個 一個 一個 一個 一個	432 433 434	亡傍剖坊妨帽忘忙房暴 望某棒冒紡肪膨謀貌貿 鉾防吠頬北僕卜墨撲朴	456 養慾抑欲沃浴翌翼淀 456 羅羅 456 羅羅
373 373	転顛点伝殿澱田電 と 一一 免吐	403 404 405	半反叛帆搬斑板氾汎版犯班畔繁般藩販範采煩飯挽晚番盤磐蕃蛮	436	牧睦穆釦勃没殆堀幌奔本翻凡盆	457 螺裸来莱頼雷洛絡落酪 458 乱卵嵐欄濫藍蘭覧
374 375 376 377 378	堵塗 拓縣 建二十 杜渡登克 不 化 接	405 406 407 408	中 空 中 で の で の で の で の で の で の で の で の で の で の で の で の で の で の で の で の に の で の に の の の の に の の の の に の の の の の の の の の の の の の	436 437 438 439 440	摩磨魔麻埋妹 味枚毎哩槙幕膜枕鮪框 轉枚亦侯 藤 藤 夏 蔓	458 459 460 461 461 462 東東聖里離陸律率立 462 藤竜龍侶盧旅虜了亮僚
379 380 381 382	答	409 410 411 412	批毘琵眉美 眉美 彦膝養 一 一 一 一 一 一 一 一 一 一 一 一 一 一 一 一 一 一 一	440		463 両凌寮料梁涼猟療瞭稜 464 糧良諒遼量陵領力緑倫 465 厘林淋燐琳臨輪隣鱗麟 ー―― る~れ
383 384 385 386	鴇匿得徳涜特督禿篤毒 独読栃橡凸突椴届鳶苫 寅酉瀞噸屯惇敦沌豚 頓吞曇鈍	413 414 415	評豹廟描病秒苗錨鋲蒜 蛭鰭品彬斌浜瀬貧賓頻 敏瓶 ふ	441 442 442	夢無牟矛霧鵡椋婿娘	466
386 387		415 416 417	不付埠夫婦富富布府怖扶敷斧普浮父符腐膚芙譜負賦卦阜附侮抽	443 444	名命明盟迷銘鳴姪牝滅免棉綿緬面麺	470 蓮連錬 ス
388 388 389	軟難次 	418 419 420 421	武舞葡蕪部封楓風葺露伏副復福福服 調井 払沸 化福腹複覆 潰 憤 憤 扮 焚 奮	444 445 446 447	模模茂妄 孟毛猛盲網耗蒙儲木黙 目杢勿餅尤戻籾貰問悶 紋門匁	470 471 露労婁廊弄朗楼榔浪漏 472 牢狼篭老聾蝋郎六麓禄 473 肋録論
390	如尿韮任妊忍認 ――ぬ~の ――	421 422	粉糞紛雰文聞 ——— へ ——— 丙併兵塀	447	世治夜爺耶野弥	473 倭和話歪賄脇惑 474 枠鷲亙亘鰐詫藁蕨椀湾 475 碗腕
391	袮 <mark>寧葱猫</mark> 熱年念捻燃燃	423	幣平弊柄並蔽閉陛米賞		建	476

First Three				Las	t Di	git					First Three				La	st D	igit				First Three					La	st	Digi	it				First Three				L	.ast	Dig	it			
Digits	0	1 2	2 ;	3 4	5	6	6	7	8	9	Digits	0	1	2	3	4 !	5 (	6 7	7 8	9	Digits	0	1	2	2 ;	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	Digits	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
477											517	嚀	喤	嚠	東	東明	监视	野鸣	退 層	景景	557	怕	怫	1/2	平巾	中,	怺	恚	恁	恪	恷	恟	597	梟	梏	梭	楄	倏	梛	梃	檯	柾	桴
478											518	嚼								他	558	協									恫	羔	598			梺							
479											519	囹	圀		割	菿 ′					559	悄	悍	厚似	具作	困,	悚	,	1.3		",		599	椢	椦	棡	椌	棍		''	-1-		.,.,.
480		士工	5 2	不 个	\ y	μ、	\ <b>‡</b>	#	J.	X	520			或	童	室 夏 [	<b>I</b>	<b>를</b> 짙	품	引圦	560	" '	悄	1	具作	卓,	悗	悒	悧	悋	惡	悸	600		桰	棧	標	椶	椒	椄	審	棣	椥
481	乖	乘	il .	」豫	臣身	五 舍	予 =	t -	Ŧ	亞	521	圷	圸	坎:	圻:	址址	不士	甘垣	巨红	坡坡	561	惠	惓	1 12	卒作	卆	悽		悵	惘		愕	601	棹	棠	棯	椨	椪	椚	椣			楹
482	皷	17	ĺ	京草		王人			大	仆	522	坿	垉	垓:	垠:	衍均	至均	并 <u>‡</u>	卡均		562	惠愆	惶	是着	害怕	卆秋		惺	愃	愡		惱	602	楷	楜	楸	楫				椹	楴	椽
483	仂	仗化	刀化	双 仟	F 化	行行	九. 任	失 化	估 化	佛	523	埔	埒	埓:	堊:	埖±	卒均	朋垃	更址	引場	563	愍	愎	見見	公生		愨		慊	愿	愼	朔	603	楙	椰	楡	楞	楝	榁	楪	榲	榮	槐
484	佝	佗作	宁作	吉修	多传	卡仁	宅化	16 1	凬 化	佰	524	堡	塢	坐:	毎!	設址	诗 均	罡 虫	近里	予墹	564	愴	愽	車涯	預性	栗	慳	慷	慘	慙	慚	慫	604	榿	槁	槓	榾	槎		槊	槝	榻	槃
485	侑	住を 伊	K A	帝 儘	是修	見信	矣久			俛	525		墫	墺:	壞:	嗇坊	善 [5	<b>宣</b> 到	医眉	天壑	565	慴	慯	哥怡	告怍	專	慟	慝	慓	慵	憙	憖	605	榧	樮	榑	榠	榜	榕	榴	槞	槨	樂
486	俑	俚位	11 (	弟値	巨倍	5 仍	居化	屈(	兒(	倥	526		壙	壘:	廛:	曇ょ	度重	直光			566	腿	憬	是作	<u></u> †	單	憊	憑憺	憫	憮		懊	606	樛	槿	權樊	槹	槲	槧	樅	榱	樞	槭
487		件 信	又有	昌信	青但	复售	卑化	存(	門 1	倆	527		壺	壽	攵:	久耳	2 3	를 총	* 果	多夬	567	應	懷			刨	懆	憺	懋	罹	懍	懦	607	樔	槫	樊	樒	櫁	樣	樓	橄	樌	
488	偃	假質	會任	皆偱	香信	引估	故作	者(	怱(	偸	528		夲	夸	夾:	許 3	巨鱼	包套	E≆	类	568	懣	懶	買值	載 怍	並	懿	懽	懼	懾	戀	戈	608	樶	橸	橇	橢	橙	橦	橈	樸	樢	檐
489	傀	傚位	剪 们	區俵	Þ						529	奢	奠	奧	獎	盒					569	戉	戍	ÌΕ	ΣΞ	芝	戛	 戰					609	檍	檠	檄	檢	檣					
490	١	僉係		専健	具信	喜 作	爲信	堯(	替		530		奸	妁	妆 ′	安化	更女	比如	旦如	身姨	570	l	憂	甚	戈 有	战	戮	戰	戲	戳			610			蘗	檻			檸		檬	
491	僮	價值	量值	僉 儁	馬促	畏 倨	監修	齊 作		儚	531	姜	妌	姓:	姚	世女	<b>i</b> 4	学妓	<b>那</b> 好	寻娚	5/1	扞				叉:		扼			找		611	櫑	櫟	檪	櫚	櫪	櫻	欅			欒
492	儡	難低	單位	器 儻	E J	しノ	τ5	₹ 1		兔	532		婬			娶女	2	杢 如			572			ł 12			抔			抻	,	拿	612						盜			歇	
493		競區		1 元	享					冉	533				嫣!			枚好			573	拆						拊	拂	拇		拉	613	歉		歙	歔	歛					歿
494	冏	胄丰				E 7.	星 多			幕	534			嬖!	嬲!	嫐奺	實如				574				Ħ į						捐		614			殃						殪	
495	2	决	5 /	中沙	K 13	1 13	列汇		京	黑	535	孀			孚.	李	ž f	亥享			575	捍	搜						掫	捶		掏	615		殲	殱	殳						毟
496		處	tl 1	毛厘	ΙĻ		图 >			刔	536				Ξ.	它国	<b>E B</b>	复罗			576	掉	掟						揩	揀		揣	616	毬	鼌	毳	毯	麾	氈	斑	气	氛	園
497		刧冊		刊夸		J 并			剋 :		537				實	寝	€ }	\$ F		寶	577							搴					617			辿							
498	剞	剔剪	길토	訓 乘	リ苔	リ果	訓票	則兒	劍;	詉	538 539		尅			對力	<b>人</b> 邑	ジフ	L J	纟尸	578	攝	据	号 排	羽子	朝:	推	摰	摶	摎	攪	澌	618					沐	泄	决	泅	活	泗
499	剜	剱辦	等 型	刊判	Ť 4					1-11-		ヂ	屁	膤.	屎.	戛.			la de		579	撓	強	打	! 計	第:	懋	154	D#	12	100	eta.	619	泅	涯	沮	沱	弫	,_	<b>.</b>	/	٠,_	
500	<b>≠</b> ⊥	狮鸟	刀台	辺立	リタ	光光	刀牙	刀直	功:	穷	540		屐		孱.			しょ		支岌	580	FER						撻			擱		620	٠,	沺		浜	泮	븯	决	辺	洶	
501 502		勦館	力多	<b>为</b> 熏	角属					匈	541 542	岑	岔峙		岫」			平山		始	581 582	舉	擠		堂 才					擶		擲	621 622	治	沈	洙		洳					浤
502	甸	匍 區 2		泡 ヒサ 世	1 H	1 1 1 1	里区			<u>僉</u> 冂	542		時嵜		峽崛	便能		与此			583	擺女			栄 t				攤	攣敕	攫敍	攴	623	<b>没涵</b>		浙淦	涎涸	涕					渊
504		如 名		多万						•	544				赗.						584				又引			双斃					624										淒渮
505	厄廠			会雙		三月号				斯叨	545					鬼が		弱峭			585	歐斷	施施		区号	X :		毙旌			斟旙		625	加渙	浅湲	淙	恋	产渣			/ 浪		
506		以即	シネエロ	瑟 牛 吗	Ž Ž I III	Z 35	艺艺	71 1	·」		546	<b>咣</b> 巓				亚	至矢	延長		多姚	586	置	二十二十二十二十二十二十二十二十二十二十二十二十二十二十二十二十二十二十二十		巾フョョ	旁是					雅	麦	626	及湃	を割		/里	温滿	灬渝				渟溘
507		吝 9	J 4	十二	丁り	ᅜ	ナロ	TL '		呰	547	竪帑	営帛	か 帯	\\\ :	ᄣ	幸中	中山	見順		587	宏易	姜	= オ ! !!!	上 Z	玉 玉	<b></b>	文晞	量	贴	胜		627	炸湯	溷	潭	初	洲	鴻	加计			
508		神	H II	奴叫		+ FK	ムり	# 5	豐月	品	548	市幟	市幢	常幣	村:	胜中	手 火	見明		四院	588	易晟	女哲	두 대	光光斯		兆旱	啪啪	壸	喧	陽		628	冼溥		漢	符蹈	溯	温	冷	沿		焙將
509		咬咧				3 4	C 4.	± 7	-5 I	以	549			度.			1 2	× 13	۱ ک	1+	589	灰簪		P P	いき	站 1		火	ᄣ	쁘	HODÍ	呹	629			冷滯	/供	旅	/E	//巴	/pT	/衣	ンド
510	<u>"</u> ±	咫明	元 H 田 II	宝宝	× 12	a na	(T =	o n	哦「	1茶	550	炽	層		断」		医唇	<b>医</b> 魚	〒 届	草庫	590	=	進睡		存品	<b>秋</b>	虚	曠	肿	艦	曩	Ы	630	炒		/市漓	版		潺	浀	澁	初初	湿
511	西	便見		足哨						哗	551	廬			聴	到五	ヨナ				591	曵							弧朧		荒		631	潛		潭	澂	<b>売</b>					濟
512	催	啜!		炎哨			に見り			空客	552	<b>温</b>	一世	新新	45	经	買引	明明	十二日	中爾	592				ш л h *	Л:	打杆		雕杠			析	632	/奥		/是	送	詹	/ 演				溶溶
513	區	喊叫	中で	雪味	k III	いに			帝に	啦	553			<b>妇</b>	三人	耳 =		いき	1		593		木		1	不	杪	松	枋		枡		633	海		冷濱	澤濮	濃			渡		蒼
514		喇叭							喘	喧	554	往		補:	徊:	很	Z 1			非徘	594							柩					634	瀏	/ 濾	海	海	潴	瀝				漫
515		嗷								学	555				激	       			日化		595				包木					栞		栩	635					炒炒				炸	
516		嘶响								當	556	点		怡	佐	计作	5 1		三名		596	操	松					栫			桷		636			休							煥
	7	241		.10		, h	44 12	_	- P.	,00		Ú		.н	14	- 1	, 1	J /L	٠, ١/١	J. 1-		//	1.2	. (	, 1.	_	1716	113	7.15	-	17.3	. 1"		ت.,	/ <del> </del>	/111	<i>,,,,,</i>	/H			. 20	· H	

First Three			Las	t Digit	t			First Three			L	ast Di	git			F	irst Three			L	.ast	Digi	t			First Three				Las	t Dig	jit			
Digits	0 1	2	3 4	5	6	7 8	9	Digits	0	1 2	3	4 5	6	7	8		Digits	0 1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8 9	Digits	0	1 3	2 :	3 4	5	6	7	8	9
637	熙熈	昫	<b> </b>	煖	煬	重 爐	1 熄	677	竊	计站	一分	竓站	占竚	並	竡並	矣	717	艷州	艾	芍	芒	芫	巷:	恕	芬苡	757	諞	諛訁	哥署	警諡	論	謖	謐	謗	秶
638	熕熨							678	竦	渴如	笂	笏角					718	苣菇	黄	甘	荾	苺	莓 :	范	苻 苹	758	謳	鞘	2	商議	謨	譁	譌	譏	孟
639	燠燬	燧	達燼	1				679	答	泡 苯	笑	筐	-				719	苞茆	苜	茉	苙					759	證	潜言	替言	商調電					
640	燹	燿力	樂爐	爛	爨 :	11年	罗爱	680		笠 笄	筍	笋3	等	筵	笠 给	安	720	芪	世	茖	茲	茱	荷	茹:	荐荅	760	_	躁暑	¥ .	睪諺	譽	讀	讌	讎	緀
641	<b>燹</b> 爲爻	俎:	爿州	牆	牋	賣 牡	<b>抵</b> 牾	681	質:	作符	筬	筮 筘	第第	箟	箍鱼		721	茯茫	茗	茘	莅	莚	莪	莟	莢 莖	761		讖言	雚言	赞裕	審	谿	豊	豌	豎
642	犂犁	犇	高牟	犢!	犧 !	优多	<b>才</b> 狃	682	箚	箋篇	等	筝前	复篋	篁		狡		莫莎	,助	莊	荼	莵	荳;	荵	莠莉	762	豐	豕 参	袋 豸	者多	豺	貂		貅!	貊
643	狆 狄	狎	佛猝	狠	狡			683	箴	篆 筆		簑鸶	色館	篥		簣		莨菴	萱	菫	菎	菽	萃;	菘	萋菁	763	貍			此發	規	貭			貲
644	猗 猊				猯			684		<b>彰</b> 4	篷	築質		簣	簧										萸蔆	764		貮則				賣	賚	賽!	傔
645	獎獏						鼠獻	685		簷 舖		籌簋				簽			科		蕚			葫		765	賻	贄	<b>警</b>	<b>登</b> 程	「贏				臧
646	獺珈	玳 3	饰 玻	珀:	珥 3	珮 玹	3 璢	686		預籤	籖	籥氰	雀料	粃	粐!	粤	726	蒂葩	葆			葹	髙		蓋兼	766	賍	贔則	賣力	根赭	走	赳	趁	趙	跂
647	琅瑯							687		粢 桁	桐	粨粉	又	粱	粮料	卒	727		应						蓆 蓖	767	趾	趺	加品	冊跃	跌	跛	跋	跪!	企
648	瑁瑜		鬼 瑣	[瑪]	瑶	達理	〕璞	688	粽	椛料	糂	糘粉	<b>東</b>	模	鬻精	需		蒡蔡	蓿	蓴	蔗	參	疏	族	帶富	768		跣品				蹀	踮	碊 ]	知
649	璧瓊							689		耀邦					fall f	. ,		蓼蕀								769	蹀	踵		勇路			n///	n	
650				瓮				690				紊糾					730		薬			薀			薑薊	770		蹇	差点	倉路	超	蹙		蹠	
651	瓷甄	整!	運風	甎			普	691				絎絲				开		薨蕭		薛	數	薇			蕾薐	771		理品		尊践	躁			躄	齊
652	甦甬		当町					692 693	經	绣修		絽絲			維	木		藉薺			貌			藥	黎護	772				廛 罪			躬	抔:	還
653 654	<b>畩</b> 畤	各	畫盼	畸		噩暖		694		綽紹		網絡	目解	綸	級		734	蘊積							<b>蘰蘿</b>	773 774		躾射		應軋					趁
655	疊疊	宣言	丁沙	一	がす	<b>元</b>	四班	695				緻網				际	-	<b>虎</b> 馬	虔	號	栣	虱	蚓		<b>蚩蚪</b>	775		軽軸					:=:	輟	
656	痃疵							696	縡:		一件	縉彩	自勝		経り	杂		蚋蚌	蚌田	型	粒	盟	蚰		蠣蛇		輌			畐戟			輾		轉
657	痣 癌 瘍							697		標組	被令	縲緩繩	里棕	繝	織絡絡				重転		蚁	蛛	蛇	蜒	蜆蜈蜴蛴	777	轆辭	轎	感車	需轉生	轣			辟邇	採回
658	<b>漁場</b>							698	辩:		指 线	神 神 神	医梳	が開	梅維			知 第 5							坳 蝦	778		班 注	一ス	生建	担证	迪消			
659	深 海 癪				偶 2	矩准	文 7任	699		藍科	祖	神 神 中土	空 秋	一一一	晚市	蚁		蝴蜻		蝮	題	畑	明:		对十二项	779	迎浴	沙 法		空建		坦	连	<u>12Λ</u> :	H
660				包	<b>ė</b>	는 한	一桩	700		聯桿	品	龌龊	<u>‡</u> 1√	罕	图	尹	740				掘	绺	8 6	bér :	螯蟋		ᄱ	遏温	三に	皇海		遉	渝	湳	蕃
661	皖皓			一级!				701		<b>買</b>	置					羅		螽蜂				蟄			<b>東域</b>	781	遞	遨							激
662	盍盖		立 X 差 差			是湯		702	器	<b>羌</b> 羔	差	抵對						蟯蟲		蠏	蠝				蟒蟒	782	邊	温 湯		郎 甘	不配			郤	
	既即		世版	量	些	批問		703	羹	ルークに	語	翅系	はまれる			上海		蠑蟆				蟲			清續	783	郭			31 單				酘	品品
664	眸睇					容等		704	で 朝	回照		飜書			未			<b>妞</b> Ø		誓	讏	丕	衫		き き	784		酩							益
665	瞎瞋					愛習		705		铝粗		耿山			話			祖衽							袙 袢	785	醪	醮		重醒					訒
666	瞽瞻		聖温			矣沒		706				聳臺			聹				果			裃			裘 裙	786				双欽			釿		
667	砌砒			硅	碎花			707	聿	建县	肅	莊官	F AH	・脳	冒戶	尤	747	装裹	神	福	奜	裨	裲	凄:	揮褊	787	紐	鈑釒	世 名	甘 舒	該	鉤	鉈	練	細
668	碚碌	碣	貞碌	磁	碳化	滑砂	# 磔	708	胂	音用	脈	胄胚	K AH	脉	胯	光.			~ 褞	被	袦	褫	補	襄	褻褶	788	鉋	鉐	新台	朱鉊	話	鉚	鋏	銹	能
669	碾碼	磅	磊奏	ţ		.,,		709		脩信	脯	腋	- "'		., ,	,,,		褸襌	禅	襠	襞	1,,,,	1324			789	鋩	錏釒	宛金	京銀	-	-//	-/\		-13
670				礇	礒	當碳	基礬	710		隋胂	脾	腓脈	午胼	腱	腮馬	星	750		褞	襭	襪	襯	襴	學	西 覃	790	-	錙釒	養金	爭録	贫錺	錵	錻	鍜	諻
671	礫祀						禄	711		映服			等膂			雪	751	覈覊	須	覘	覡	覩	覦	覬	朝勤	791	鍼	输金	其金	益 錦	龜	鎔		鏖	靫
672	禊禝	禧	齋 禪	禮	禳	禹周		712		室 膓		膰肜	幸膽	膸		驽	752	覺覽	賣	觀	觚	觜		鲜		792		鏥釒	將針	族錢	经	鏈	鏤	鐚	谭
673	秕秧	秬	拔秣	程	稍	棋和	植稠	713		奪 胺	臍	臑服	張 黱	臈	臚	藏		計該	計	訂	訛	訝			詁詛	793	鐓	鐃釒	番金	尞 鎠	器	鐵	鐡	鐺	變
674	稟禀	稱	稻藁	稷;	榕	憓榧	<b>福</b>	714	臠:	臧 臺	臻	與身	看	舅	與1	善			<b>任</b> 詈	詼	詭	詬	詢	誅	挑誄	794		鑄釒	廣金	樂銀	鑞				灌
675	穢穩	龝	襄穹	; 穽 :	窈盲	窗蚧	窘	715	舍	చచ్చ 舒	配	舫舟	可雕	一般		傁		誨誡		語	誦	誚			諍諂	795				羅鑾					閊
676	窖窩	竈	室 窶	竅	鼠	窪 遥	竇	716	艝	艚 艏	艤	艢艄	蒙艪	艫	舮	銀	756	諚 諌	語	諧	諤	諱	謔	諠	諢 諷	796	閔	閉	嗣同	制隆	閨	閧	閭	閼	閻
																						_					_								_

First Three						La	ast	Di	igi	t						Fire	t T	ree					L	ast	Di	git			First Thre	e					Las	st D	igi	it				F	irst Three				La	st I	Dig	it				1
Digits		0	1	2		3	4	5	5	6		7	8	9	9	1	igi	ts	ŀ		1	2			5				Digits		0	1	2	3	4	ı	5	6	7	8	9		Digits	1	2	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	
807	"有有"的一类。但是一个用"用"用"有"表。一种用"的"的"各"的"各"的"是",是一种"有"的"有"。	乳 飆淺這馬酬驅驢 建乙二甲酚 鼠碱温宁	<b>P鞋的顋顱砘餤饋馼駻驂驥髑髮髻鬩魑鮨鯢鰉鰥鱧鴆鴿鵝鵯舚</b>	<b>渂罎陷攺뗺雍霋霾靨靯巈邟寷蒮飻餶龣騔驀轏鬜賲霚闦爂魤鰞鰞鮷涗焇穒蒰蕳</b>	, 1913年, 1914年 , 1914年 , 1914年 , 1914年 , 1914年 , 1914年 , 1914年 , 191	閉幕夹 寿 編集写 窩力 登 笺 頁 頁 頂 妏 朋 堯 史 粤 票 謹 豊 ② 憂 蒯 方 系 淄 查 蹓 盧 亭 前 鳥 鳥 阜	関阡陞陲   無罪聽   製   算   算   算   算   算   算   算   算   算			闌玩 煌 隶雕 霙霧 靹鞨 韭頡 颱 餔 餾 馗 駑 駢 琵 琵 號 飽 輔 鯲 鰒 鰲 鳰 瑪 鵙 鶲 皑	<b>阿尔 化李霍霉素单节混合 医食食的 馬馬爾爾曼 医弗鱼鱼鱼 第一章 普美洲</b>	<b>划止 盆隶宫客爱央秋筲頁 堪余温或亥扁睪殳亭 鼠发石利虎柬章島鳥 島島島</b>	麠陂   隕隹霄霪靜靼鞣韲頹   飄餡饉馥駮騫驗骼髦   鬥魏鮗鯑鯰鰄鰾鴈駝   鶉鷁錐	順阿 防田宴客 草苇芋果 風食	周 古 鬼。住民皇后女员上位女子,是一个一个一个一个一个一个一个一个一个一个一个一个一个一个一个一个一个一个一个	8	333333333333333333333333333333333333333	8 9	UII TABEE PAREE	追 記 · ·	<b>整</b>				<b>                                     </b>																													

# **Pictogram List**



Note Pictograms do not appear in e-mail or on incompatible SoftBank handsets.

Tip ► Pictograms in are animated.

# **Specifications**

## 911SH

Weight	Approximately 138 g
Continuous Talk Time	Approximately 180 minutes
Continuous Standby Time (closed position)	Approximately 380 hours
Continuous Video Call Talk Time	Approximately 100 minutes (with Internal Camera in use)
Charging Time (power off)	AC Charger: Approximately 150 minutes In-Car Charger: Approximately 150 minutes
Dimensions (W x H x D)	Approximately 50 x 106 x 22 mm (closed position)
Maximum Output	0.25 W

Values above were calculated with battery installed.

- Continuous Talk Time is an average measured with a new, fully charged battery, with stable signals. Continuous Talk Time may be less than half this value if signal is weak.
- Continuous Standby Time is an average measured with a new, fully charged battery, in closed position without calls or operations, in Standby with stable signals. Standby Time may be less than half this value if handset is out-of-range or signal is weak. Standby Time may vary by environment (battery status, ambient temperature, etc.).
- Talk Time/Standby Time decrease with frequent use of Display/Keypad backlights.
- Talk Time/Standby Time may decrease when an S! Application is active.
- Talk Time/Standby Time decrease with handset use in poor signal conditions (see P.1-14 "Battery Time").
- Display employs precision technology, however, some pixels may appear brighter/darker.

## ■AC Charger

Power Source	AC 100V-240V, 50/60 Hz
Power Consumption	12VA
Output Voltage/Current	DC 5.2V/650 mA
Charging Temperature	5°C to 35°C
Dimensions (W x H x D)	Approximately 55 x 45 x 22 mm (without protruding parts, cord)
Cord Length	Approximately 1.5 m

## ■ Battery

Voltage	3.7V
Battery Type	Lithium-ion
Capacity	940 mAh
Dimensions (W x H x D)	Approximately 36 x 4.5 x 55 mm (without protruding parts)

## Headphones (with Microphone)

Weight	Approximately 16 g
Cord Length	Approximately 1.85 m

# **Memory List**

	Messaging
Received Msg.	Approximately 4 MB or 1,000 messages
Drafts	Approximately 2 MB*
Sent Messages	Approximately 2 MB or 500 messages*
Unsent Messages	Approximately 2 MB*
Templates	Approximately 2 MB*

\*Drafts, Sent Messages and Unsent Messages share memory.

	S! Applications
S! Appli	Approximately 20 MB <sup>*</sup> (100 items) on handset

\*Shared with other folders in Data Folder.

	Data Folder
Data Folder	Approximately 20 MB*

<sup>\*</sup>Shared with S! Appli Library.

# Index

Number
3D Pictogram14-24
3D Pictogram Settings14-25
Α
AC Charger1-18
Access WEB Link8-11
Acquire Dictionary10-21
Activation Time (S! Applications) 16-7
Add Date9-25
Add Email Address4-3
Add Frame (Photo Camera)7-13
Add Member19-6
Alarm Settings12-3
Alarm Volume12-13
Alarms12-11
Alarms (cancelling/reactivating)12-14
All Calls2-13
Alternative Image (Video Call)5-7
Answer Phone2-9
Answer Phone (Manner mode)10-2
Answer Status19-11
Anti Spam Measures14-35
Any Key Answer 2-6, 10-2
Application Volume (S! Applications)16-8
Arrange Mail14-12
Assign Ringtone (by Phone Book Category) .4-12
Assign Tone/Video 12-5, 12-9, 12-13

Assign Tone/Videos (by Phone Book entry)4-5
Attach File14-10
Audio & Visuals6-11
Authentic Info15-21
Authentic Info Keep15-23
Authentication15-5
Authorisation Code11-3, 11-10
Auto Answer10-30
Auto Bookmark (E-Book)18-8
Auto Delete14-36
Auto Mark Level8-8
Auto Play File14-38
Auto Power Off (TV)6-25
Auto Resend (Messaging)14-35
Auto Save (mobile camera)7-18
Auto Subtitle Off6-12

В	
Back (Internet)	15-5
Background Colour	8-18
Backlight (Display/Keypad)	10-13
Backlight (S! Applications)	16-8
Backlight (Video Call)	5-7
Backlight (Video Player)	8-14
Backup	9-23
Barcode (opening)	12-22
Battery	1-13, 1-17
Battery Strength	1-15, 1-16
Bit Rate	8-8

Blink (S! Applications)	16-9
Blink (subtitles)	8-19
Bluetooth Timeout	11-9
Bluetooth <sup>®</sup>	11-2
Bookmarks15-9,	15-10
Bookmarks (editing)	15-11
Brightness (Backlight)	10-13
By a-ka-sa-ta-na (Phone Book)	4-9
By Category (Phone Book)	4-9
By Reading (Phone Book)	4-9

С
Cache15-21
Cache Memory15-3
Calculator12-15
Calendar (schedule)12-2
Calendar (Standby) 10-5
Calendar Format10-21
Call Barring13-7
Call Costs2-15
Call Forwarding13-2
Call Notice/Priority (S! Applications) 16-9
Call Settings10-30
Call Time Counter 10-31
Call Timers2-14
Call Voicemail13-4
Call Waiting13-5
Caller Display (External Display) 10-14
Caller ID (sending/blocking)2-2, 13-10

Clock/Calendar10-5
Closed Position1-12
ComicSurfing <sup>®</sup> 9-7, 18-9
Conductor Setting (Face Recognition) 10-25
Conference Call13-6
Connection Setting19-9
Contact Groups4-12
Continuous Shoot7-12
Cookies15-21, 15-22
Copy (text)3-13
Copy Text (Internet)15-20
Cost Units2-15
Countdown Timer12-25
Country Codes10-30
Create QR Code12-23
Crop8-15
Cursor15-6
Custom Screens10-10
Cut (images)9-13
Cut (text)3-13
Cycloid Position1-12
D
Data Folder9-2
Date Format10-20
Datum On/Off11-15
Daylight Saving10-20, 12-14
Default Image (Video Call)5-7
Default View (Calendar)12-2
Delete (Server Mail)14-23

Delete NG (Messaging) ......14-17

Delete Posterior3-14
Delete Station Data6-13
Delivery Report14-16, 14-20, 14-35
Demand Re-delivery (S! Cast) 18-3
Desktop Holder1-19
Details (Data Folder)9-6
Details (Internet)15-20
Details (Media Player)8-11
Details (Messaging)14-18, 14-23, 14-30
Details (S! Applications)16-6
Details (TV Player)6-18
Device Name11-9
Dial New Number (Conference Call) 13-6
Dial Number (Display)10-6
Dialled Numbers2-4, 2-13
Digital Zoom7-4
Disable DTMF2-12
Disclosure Settings6-14
Display Call Cost10-31
Display Date & Time (External Display) 10-14
Display Icons (Photo Camera) 7-15
Display indicators1-9
Display Position8-18
Display Saving10-13
Display Settings10-3
Display Size (streaming)15-14
Display Size (Video Camera)7-16
Display Size (Video Player)8-15
Display Subtitle6-12
Document Viewer 12-18
Download to15-21

Downloads15-21	Feeling
DPOF9-24	FeliCa.
Drafts (Messaging)14-18	File Fo
Duration (Calendar)12-5	File Siz
Duration (External Display)10-14	Fixed [
Duration (subtitles)8-18	Flash <sup>®</sup>
Duration (Tasks)12-9	Flash <sup>®</sup>
E	Flash®
Earpiece Volume	Font Control Single Font Single Font William Format Forwar Frame Free Tenction
Exposure (mobile camera)7-16	
Exposure (Video Call)5-6 External Display1-11 External Display Settings10-14	Go to Greetir
F	Handse
Face Arrange (Picture Editor)9-14	Handse
Face Recognition10-22	Handsf
Familiar Usability10-12	Handst
Fast forward/rewind (Media Player)8-11	Help (li
` ,	

Feeling Mail14-15, 14-20
FeliCa17-2
File Format9-16
File Size (Picture Editor)9-16
Fixed Dialling No. (Locks)10-27
Flash®9-2
Flash® Restriction15-23
Flash® Ringtones9-2
Font Colour (subtitles)8-19
Font Size3-15, 10-4
Font Size (E-Book)18-7
Font Size (Internet)15-21
Font Size (subtitles)8-18
Font Weight10-4
For All Pictures (DPOF)9-25
Format Card (Memory Card)9-21
Forward NG (Messaging)14-17
Frame (Picture Editor)9-16
Free Text (Picture Editor)9-14
Function List20-2
G
Go to12-6
Greeting Message10-6
Н
Handset Code1-27
Handset Security10-22
Handsfree devices (connecting) 11-8
Handsfree Setting11-9
Help (Internet)15-5

Help (mobile camera)7-5
Help (Video Call)5-6
Hide Picture5-3
Highlight8-19
High-speed infrared11-12
Hiragana to Katakana/
Alphanumerics Conversion3-11
History (Internet)15-4, 15-19, 15-20
Hold (Video Call)5-5
Hold (Voice Call)2-11
Hold Guidance Pict5-7
Hot Status19-4
Hot Status Notification19-5
Hot Status Notification List 19-12
•
IC Card17-2
IC Card17-2 IC Card Lock17-4
IC Card

Interface Settings17-7
Internal Antenna1-8
Internal Camera/External Camera7-18
International calls2-5
Internet Content15-2
Int'l Calling10-30
Int'l Prefix10-30
IP Service Setting10-27
J
Jump to Top/Bottom15-5
K
Key Assignments (text entry)3-3
Keypad Lock1-22
Keypad Tones10-18
L
<u>-</u>
Language10-9
Language10-9
Language10-9 Last Played8-10, 8-13, 15-14
Language

I	١	1	

Mail address
(customising handset address) 14-5
Mailbox Volume14-22
Main Menu1-23
Manner Mode2-16
Manual Update (Weather Indicator) 18-5
Manufacture Number15-22
Marker (TV)6-17
Marker List (TV)6-18
Mass Storage11-14
Master Reset (handset settings)10-29
Max Cost2-15
Memory All Clear16-10
Memory Card9-19
Memory Status (Data Folder)9-2
Memory Status (Memory Card) 9-24
Memory Status (Messaging)14-3
Memory Status (Phone Book)4-8
Memory Status (S! Appli Library) 16-2
Memory Status (schedule)12-6
Memory Status (Tasks)12-10
Merge Panorama (Picture Editor)9-17
Message Centre14-37
Message DL14-38
Message List View14-4
Message Notice 14-36
Message Notice/Priority (S! Applications) 16-9
Messaging14-2

Messaging
(checking messages)14-19, 14-23
Messaging
(creating & sending messages) 14-7
Messaging (deleting messages).14-29
Messaging (using attachments) .14-31
Messaging Settings14-16
Microphone1-8
Microphone (Video Camera)7-17
Minute Minder10-31
Mirror Image5-6
Missed Call Notification13-5
Mobile camera7-2
Mobile Light (mobile camera) 7-16
Mode Settings10-2
Modes (Photo Camera)7-7
Money Converter (Calculator)12-16
Monitor Level8-8
Move to Card (S! Applications)16-6
Multi Job1-26
Multi Selectori
Music Player8-9
Music Search8-3
Mute2-11, 5-4
Mute Microphone5-8
My Details1-22, 4-19
My Details1-22
My Device Details (Bluetooth®) 11-9
My Folders14-32
My Pictograms9-2
My Status19-8

N
Navi Key Settings6-24
Near Chat19-19
Network Info11-15
Network Password 1-27, 13-10
Network S! Applications16-2
Network Settings11-15
0
Offline Mode2-18
One Hiragana Predictive Entry3-12
One Hiragana Word Call3-12
One Seg (TV)6-2
One-Hiragana Conversion3-11
Optional Predictive Functions (text entry)3-13
Outgoing Calls (Call Barring)13-8
Outgoing Picture (Video Call)5-7
Out-of-range 1-9, 20-6
P
Packet Lock (Locks)10-28
Packet transmission volume2-14
Pager Code3-9
Pager Code List3-10
Paired Devices11-4
Password Lock10-26
Paste (Picture Editor)9-14
Paste (text entry)3-14
Payphone (Call Barring)13-9
PC Site Browser15-18
Parmission 16-8

FIIOHE DOOK4-2
Phone Book (deleting entries) 4-11
Phone Book (editing)4-10
Phone Book (quoting information)3-14
Phone Book (saving)4-3
Phone Book (searching)4-9
Phone Book Lock10-27
Phone Help12-28
Phonetic Conversion3-11
Photo Camera Mode7-5
Pictogram List20-16
Pictograms3-8
Picture (Phone Book)4-6
Picture Appearance (Messaging) 14-38
Picture Editor9-12
Picture Quality (Photo Camera) 7-17
Picture Size (Photo Camera)7-16
PIN1-6, 10-26
PIN Entry10-26
Play (Voice Memo)2-12
Playback Pattern (Music Player) 8-12
Playback Pattern (TV)6-18
Playback Pattern (Video Player)8-14
Playlist (Media Player)8-20
Pointer15-6
Portrait Position1-12
Portrait/Macro Selector1-9
Power Off Sound10-19
Power On Sound10-19
Power on/off1-21
Predictive (conversion)3-6

Previous Usage (conversion)3-6
Priority (Messaging)14-16
Properties (S! Applications)16-4
Q
Quick Conversion3-12
Quick Operations1-25
Quiz (Messaging)14-17
R
Received Calls2-8, 2-13
Received Msg. View14-5
Record Time (Voice Recorder) 12-17
Record Time/Size (Video Camera)7-17
Recording TV programs6-15
Rejected Numbers13-9
Reload15-20
Remote Forward14-23
Remote Fwd. Action14-16
Remote Monitor5-8
Repeat (Calendar)12-6
Reply14-26
Reply All14-26
Reply Request14-17
Reply To Settings14-16, 14-38
Report (Face Recognition) 10-25
Request Reply19-11
Reservation List (TV)6-19
Reset (Mode Settings)10-2
Reset (subtitles)8-19
Reset All10-29

Reset Learning3-13
Reset Settings (DPOF)9-25
Reset Settings (handset settings)10-29
Reset Settings (S! Applications)16-8
Reset Settings (TV)6-23
Resize (Picture Editor)9-12
Restore9-23
Retouch (Picture Editor)9-13
Retrieve Mail List14-22
Retrieve New Msg14-19
Retrieve NW Info 1-21, 11-15
Ringer Output10-19
Ringtone (Feeling Mail)14-21
Ringtone/videos (Phone Settings)10-16
Root Certificates15-23
Root Certificates15-23 Rotate9-16
Rotate9-16
S S! Address Book4-15
Rotate9-16
S S! Address Book4-15 S! Appli Library16-2
S S! Address Book
S S! Address Book
S S! Address Book
S   S   Address Book
S   S   Address Book
S   S   Address Book
S   Address Book
S   Address Book
S   S   Address Book

S! Mail1	4-2
S! Mail (retrieving remaining portion)14	-21
S! Mail Settings14	-38
S! Town1	9-2
Save Address (Messaging)14	-28
Save and Send7	-10
Save Channel6	-23
Save Items15	-12
Save Pictures to7	-18
Save Recording To12	-18
Save to Data Folder14	-30
Save to Phone Book (Internet)15	-13
Save to Phone Book (Messaging) 14	-28
Save Videos to7	-18
Saved Pages1	5-9
Saved Pages (editing)15	-11
Scan Barcode12	
Scan Code (during text entry)12	-22
Scan Text12	-24
Scanned Results (Barcode)12	-22
Scene7	-17
Screen Size (Landscape)6	-24
Screen Size (Portrait)6	-24
Screensaver1	6-7
Script Settings15	-22
Scroll bar1	
Scroll Unit14-37, 15	-21
Scrolling8	-18
SD AUDIO Recorder	8-7
SD Local Contents9	
SD VIDEO7	-11

Search 15-20
Search for Devices11-
Secret (Phone Book)4-
Secret (schedule)12-0
Secret (Tasks)12-
Secret Folder (Messaging) 14-3
Secure Area (opening secure page) 15-
Secure Prompt15-22
Security Codes1-2
Security Level (Face Recognition) 10-2
Security Settings (Internet) 15-22
Self-timer7-1
Send All (Bluetooth <sup>®</sup> )11-
Send All (Infrared)11-13
Send File Settings14-38
Send Referer15-22
Send Reservation14-18
Send URL15-4, 15-20
Sending Progress14-3
Sent Messages14-2
Sent Msg. View14-
Server Mail Box14-2
Set as Ring Video9-1
Set as Ringtone9-1
Set as Wallpaper9-10
Set Auto Delete14-10
Set Auto Play File14-17
Set Colour12-2
Set Date/Time10-20
Set Frequency (S! Address Book)4-18
Set Holiday12-

Set Low Priority3-13
Set Recording (TV)6-16
Set Sent Cancel14-27
Set Sync Mode (S! Address Book)4-18
Set Time Zone 10-20, 12-14
Set to Default (S! Applications)16-9
Set to Default (S! FeliCa)17-8
Set to Default (shortcuts)1-24
Settings (E-Book)18-7
Settings (Photo Camera)7-7
Settings (S! Applications)16-8
Sharp Space Town15-9
Shortcuts1-24
Show Indicators10-5
Show My Number13-10
Show Operator Name10-5
Show Secret Data10-28
Shutter Sound7-15
Side Keysi
Signature Settings (Messaging)14-36
Simple Menu2-19
Slide Show9-6
Slides14-24
Small Light1-16
SMS14-2
SMS Settings14-37
Snooze (Alarm)12-13
Soft Keys1-23
Software Update20-8
Sort (Data Folder)9-4
Sort (Media Player) 8-10, 8-13

Sort (Messaging)14-4
Sound Effects8-12, 8-15
Sound Language6-12
Sound Output (TV)6-24
Sound Type6-12
Sounds & Alerts10-16
Speed Dial List4-13
Speed Mail14-34
Split Picture9-18
SSL15-3
Stamp (Picture Editor)9-14
Stamp (schedule)12-3
Standby1-21
Standby Window10-6, 19-9
Status Light10-18
Status Setting19-12
Stopwatch12-25
Streaming15-13
Subtitle (Video Player)8-17
Subtitle Language6-12
Subtitle Position6-12
Surround10-19
Surround (S! Applications)16-9
SVG files9-7
Swap Calls13-6
Switch Images5-4
Switch to Read (Messaging)14-25
Switch to Unread (Messaging) 14-25
Symbols3-8
Sync Settings (Phone Book)4-17
Synch Recording8-8

Synchronisation (Phone Book)4-15, 4-18	
Synchronisation (S! Applications) 16-3	
System Graphics10-3	
System Sounds10-18	

Т
Tasks12-8
Templates14-15
Text Entry (Editing Characters)3-13
Text Entry (Entering Characters) 3-5
Text Orientation (E-Book)18-7
Text Templates3-15, 12-27
Time Format10-20
Time Search8-14
Timer recording (TV)6-19
Totals12-26
Touch Tones2-11
Transfer Audio (Video Call)5-6
Turn Display to (Activate TV) 6-25
Turn Display to (Answer Call) 10-31
TV6-2
TV Alarm6-21
TV channels (editing)6-23
TV Link6-14
TV Player6-16
TV reception Area (adding)6-23
TV reception Area (updating)6-23
TV Reserve Prior6-21
TV timer entries (deleting)6-21

U		
Unavailable (Call Barring)13-9		
Unknown (Call Barring)13-9		
Unsent Messages14-2		
Uploading Files15-20		
User Dictionary10-21		
USIM Card1-4		
USIM PINs1-6		
V		
Via Infrared11-12		
Vibration (Alarm)12-13		
Vibration (Phone Settings)10-17		
Vibration (S! Applications)16-9		
Vibration Pattern14-21		
Video Call5-2		
Video Call Settings5-7		
Video Camera Mode7-8		
Video Encode7-18		
Video Output10-15		
Video Output (Video Call)5-5		
Video Quality (Video Camera)7-17		
View Log (Phone Book)4-19		
Visibility11-4		
Vivid Mode10-5		
Voice Memo2-12		
Voice Recorder12-16		
Voicemail13-4		
Volume (Answer Phone)2-10		
Volume (Farniece Volume) 2-11 5-4 10-19		

Volume (handset functions) 10-1 Volume (Media Player)8-1
W
Wallpaper10-
Warning Message15-2
Warning Tone10-1
Weather Indicator18-
Web Access (Custom Screen) 10-1
WEB Link Connection8-1
Web Link Settings8-1
Withheld (Call Barring)13-
World Clock12-1
Υ
Yahoo! Keitai15-
Yahoo! Keitai (accessing)15-

# **Warranty & After-Sales Services**

## Warranty

Warranty is provided when you purchase handset.

- Check the name of distributor and date of purchase.
- Read through contents and keep in a safe place.
- The warranty term is described in the warranty.

## After-Sales Services

See **P.20-4** "Troubleshooting" before contacting SoftBank for service or repairs. If you cannot find solutions or solve problems, contact SoftBank Customer Centre, Customer Assistance (see **P.20-28**) in your subscription area and provide a detailed description of the problem.

- Repairs within warranty are performed under terms and conditions described.
- Out of warranty, possible repairs are performed upon request at subscriber expense.

For other services, contact the distributor, the nearest SoftBank shop or SoftBank Customer Centre, General Information (see **P.20-28**). Replacement parts are available for 6 years after termination of production.

## Note >

- SoftBank is not liable for any damages resulting from use of this product.
- SoftBank is not liable for any damages resulting from accidental loss/alteration of handset data. Keep a copy of Phone Book entries, etc. in a separate place.
- Disassembling or modifying handset may violate the Radio Law. Modified handset will not be repaired.

## Customer Service

If you have questions about SoftBank handsets or services, please call General Information. For repairs, please call **Customer Assistance.** 

## **SoftBank Customer Centres**

From a SoftBank handset, dial toll free at 157 for General Information or 113 for Customer Assistance

## **SoftBank International Call Centre**

From outside Japan, dial +81-3-5351-3491 (International charges will apply.)

## Call these numbers toll free from landlines.

Subscription Area	Service Centre	Phone Number
Hokkaido, Aomori, Akita, Iwate, Yamagata, Miyagi, Fukushima, Niigata, Tokyo, Kanagawa, Chiba, Saitama, Ibaraki, Tochigi, Gunma, Yamanashi, Nagano, Toyama, Ishikawa, Fukui	General Information	<b>6</b> 0088-240-157
	Customer Assistance	<b>€</b> 0088-240-113
Aichi, Gifu, Mie, Shizuoka	General Information	<b>©</b> 0088-241-157
	Customer Assistance	<b>©</b> 0088-241-113
Osaka, Hyogo, Kyoto, Nara, Shiga, Wakayama	General Information	<b>©</b> 0088-242-157
	Customer Assistance	<b>©</b> 0088-242-113
Hiroshima, Okayama, Yamaguchi, Tottori, Shimane, Tokushima, Kagawa, Ehime, Kochi, Fukuoka, Saga, Nagasaki, Oita, Kumamoto, Miyazaki, Kagoshima, Okinawa	General Information	<b>©</b> 0088-250-157
	Customer Assistance	<b>€</b> 0088-250-113

## SoftBank 911SH Instruction Manual

January 2007, First Edition

SOFTBANK MOBILE Corp.

For additional information, please visit a SoftBank shop.

Model: SoftBank 911SH

Manufacturer: SHARP CORPORATION



Please help the mobile industry maintain high environmental standards. Recycle your old handsets, batteries and charger units (all manufacturers and brands). Before you recycle, please remember these important points:

- Handsets, batteries and chargers submitted for recycling cannot be returned.
- Always erase all data recorded on old handsets (Phone Book entries, call records, mail, etc.) before recycling.

